FIDELIO

Journal of Poetry, Science, and Statecraft

Summer 1998 $5.00

'We Must Be As Angels'

Man is intrinsically good; all babies are born good, all people's babies are born good. They all have this potential for good. Each one is like an angel: every baby is an angel. A baby comes, it's an angel on a mission. Now, it does not come with any instructions, it comes with a capability. The baby will discover what its mission is, the baby will grow and develop the capabilities to carry out the mission.

Then the baby will die, as an older person. But the baby will, like an angel, have come to society and done some good. And society needed that angel to come to society at that time to do that good. And anybody who's any good, wishes to be such an angel. You come with no special powers, no ticket telling you what your instructions are, but you have to recognize your instructions from your situation and do some good, so that when you die, you have been an angel who came and did some good for humanity. Humanity needed you, you are a part of humanity forever.

All people are like that, so why don't all people act like that, at all times? Because society depends upon people who act like angels to other people, as *leaders,* people who inspire, provide ideas that are needed at that time. Then, what is an evil society? An evil society is one which does not allow angels to be angels. It works to suppress those who try to change things, it wants to turn people into animals, or into Hermann Hesse's "Steppenwolf" types.

In the 1970s, I knew that the Soviet Union was doomed. I knew it, because the leadership of the Communist Party praised Brezhnev for not being a voluntarist.

All leadership is of a voluntarist nature, because Man is not perfect. The kinds of societies that are given to us by our predecessors, are always imperfect. And, if they continue with that imperfection, they will turn into their opposite, they will become oppressive. We depend upon people to come forward who are voluntarists, who are leaders, who inspire a people, who lead them, as the present leadership of China has inspired its people with the confidence to do something.

Evil Is Named Mediocrity

What was the evil in Russia, is named *mediocrity,* the power of mediocrity to suppress genius. You had geniuses—what did the geniuses do? They ran into science, they went into the Academy of Science, whatever they could do, just to escape from the KGB, the Chekisti and the mediocrities, to find a niche where they could do something, to make their lives meaningful. These were the only places where they could go, to do some good.

How many people of my generation, were willing to stand up to what happened in the United States in 1946 and on, under Truman? Almost none. The same thing happened in Germany, after the Nazi takeover. You don't think. You're careful of what you say, you're careful of what you think. And, you have a few of us stand up and refuse to capitulate. And those of us who *refuse to capitulate to mediocrity,* against all odds, are essential, as the true patriots of our nations. If we are eliminated, the nation will go to Hell, because it has allowed itself to be ruled by the principle of mediocrity.

Don't look in Russia, in communism, for what was evil, because, remember, the Russian people are the Russian people. They're born every day. Every baby is an angel, a potential angel. When you don't let the angels come forth to renew society, when you have a system to prevent them from becoming angels—you repress them, and none escapes—then you have no leaders. And if you have no true leaders who are fighters, who are morally strong, then you will not have the ideas, you will not have the programs, that are necessary to renew the nation, to correct its errors.

So, don't look for what was wrong in what happened. Look for what was wrong *in what was missing,* as in science. Always look for the missing principle. Because, human beings are intrinsically noble; they are the greatest thing in the universe. If you let them become what they should become, you will always have progress. And the only time a nation destroys itself, a civilization destroys itself, is when it becomes *efficient* in enforcing mediocrity.

—Lyndon H. LaRouche, Jr.
seminar with Eastern Europeans and Russians, Dec. 16, 1997

'The Nativity' (detail), Gerard David (Flemish, d.1523). Central panel of a triptych. (The Metropolitan Museum of Art. Jules Bache Collection, 1949)

FIDELIO

"It is through beauty that one proceeds to freedom."
—Friedrich Schiller

Vol. VII, No. 2 Summer 1998

Fidelio (ISSN 1059-9126) is published by the Schiller Institute, Inc., P.O. Box 20244, Washington, D.C. 20041-0244. Editorial services are provided by KMW Publishing Company, Inc.

Fidelio is dedicated to the promotion of a new Golden Renaissance based upon the concept of *agapē* or charity, as that is reflected in the creation of artistic beauty, the scientific mastery of the laws of the physical universe, and the practice of republican statecraft for the benefit of our fellow men.

Subscriptions by mail are $20.00 for 4 issues in the U.S. and Canada. Airmail subscriptions to other countries are $40.00 for 4 issues. Payment must be made in U.S. currency. Make check or money order payable to Schiller Institute, Inc.

On the Cover
Robert Campin, *The Annunciation* (central panel, Merode Altarpiece) (c. 1425). "We must be as angels" (The Metropolitan Museum of Art, Cloisters Collection, 1956)

SPECIAL ISSUE

FID 98-002

The Importance of Scientific Pedagogy in Challenging the False-Axiomatic Assumptions Which Have Brought Civilization to the Abyss

EDITORIAL

In this Special Issue of *Fidelio,* we have chosen to feature a presentation of Carl F. Gauss's 1801 determination of the orbit of the asteroid Ceres, which was commissioned by Lyndon H. LaRouche, Jr., in 1997. This presentation is part of an ongoing series of Pedagogical Exercises highlighting the role of metaphor and paradox in creative reason, through the study of great discoveries of science and art.

The reason it is necessary to study and master such material is not academic, but existential. The world is currently in the midst of a civilizational crisis, which can only be compared to that of the Fourteenth-century New Dark Age. As can be seen from the so-called Asian financial crisis, we are faced today with a systemic, global financial crisis, far worse than the collapse of the Venetian-controlled Peruzzi and Bardi family banks in 1343-44, which sparked the Dark Age then.

In the Fourteenth century, the sovereign nation-state with a commitment to public education and technological and scientific progress, had not yet emerged. Today, the same Black Guelph faction, which fought to prevent the emergence of the nation-state in the Fourteenth century, is thoroughly committed to turning the clock back, destroying the nation-state and imposing a supra-national, neo-Malthusian order.

British Lord Rees-Mogg has been most prominent in arguing that, as in feudal times, only five percent of today's population need be educated, to rule on behalf of the financial oligarchy in the Information Age. The

Pegasus in Yoke

Perhaps it was to Haymarket—a horses mart,
Where other things into commodities were changing,
That once a hungry poet brought
The Muses' steed, to be exchanging.

The Hippogriff did neigh so bright
And in parade did prance with pomp so pretty,
Astonished stood each one and cried:
"The noble, kingly animal! But pity,
That doth an ugly pair of wings its figure fair
Deform! The fastest mailtrain were it gracing.
The breed, the people say, is rare,
Yet who will through the air be racing?
And no one will his coin be placing."
At last a daring farmer stood.
"The wings, indeed," says he, "not useful does one find them;
Yet one can always either clip or bind them,
Then is the horse for pulling ever good.
A twenty-pound, on this to risk I'm willing."
The shyster, much amused, the wares now cheaply selling,
Agrees at once. "One man, one word!"
And Hans trots with his booty freshly for'd.

The noble beast is now in yoke restrained.
Yet feels it scarce the burden so unwonted,
Then runs it forth with flight desires undaunted,
And flings, from noble wrath enflamed,
To chasm's edge, all that the cart contained.
"All right," thinks Hans. "I may be to this beast confiding
Alone no cart. Experience doth cunning make.
Come morn will passengers be riding,
I'll hitch it to the cart the lead to take.
Two horses shall this lively crab for me be saving,
And with the years will fade its raving."

At first it went quite well. The lightly-winged horse
Enlives the old nag's step, and swift the cart is flying.
But now what's this? With one look at the clouds turned course,
And 'customed not, the ground with solid hoof to plying,
Forsaking soon the safer cart-wheel trail,
And true to nature's stronger hail,
It runs clear through the swamp and moor, tilled field and hedges;
An equal frenzy doth th' entire post-team seize,
No call doth help, no rein its haste doth ease,
At last, to wand'rer's fearful ledges,
The wagon, smashed apart from endless jolts,
On steepest summit of the mountain halts.

remaining ninety-five percent of the population—to be treated as feudal serfs—need not be educated at all, he writes in the pages of the leading London press.

In the last three decades, this process of de-education or de-schooling has been far advanced. Through "outcome-based education" and other mind-destroying so-called reforms, our youth have been "dumbed-down," becoming increasingly illiterate. "Post-industrial," ecologist anti-scientific hoaxes, such as "global warming," are widely accepted, contrary to scientific evidence. The unchallenged acceptance of such false-axiomatic assumptions, leads necessarily to the entropic doom of civilization.

The only proven alternative to such civilizational devolution, is an emphasis on fostering those powers of cognitive reason, which distinguish man as created in the image of God (*imago Dei*), in contradistinction to all other species. Mankind only emerged from the Dark Age of the Fourteenth century, through the emphasis placed on intellectual growth by a succession of world-historical individuals, beginning with Dante Alighieri, Francesco Petrarch, Gerard Groote (founder of the Brothers of the Common Life), and Nicolaus of Cusa, the key organizer of the Council of Florence.

As Lyndon LaRouche has emphasized, if our civilization is to survive the current crisis, we must not flee, as Shakespeare's Hamlet did, from the cognition of "the undiscovered country," which is necessary to lead society from an "*n*-fold manifold" to an "*n+1*-fold manifold." The capacity for cognition can be fostered, not by Aristotelean methods of rote learning, but rather, only in the manner employed by the Brothers of the Common Life, which was to encourage the student's replication of great scientific discoveries in his own mind. Only then does the individual truly know how to think, to assimilate and generate those new ideas which civilization requires in order to make the advances necessary to survival.

To succeed in establishing a New Bretton Woods system, as LaRouche has proposed, we need to rediscover the childlike joy of discovering profound ideas, by mastering such discoveries as those of Gauss presented in this issue. Only then shall we be truly free of the yoke of serfdom, which Lord Rees-Mogg and his British oligarchical masters would reimpose on the vast majority of humanity. This is the quality of mind, which Friedrich Schiller captured in his beloved poem about the liberation of creative genius, "Pegasus in Yoke."

"That just is not the right way ever,"
Says Hans, his face contorted much by doubt.
"Thus will it be successful never;
Let's see, if this mad dog be brought
Through meager food and work to tether."
The trial will be made. Soon beast with beauty rare,
Before three days did fade around it
To shadow was reduced. "I have, I have now found it!"
Cries Hans. "Now quick, and hitch it here,
Before the plough beside my strongest steer."

'Tis said, 'tis done. In ludicrous procession,
One sees on plough an ox and winged stallion.
Unwilling mounts the griff and strains with final might
Its sinews forth, to take as old to flying.
In vain, delib'rate doth the neighbor stride
And Phoebus' steed so proud, to steer must be complying.
Till now, consumed by long, resistant course,
The strength from all its limbs is thinning,
From grief, now breaks the noble, godly-horse
To earth it falls and in the dust is spinning.
"Accursed beast!" at last breaks Hans' abuse
Loud scolding out, whilst from him flies a beating.
"So you then e'en for ploughing are no use,
The rogue sold you to me was cheating."

While yet in him doth rage of anger last,
The whip doth swing, comes cheerful now and fast
A merry fellow on the road with footsteps fleeting.
The zither sounds forth in his nimble hand,
His hair, an ornament of yellow,
Is plaited through with golden band.
"Whereto, that pair astonishing, my fellow?"
He calls the peasant from afar.
"The bird and ox a single rope is binding,
I ask of you, what is that pair!
If for a while you'd be confiding
The horse, to make a test, to me,
Look out, you shall a marvel see!"

The Hippogriff unyoked doth stand,
And smiling now the young man swings upon its haunches.
The beast scarce feels the master's certain hand,
Then gnashes it the bridle band
And climbs, and lightning flashes from inspired glances.
No more the former creature, kingly-wise,
A god, a spirit, doth arise,
Unfurls it suddenly with stormy splendor
Its winged pomp, shoots roaring to the sky,
And 'fore a glance can follow nigh,
It glides into the high blue yonder.

—Friedrich Schiller

How Gauss Determined The Orbit of Ceres

by Jonathan Tennenbaum

and Bruce Director

PREFACE

The following presentation of Carl Gauss's determination of the orbit of the asteroid Ceres, was commissioned by Lyndon H. LaRouche, Jr., in October 1997, as part of an ongoing series of Pedagogical Exercises highlighting the role of metaphor and paradox in creative reason, through study of the great discoveries of science. Intended for individual and classroom study, the weekly installments—now "chapters"—were later serialized in The New Federalist newspaper. They are collected here, in their entirety, for the first time, incorporating additions and revisions to both text and diagrams.

Through the course of their presentation, it became necessary for the authors to review many crucial questions in the history of mathematics, physics, and astronomy. All of these issues were subsumed in the primary objective, the discovery of the orbit of Ceres. And, because they were written to challenge a lay audience to master unfamiliar and conceptually dense material at the level of axiomatic assumptions, the installments were often purposefully provocative, proceeding by way of contradictions and paradoxes.

Nonetheless, the pace of the argument moves slowly, building its case by constant reference to what has gone before. It is, therefore, a mountaintop you need not fear to climb!

We begin, by way of a preface, with the following excerpted comments by Lyndon H. LaRouche, Jr. The authors return to them in the concluding stretto. —*KK*

* * *

From Euclid through Legendre, geometry depended upon axiomatic assumptions accepted as if they were self-evident. On more careful inspection, it should be evident, that these

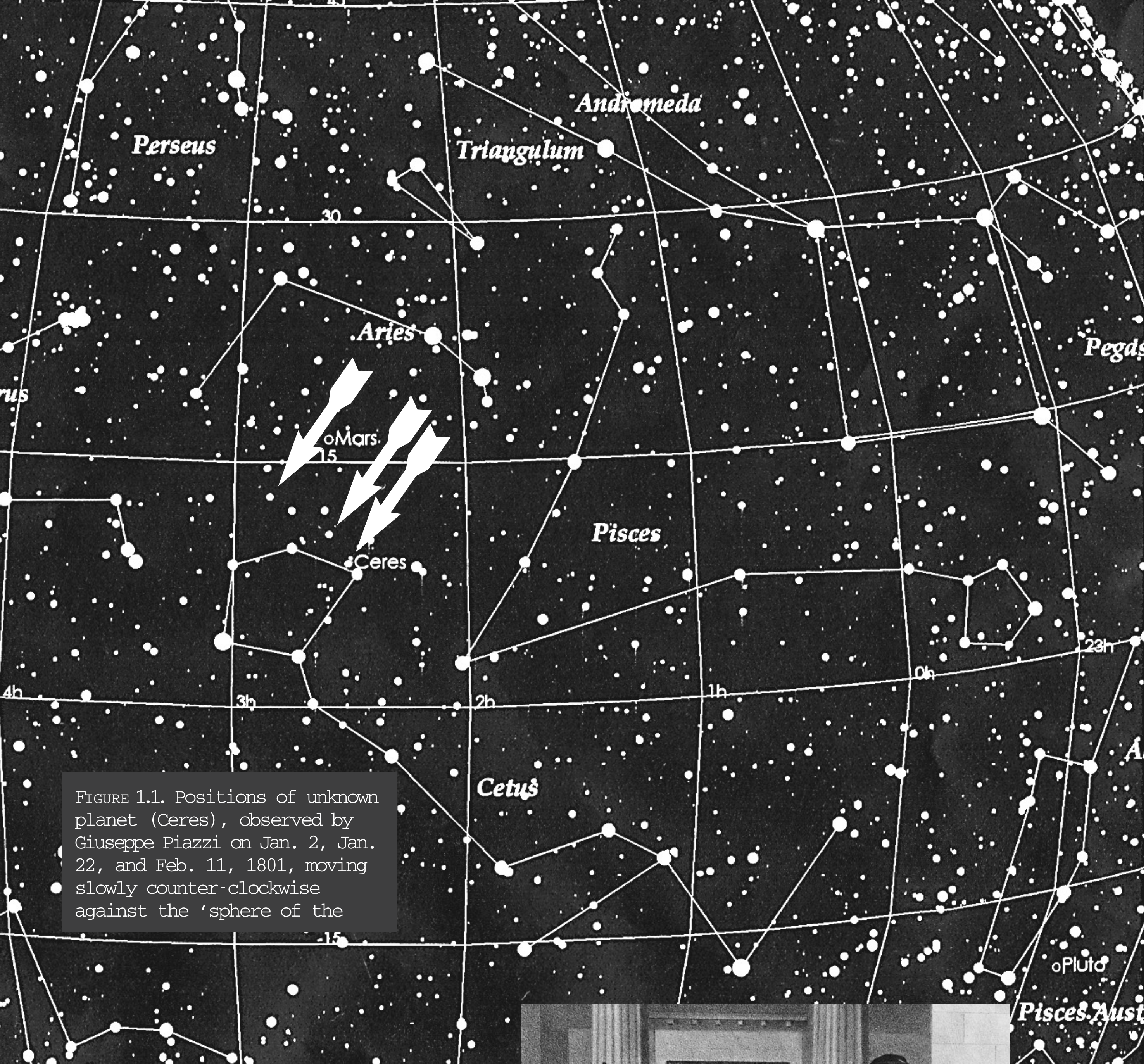
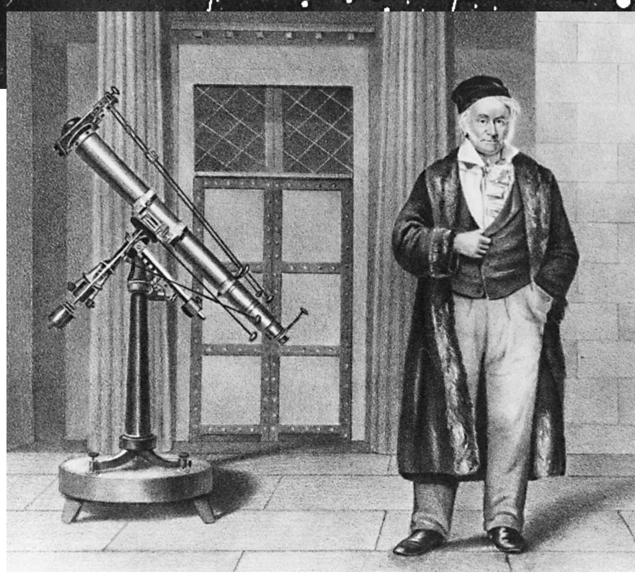


FIGURE 1.1. Positions of unknown planet (Ceres), observed by Giuseppe Piazzi on Jan. 2, Jan. 22, and Feb. 11, 1801, moving slowly counter-clockwise against the 'sphere of the

assumptions are not necessarily true. Furthermore, the interrelationship among those axiomatic assumptions, is left entirely in obscurity. Most conspicuous, even today, generally accepted classroom mathematics relies upon the absurd doctrine, that extension in space and time proceeds in perfect continuity, with no possibility of interruption, even in the extremely small. Indeed, every effort to prove that assumption, such as the notorious tautological hoax concocted by the celebrated Leonhard Euler,



Carl F. Gauss

was premised upon a geometry which preassumed perfect continuity, axiomatically. Similarly, the assumption that extension in space and time must be unbounded, was shown to have been arbitrary, and, in fact, false.

Bernhard Riemann's argument, repeated in the concluding sentence of his dissertation "On the Hypotheses Which Underlie Geometry," is, that, to arrive at a suitable design of geometry for physics, we must depart the realm of mathematics, for the realm of experimental physics. This is the key to solving the crucial problems of representation of both living processes, and all processes which, like physical economy and Classical musical composition, are defined by the higher processes of the individual human cognitive processes. Moreover, since living processes, and cognitive processes, are efficient modes of existence within the universe as a whole, there could be no universal physics whose fundamental laws were not coherent with that anti-entropic principle central to human cognition. . . .

By definition, any experimentally validated principle of (for example) physics, can be regarded as a dimension of an "*n*-dimensional" physical-space-time geometry. This is necessary, since the principle was validated by measurement; that is to say, it was validated by measurement of *extension.* This includes experimentally grounded, axiomatic assumptions respecting space and time. The question posed, is: How do these "*n*" dimensions interrelate, to yield an effect which is characteristic of that physical space-time? It was Riemann's genius, to recognize in the experimental applications which Carl Gauss had made in applying his approach to bi-quadratic residues, to crucial measurements in astrophysics, geodesy, and geomagnetism, the key to crucial implications of the approach to a general theory of curved surfaces rooted in the generalization from such measurements. . . .

What Art Must Learn from Euclid

The crucial distinction between that science and art which was developed by Classical Greece, as distinct from the work of the Greeks' Egyptian, anti-Mesopotamia, anti-Canaanite sponsors, is expressed most clearly by Plato's notion of *ideas.* The possibility of modern science depends upon, the relatively perfected form of that Classical Greek notion of *ideas,* as that notion is defined by Plato. This is exemplified by Plato's Socratic method of hypothesis, upon which the possibility of Europe's development depended absolutely. What is passed down to modern times as Euclid's geometry, embodies a crucial kind of demonstration of that principle; Riemann's accomplishment was, thus, to have corrected the errors of Euclid, by the same Socratic method employed to produce a geometry which had been, up to Riemann's time, one of the great works of antiquity. This has crucial importance for rendering transparent the underling principle of motivic thorough-composition in Classical polyphony. . . .

The set of definitions, axioms, and postulates deduced from implicitly underlying assumptions about space, is exemplary of the most elementary of the literate uses of the term *hypothesis.* Specifically, this is a *deductive* hypothesis, as distinguished from higher forms, including *non-linear* hypotheses. Once the hypothesis underlying a known set of propositions is established, we may anticipate a larger number of propositions than those originally considered, which might also be consistent with that deductive hypothesis. The implicitly open-ended collection of theorems which might satisfy that latter requirement, may be named a *theorem-lattice* . . . .

The commonly underlying principle of organization internal to each such type of deductive lattice, is *extension,* as that principle is integral to the notion of measurement. This notion of extension, is the notion of a type of extension characteristic of the domain of the relevant choice of theorem-lattice. All scientific knowledge is premised upon matters pertaining to a generalized notion of extension. Hence, all rational thought, is intrinsically geometrical in character.

In first approximation, all deductively consistent systems may be described in terms of theorem-lattices. However, as crucial features of Riemann's discovery illustrate most clearly, the essence of human knowledge is *change,* change of hypothesis, this in the sense in which the problem of ontological paradox is featured in Plato's *Parmenides.* In short, the characteristic of human knowledge, and existence, is not expressible in the mode of deductive mathematics, but, rather, must be expressed as *change,* from one hypothesis, to another. The standard for change, is to proceed from a relatively inferior, to superior hypothesis. The action of scientific-revolutionary change, from a relatively inferior, to relatively superior hypothesis, is the characteristic of human progress, human knowledge, and of the lawful composition of that universe, whose mastery mankind expresses through increases in potential relative population-density of our species.

The process of revolutionary change occurs only through the medium of metaphor, as the relevant principle of contradiction has been stated, above. Just as Euclid was necessary, that the work of descriptive geometry by Gaspard Monge *et al.,* the work of Gauss, and so forth, might make Riemann's overturning Euclid feasible, so all human progress, all human knowledge is premised upon that form of revolutionary change which appears as the *agapic* quality of solution to an ontological paradox.

—Lyndon H. LaRouche, Jr.,
adapted from "Behind the Notes"
Fidelio, Summer 1997 (Vol.VI, No. 2)

Chapter 1

Introduction

January 1, 1801, the first day of a new century. In the early morning hours of that day, Giuseppe Piazzi, peering through his telescope in Palermo, discovered an object which appeared as a small dot of light in the dark night sky. **(Figure 1.1)** He noted its position with respect to the other stars in the sky. On a subsequent night, he saw the same small dot of light, but this time it was in a slightly different position against the familiar background of the stars.

He had not seen this object before, nor were there any recorded observations of it. Over the next several days, Piazzi watched this new object, carefully noting its change in position from night to night. Using the method employed by astronomers since ancient times, he recorded its position as the intersection of two circles on an imaginary sphere, with himself at the center. **(Figure 1.2a)** (Astronomers call this the "celestial sphere"; the circles are similar to lines of longitude and latitude on Earth.) One set of circles was thought of as running perpendicular to the celestial equator, ascending overhead from the observer's horizon, and then descending. The other set of circles runs parallel to the celestial equator.

To specify any one of these circles, we require an angular measurement: the position of a longitudinal circle is specified by the angle (arc) known as the "right ascension," and that of a circle parallel to the celestial equator, by the "declination."* **(Figure 1.2b)**. Hence, two angles suffice to specify the position of any point on the celestial sphere. This, indeed, is how Piazzi communicated his observations to others.

Piazzi was able to record the changing positions of the new object in a total of 19 observations made over the following 42 days. Finally, on February 12, the object disappeared in the glare of the sun, and could no longer be observed. During the whole period, the object's total motion made an arc of only 9° on the celestial sphere.

What had Piazzi discovered? Was it a planet, a star, a comet, or something else which didn't have a name? (At first, Piazzi thought he had discovered a small comet with no tail. Later, he and others speculated it was a planet between Mars and Jupiter.) And now that it had disappeared, what was its trajectory? When and where could it

* Figure 1.1 shows the celestial sphere as seen by an observer, with a grid for measuring right ascension and declination shown mapped against it.

Figure 1.2 *The celestial sphere. (a) Since ancient times, astronomers have recorded their observations of heavenly bodies as points on the inside of an imaginary sphere called the celestial sphere, or "sphere of the fixed stars," with the Earth at its center. Arcs of right ascension and parallels of declination are shown. (b) Locating the position of an object on the celestial sphere by measuring right ascension and declination.*

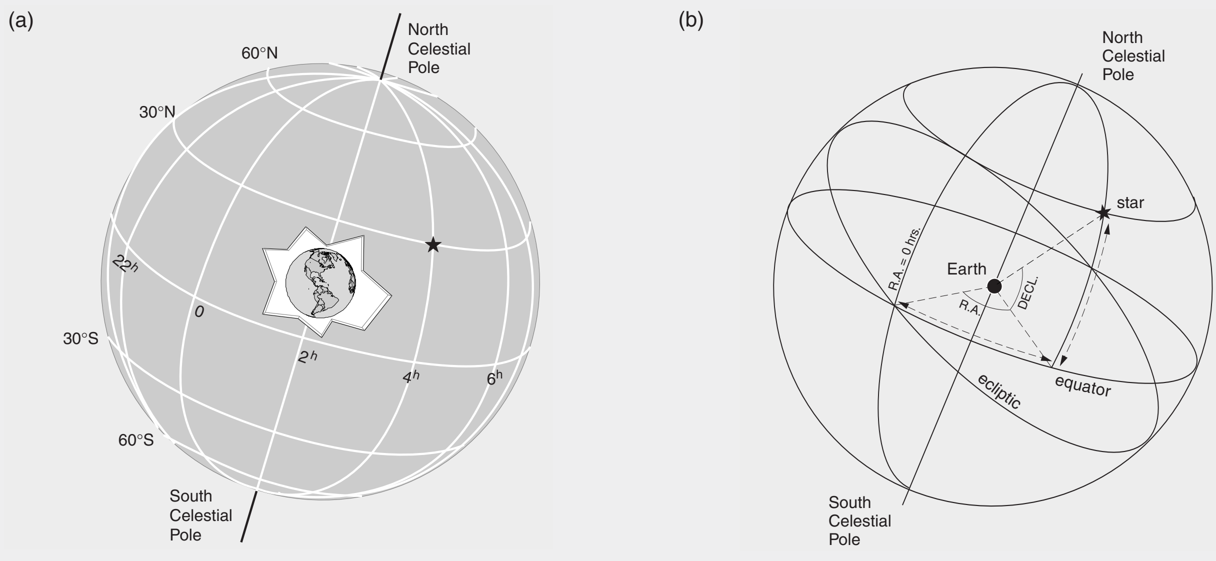
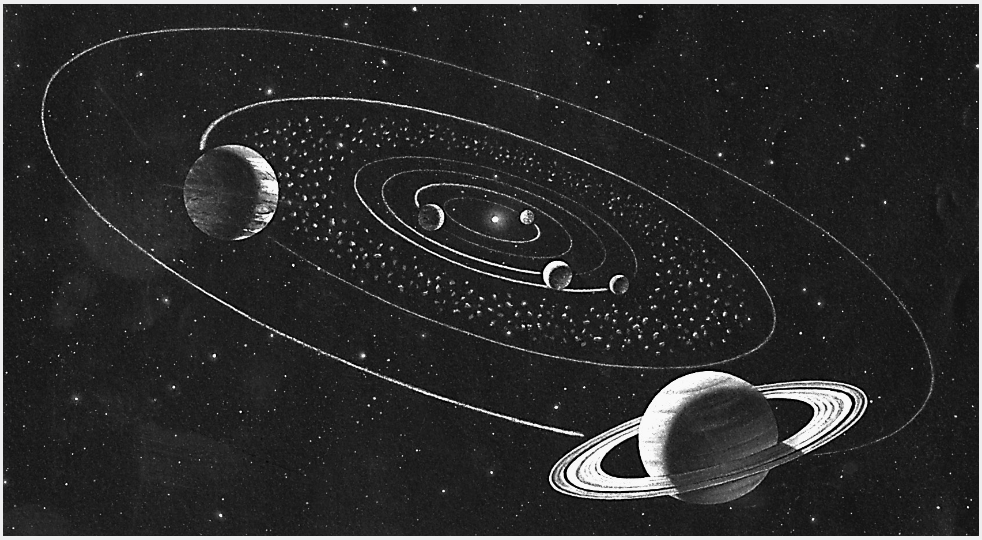


FIGURE 1.3. *Artist's rendering of a "God's eye view" of the first six planets of the solar system. (Note that the correct planetary sizes, and relative distances from the sun of "outer planets" Jupiter and Saturn, are not preserved.)*



be seen again? If it were orbiting the sun, how could its trajectory be determined from these few observations made from the Earth, which itself was moving around the sun?

Had Piazzi observed the object while it was approaching the sun, or was it moving away from the sun? Was it moving away from the Earth or towards it, when these observations were made? Since all the observations appeared only as changes in position against the background of the stars (celestial sphere), what motion did these changes in position reflect? What would these changes in position be, if Piazzi had observed them from the sun? Or, a point outside the solar system itself: a "God's eye view"? **(Figure 1.3)**

It was six months before Piazzi's observations were published in the leading German-language journal of astronomy, von Zach's *Monthly Correspondence for the Promotion of Knowledge of the Earth and the Heavens,* but news of his discovery had already spread to the leading astronomers of Europe, who searched the sky in vain for the object. Unless an accurate determination of the object's trajectory were made, rediscovery would be unpredictable.

There was no direct precedent to draw upon, to solve this puzzle. The only previous experience that anyone had had in determining the trajectory of a new object in the sky, was the 1781 discovery of the planet Uranus by William Herschel. In that case, astronomers were able to observe the position of Uranus over a considerable time, recording the changes in the position of the planet with respect to the Earth.

With these observations, the mathematicians simply asked, "On what curve is this planet traveling, such that it would produce these particular observations?" If one curve didn't produce the desired mathematical result, another was tried.

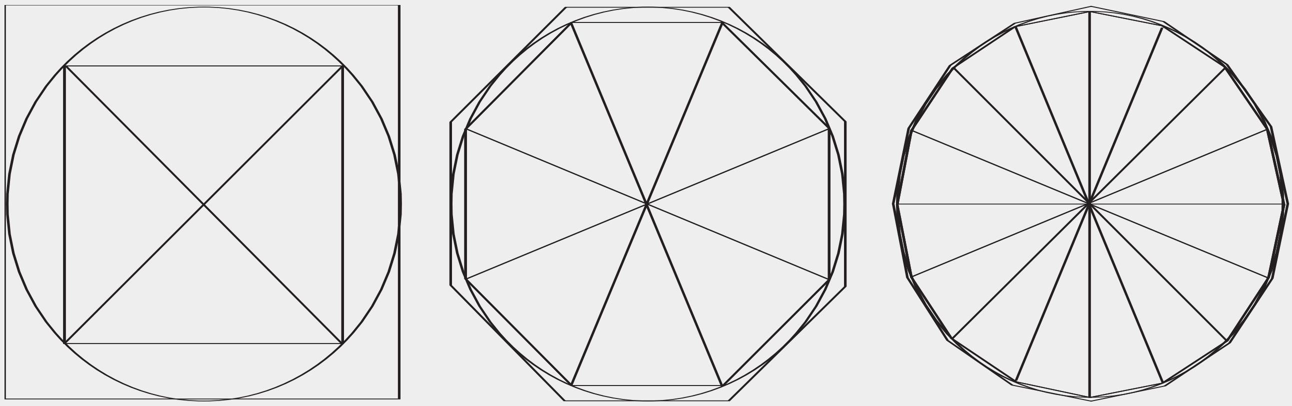
As Carl F. Gauss described it in the Preface to his 1809 book, *Theory of the Motion of the Heavenly Bodies Moving about the Sun in Conic Sections*,

> As soon as it was ascertained that the motion of the new planet, discovered in 1781, could not be reconciled with the parabolic hypothesis, astronomers undertook to adapt a circular orbit to it, which is a matter of simple and very easy calculation. By a happy accident, the orbit of this planet had but a small eccentricity, in consequence of which, the elements resulting from the circular hypothesis sufficed, at least for an approximation, on which the determination of the elliptic elements could be based.
>
> There was a concurrence of several other very favorable circumstances. For, the slow motion of the planet, and the very small inclination of the orbit to the plane of the ecliptic, not only rendered the calculations much more simple, and allowed the use of special methods not suited to other cases; but they removed the apprehension, lest the planet, lost in the rays of the sun, should subsequently elude the search of observers (an apprehension which some astronomers might have felt, especially if its light had been less brilliant); so that the more accurate determination of the orbit might be safely deferred, until a selection could be made from observations more frequent and more remote, such seemed best fitted for the end in view.

Linearization in the Small

The false belief that we need a large number of observations, filling out as large an arc as possible, in order to determine the orbit of a heavenly body, is a typical product of the Aristotelean assumptions brought into science by the British-Venetian school of mathematics—the school typified by Paolo Sarpi, Isaac Newton, and Leonhard Euler. Sarpi *et al.* insisted that, if we examine small-

FIGURE 1.4. *Nicolaus of Cusa demonstrated, that no matter how many times its sides are multiplied, the polygon can never attain equality with the circle. The polygon and circle are fundamentally different species of figures.*



er and smaller portions of any curve in nature, we shall find that those portions look and behave more and more like straight line segments—to the point that, for sufficiently small intervals, the difference becomes practically insignificant and can be ignored. This idea came to be known as "linearization in the small."

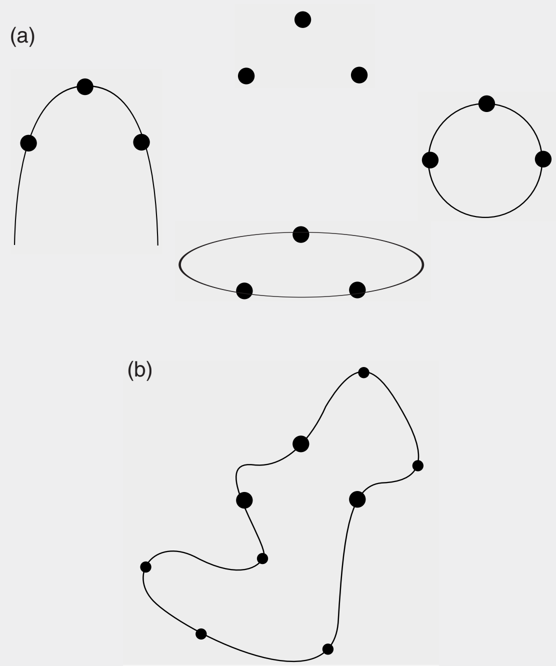
In the mid-Fifteenth century, Nicolaus of Cusa had already demonstrated conclusively that linearization in the small had no place in mathematics—if that mathematics were to reflect truth. Cusa demonstrated that the circle represents a *fundamentally different species of curve* from a straight line, and that this *species difference* does not disappear, or even decrease, when we examine very small portions of the circle. **(Figure 1.4)** With respect to their increasing number of vertices, the polygons inscribed in and circumscribing the circle become more and more *unlike* it.

Extending Cusa's discovery to astronomy, Johannes Kepler discovered that the solar system was ordered according to certain harmonic principles. Each small part of the solar system, such as a small interval of a planetary orbit, reflected that same harmonic principle completely. Kepler's call for the invention of a mathematical concept to measure this self-similarity, provoked G.W. Leibniz to develop the infinitesimal calculus. The entirety of the work of Sarpi, Newton, and Euler, was nothing but a fraud, perpetrated by the Venetian-British oligarchy against the work of Cusa, Kepler, and Leibniz.

Applying the false mathematics of Sarpi *et al.* to astronomy, would mean that the physical Universe became increasingly linear in the small, and that, therefore, the smaller the arc spanned by the given series of observations, the less those observations tell us about the shape of the orbit as a whole. This delusion can be maintained, in this case, only if the problem of determining the orbit of an unknown planet is treated as a purely mathematical one.

For example, think of three dots on a plane. **(Figure 1.5)** On how many different curves could these dots lie? Now add more dots. The more dots, covering a greater part of the curve, the more precise determination of the curve. A small change of the position of the dots, can

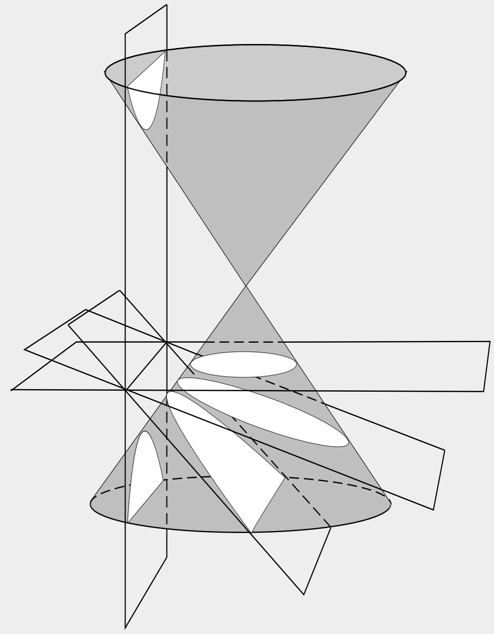
FIGURE 1.5. *(a) Here are just a few of the curves that can be drawn through the same three points. (b) With more observation points, we may find that the curve is not as anticipated.*



mean a great change in the shape of the curve. The fewer the dots and the closer together they are, the less precise is the mathematical determination of the curve.

If this false mathematics were imposed on the Universe, determining the orbit of a planet would hardly be possible, except by curve-fitting or statistical correlations from as extensive a set of observations as possible. But the changes of observed positions of an object in the night sky, are not dots on a piece of paper. These changes of position are a reflection of physical action, which is self-similar in every interval of that action, in the sense understood by Cusa, Kepler, and Leibniz. The heavenly body is never moving along a straight line, but diverges from a straight line in every interval, no matter how small, in a *characteristic fashion*.

FIGURE 1.6. *Generation of the conic sections by cutting a cone with a rotating plane. When the plane is parallel to the base, the section is a circle. As the plane begins to rotate, elliptical sections are generated, until the plane parallel to the side of the cone generates a parabola. Further rotation generates hyperbolas.*



In fact, if we focus on the *characteristic features* of the "non-linearity in the small" of any orbit, then the smaller the interval of action we investigate in this way, the more precise the determination of the orbit as a whole! This key point will become ever clearer as we work through Gauss' determination of the orbit of Ceres.

It was only an accident that the problem of the determination of the orbit of Uranus could be solved without challenging the falsehood of linearization in the small. But such accidental success of a wrong method, was shattered by the problem presented by Piazzi's discovery. The Universe was demonstrating Euler was a fool.

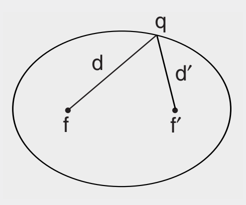
(Years later, Gauss would calculate in one hour, the trajectory of a comet, which had taken Euler three days to figure, a labor in which Euler lost the sight of one eye. "I would probably have become blind also," Gauss said of Euler, "if I had been willing to keep on calculating in this manner for three days!")

It was September of 1801, before Piazzi's observations reached the 24-year-old Gauss, but Gauss had already anticipated the problem, and ridiculed other mathematicians for not considering it, "since it assuredly commend-

FIGURE 1.7. *Some characteristic properties of the ellipse (a fuller description is presented in the Appendix).*

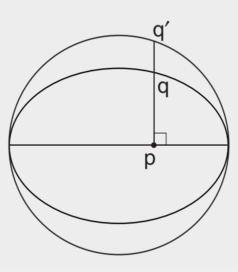
(a)

Every ellipse has two foci f, f′, such that the sum of distances d and d′ to any point q on the circumference of the ellipse is a constant.



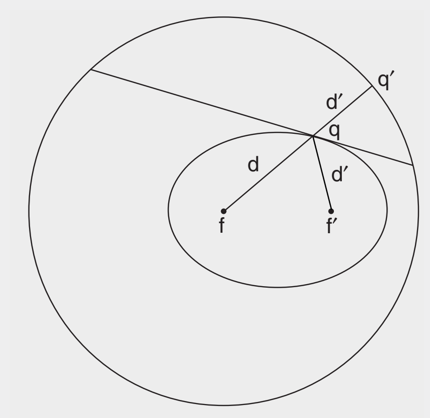
(b)

The ellipse as a "contraction" of the circumscribed circle, in the direction perpendicular to the major axis. The ratio pq : pq′ remains the same, no matter where p lies on the major axis.



(c)

Construction of a tangent to the ellipse: Draw a circle around focus f, with radius equal to the constant distance d + d′. The tangent at any point q is the line obtained by "folding" the circle such that point q′ touches the second focus f′. This construction can be "inverted" to generate ellipses and other conic sections as "envelopes" of straight lines (see text and Figure 1.9).



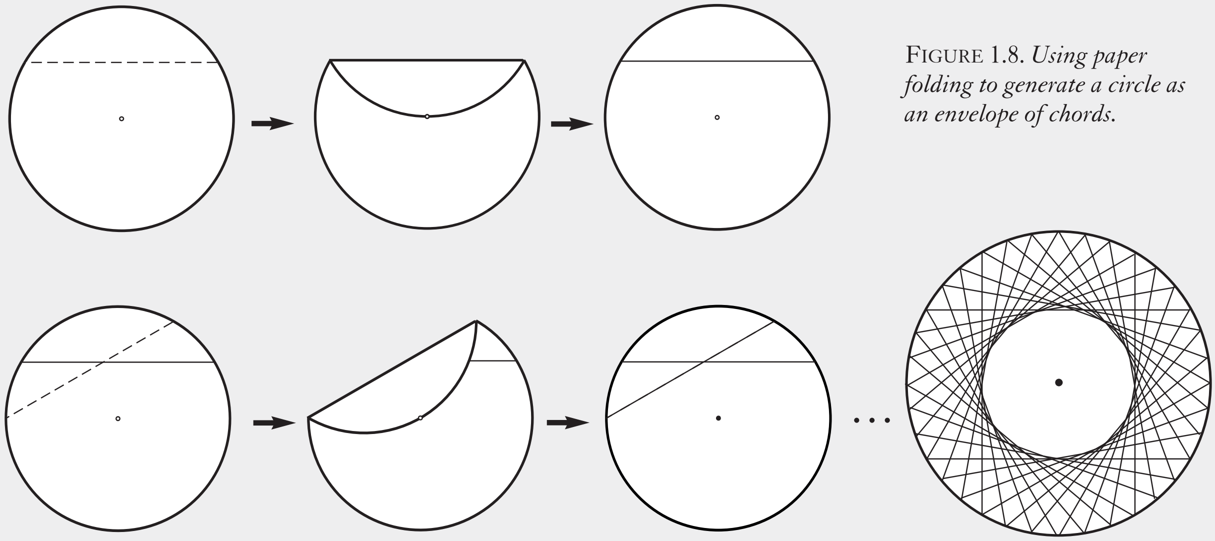


FIGURE 1.8. *Using paper folding to generate a circle as an envelope of chords.*

ed itself to mathematicians by its difficulty and elegance, even if its great utility in practice were not apparent." Because others assumed this problem was unsolvable, and were deluded by the accidental success of the wrong method, they refused to believe that circumstances would arise necessitating its solution. Gauss, on the other hand, considered the solution, before the necessity presented itself, knowing, based on his study of Kepler and Leibniz, that such a necessity would certainly arise.

Introducing the Conic Sections

Before embarking on our journey to re-discover the method by which Gauss determined the orbit of Ceres, we suggest the reader investigate for himself certain simple characteristics of curves that are relevant to the following chapters. As we shall show later, Kepler discovered that the planets known to him moved around the sun in orbits in the shape of ellipses. By Gauss's time, objects such as comets had been observed to move in orbits whose shape was that of other, related curves. All these related curves can be generated by slicing a cone at different angles, and are therefore called "conic sections." **(Figure 1.6)**

The conic sections can be constructed in a variety of different ways. (SEE **Figure 1.7**, as well as the **Appendix, "The Harmonic Relationships in an Ellipse"**) The reader can get a preliminary sense of some of the geometrical properties of the conic sections, by carrying out the following construction.

Take a piece of waxed paper and draw a circle on it. **(Figure 1.8)** Then put a dot at the center of the circle. Now fold the circumference onto the point at the center and make a crease. Unfold the paper and make a new fold, bringing another point on the circumference to the point

FIGURE 1.9. *Conic sections generated as envelopes of straight lines, using the "waxed paper folding" method. (a) Ellipse. (b) Hyperbola. (c) Parabola.*

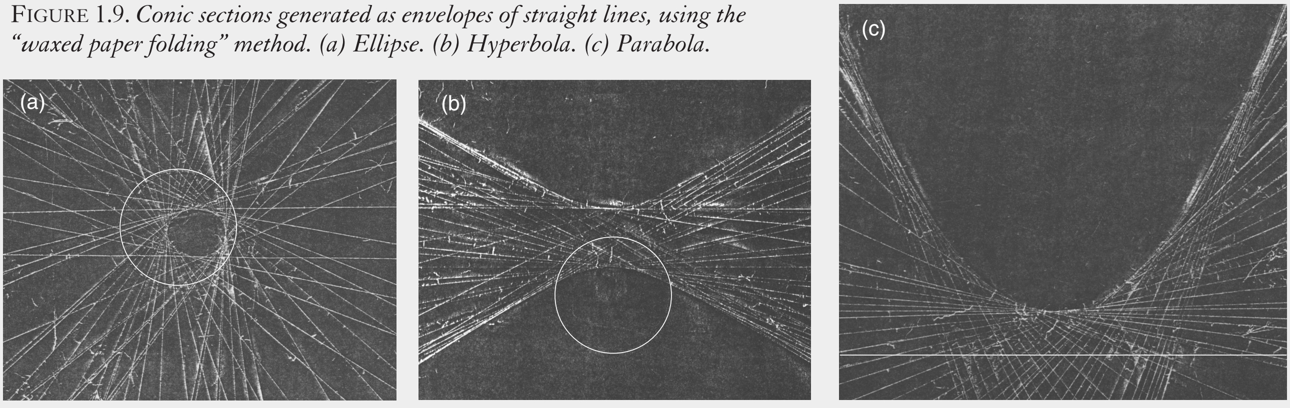
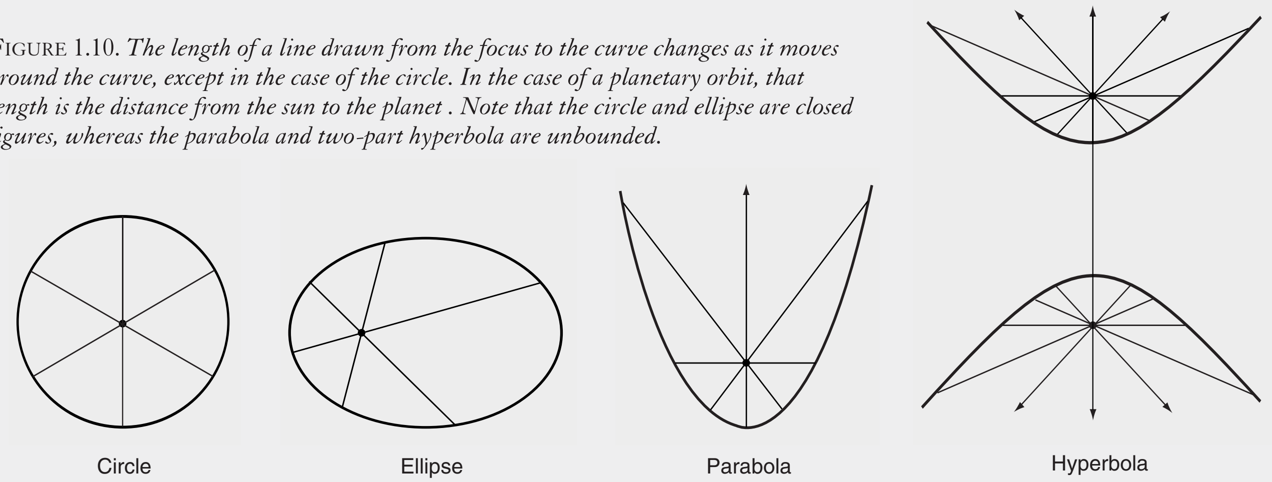


FIGURE 1.10. *The length of a line drawn from the focus to the curve changes as it moves around the curve, except in the case of the circle. In the case of a planetary orbit, that length is the distance from the sun to the planet . Note that the circle and ellipse are closed figures, whereas the parabola and two-part hyperbola are unbounded.*



at the center. Make another crease. Repeat this process around the entire circumference (approximately 25 times). At the end of this process, you will see a circle enveloped by the creases in the wax paper.

Now take another piece of wax paper and do the same thing, but this time put the point a little away from the center. At the end of this process, the creases will envelop an ellipse, with the dot being one focus. **(Figure 1.9a)**

Repeat this construction several times, each time moving the point a little farther away from the center of the circle. Then try it with the point outside the circle; this will generate a hyperbola. **(Figure 1.9b)** Then make the same construction, using a line and a point, to construct a parabola. **(Figure 1.9c)**

In this way, you can construct all the conic sections as envelopes of lines. Now, think of the different curvatures involved in each conic section, and the relationship of that curvature to the position of the dot (focus).

To see this more clearly, do the following. In each of the constructions, draw a straight line from the focus to the curve. **(Figure 1.10)** How does the length of this line change, as it rotates around the focus? How is this change different in each curve?

Over the next several chapters, we will discover how these geometrical relationships reflect the harmonic ordering of the Universe.

—*Bruce Director*

CHAPTER 2

Clues from Kepler

What did Gauss do, which other astronomers and mathematicians of his time did not, and which led those others to make wildly erroneous forecasts on the path of the new planet? Perhaps we shall have to consult Gauss's great teacher, Johannes Kepler, to give us some clues to this mystery.

Gauss first of all adopted Kepler's crucial hypothesis, that the *motion of a celestial object is determined solely by its orbit,* according to the intelligible principles Kepler demonstrated to govern all known motions in the solar system. In the Keplerian determination of orbital motion, no information is required concerning mass, velocity, or any other details of the orbiting object itself. Moreover, as Gauss demonstrated, and as we shall rediscover for ourselves, the orbit and the orbital motion in its totality, can be adduced from nothing more than the internal "curvature" of any portion of the orbit, however small.

Think this over carefully. Here, the science of Kepler, Gauss, and Riemann distinguishes itself *absolutely* from that of Galileo, Newton, Laplace, *et al.* Orbits and changes of orbit (which in turn are subsumed by higher-order orbits) are *ontologically primary.* The relation of the Keplerian orbit, as a relatively "timeless" existence, to the array of successive positions of the orbiting body, is like that of an hypothesis to its array of theorems. From this standpoint, we can say it is the orbit which "moves" the planet, not the planet which creates the orbit by its motion!

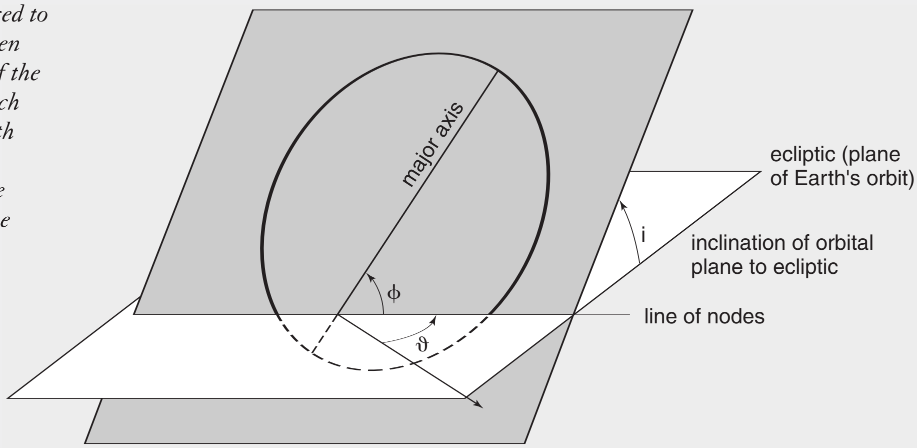


FIGURE 2.1. *A set of three angles is used to specify the spatial orientation of a given Keplerian orbit relative to the orbit of the Earth. (1) Angle of inclination i, which the plane of the given orbit makes with the ecliptic plane (the plane of the Earth's orbit). (2) Angle* ϕ, *which the orbit's major axis makes with the "line of nodes" (the line of intersection of the plane of the given orbit and the ecliptic plane). (3) Angle* ϑ, *which the line of nodes makes with some fixed axis* a *in the ecliptic plane (the latter is generally taken to be the direction of the "vernal equinox").*

If we interfere with the motion of an orbiting object, then we are doing work against the orbit as a whole. The result is to change the orbit; and this, in turn, causes the change in the visible motion of the object, which we ascribe to our efforts. That, and not the bestial "pushing and pulling" of Sarpian-Newtonian point-mass physics, is the way our Universe works. Any competent astronaut, in order to successfully pilot a rendezvous in space, must have a sensuous grasp of these matters. Gauss's entire method rests upon it.

Gauss adopted an additional, secondary hypothesis, likewise derived from Kepler, for which we have been prepared by Chapter 1: At least to a *very high degree of precision,* the orbit of any object which does not pass extremely close to some other body in our solar system (moons are excluded, for example), has the form of a simple conic section (a circle, an ellipse, a parabola, or a hyperbola) with focal point at the center of the sun. Under such conditions, the motion of the celestial object is *entirely determined* by a set of five parameters, known among astronomers as the "elements of the orbit," which specify the form and position of the orbit in space. Once the "elements" of an orbit are specified, and *for as long as the object remains in the specified orbit,* its motion is entirely determined *for all past, present, and future times!*

Gauss demonstrated how the "elements" of any orbit, and thereby the orbital motion itself in its totality, can be adduced from nothing more than the curvature of any "arbitrarily small" portion of the orbit; and how the latter can in turn be be adduced—in an eminently practical way—from the "intervals," defined by only three good, closely spaced observations of apparent positions as seen from the Earth!

The 'Elements' of an Orbit

The *elements* of a Keplerian elliptical orbit consist of the following:

• Two parameters, determining the position of the *plane of the object's orbit* relative to the plane of the Earth's orbit (called the "ecliptic"). **(Figure 2.1)** Since the sun is the common focal point of both orbits, the two orbital planes intersect in a line, called the "*line of nodes.*" The relative position of the two planes is uniquely determined, once we prescribe:

(i) their angle of inclination to each other (i.e., the angle between the planes); and

(ii) the angle made by the line of nodes with some fixed axis in the plane of the Earth's orbit.

• Two parameters, specifying the *shape* and *overall scale* of the object's Keplerian orbit. **(Figure 2.2)** It is not necessary to go into this in detail now, but the chiefly employed parameters are:

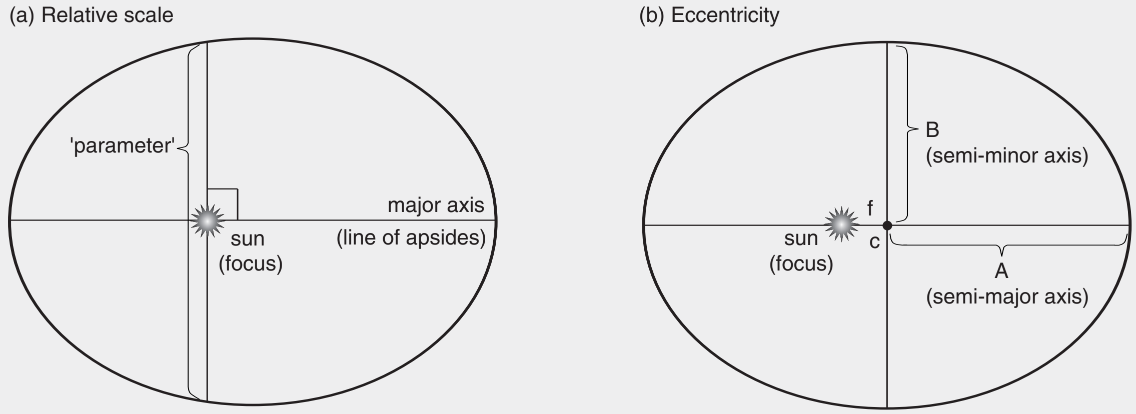
(iii) the relative scale of the orbit, as specified (for example) by its width when cut perpendicular to its major axis through the focus (i.e., center of the sun);

(iv) a measure of shape known as the "eccentricity," which we shall examine later, but whose value is 0 for circular orbits, between 0 and 1 for elliptical orbits, exactly 1 for parabolic orbits, and greater than 1 for hyperbolic orbits. Instead of the eccentricity, one can also use the perihelial distance, i.e., the shortest distance from the orbit to the center of the sun, or its ratio to the width parameter;

• Lastly, we have:

(v) one parameter specifying the angle which the main axis of the object's orbit within its own orbital plane, makes with the line of intersection with the Earth's orbit ("line of nodes"). For this purpose, we can

FIGURE 2.2. *(a) The relative scale of the orbit can be measured by the line perpendicular to the line of apsides, drawn through the focus (sun). This line is known as the "parameter" of the orbit. (b) The eccentricity is measured as the ratio of the distance f from the focus to the center of the orbit (point c, the midpoint of the major axis) divided by the semi-major axis A. For the circle, in which case the focus and center coincide, f = 0; for the ellipse, 0 < f/A < 1.*



take the angle between the major axis of the object's orbit and the line of nodes. (Figure 2.1)

The entire motion of the orbiting body is determined by these elements of the orbit alone. If you have mastered Kepler's principles, you can compute the object's precise position at any future or past time. All that you must know, in addition to Kepler's laws and the five parameters just described, is a single time when the planet was (or will be) in some particular locus in the orbit, such as the perihelial position. (Sometimes, astronomers include the time of last perihelion-crossing among the "elements.")

Now, let us go back to Fall 1801, as Gauss pondered over the problem of how to determine the orbit of the unknown object observed by Piazzi, from nothing but a handful of observations made in the weeks before it disappeared in the glare of the morning sun.

The first point to realize, of course, is that the tiny arc of a few degrees, which Piazzi's object appeared to describe against the background of the stars, was not the real path of the object in space. Rather, the positions recorded by Piazzi were the result of a rather complicated combination of motions. Indeed, the observed motion of any celestial object, as seen from the Earth, is compounded *chiefly* from the following three processes, or degrees of action:

1. The rotation of the Earth on its axis (uniform circular rotation, period one day). **(Figure 2.3)**

2. The motion of the Earth in its known Keplerian orbit around the sun (non-uniform motion on an ellipse, period one year). **(Figure 2.4)**

3. The motion of the planet in an unknown Keplerian orbit (non-uniform motion, period unknown in the case of an elliptical orbit, or nonexistent in case of a parabolic or hyperbolic orbit). **(Figure 2.5)**

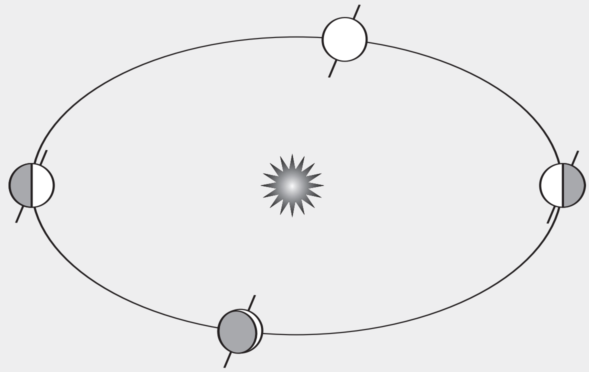
Thus, when we observe the planet, what we see is a kind of blend of all of these motions, mixed or "multiplied" together in a complex manner. Within any interval of time, however short, all three degrees of action are operating *together* to produce the apparent positions of the object. As it turns out, there is no simple way to "separate out" the three degrees of motion from the observations, because (as we shall see) the exact way the three motions are combined, depends on the parameters of the unknown orbit, which is exactly what we are trying to determine! So, *from a deductive standpoint,* we would seem to be caught in a hopeless, vicious circle. We shall get back to this point later.

Although the main features of the apparent motion are produced by the "triple product" of two elliptical motion and one circular motion, as just mentioned, several other processes are also operating, which have a comparatively slight, but nevertheless distinctly measurable effect on the apparent motions. In particular, for his *precise* forecast, Gauss had to take into account the following known effects:

4. The 25,700-year cycle known as the "precession of the equinoxes," which reflects a slow shift in the Earth's axis of rotation over the period of observation. **(Figure 2.6)** The angular change of the Earth's axis in the course of a single year, causes a shift in the apparent positions of observed objects of the order of tens of seconds of arc (depending on their inclination to the celestial equator), which is much larger than the margin of

FIGURE 2.3. *Rotation of Earth (daily).*

FIGURE 2.4. *Orbit of Earth (yearly).*



precision which Gauss required. (In Gauss's time astronomers routinely measured the apparent positions of objects in the sky to an accuracy of one second of arc, which corresponds to a 1,296,000th part of a full circle. Recall the standard angular measure: one full circle = 360 degrees; one degree = 60 minutes of arc; one minute of arc = 60 seconds of arc. Gauss is always working with parts-per-million accuracy, or better.)

5. The "nutation," which is a smaller periodic shift in the Earth's axis, superimposed on the 25,700-year precession, and chiefly connected with the orbit of the moon.

6. A slight shift of the apparent direction of a distant star or planet relative to the "true" one, called "aberration," due to the compound effect of the finite velocity of light and the velocity of the observer during the time it takes the light to reach him.

7. The apparent positions of stars and planets, as seen from the Earth, are also significantly modified by the diffraction of light in the atmosphere, which bends the rays from the observed object, and shifts its apparent position to a greater or lesser degree, depending on its angle above the horizon. Gauss assumed that Piazzi, as an experienced astronomer, had already made the nec-

FIGURE 2.5. *Unknown orbit of "mystery planet" (period unknown).*

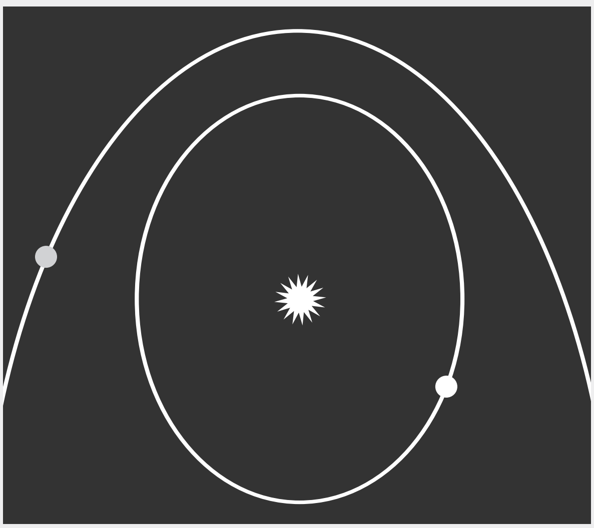
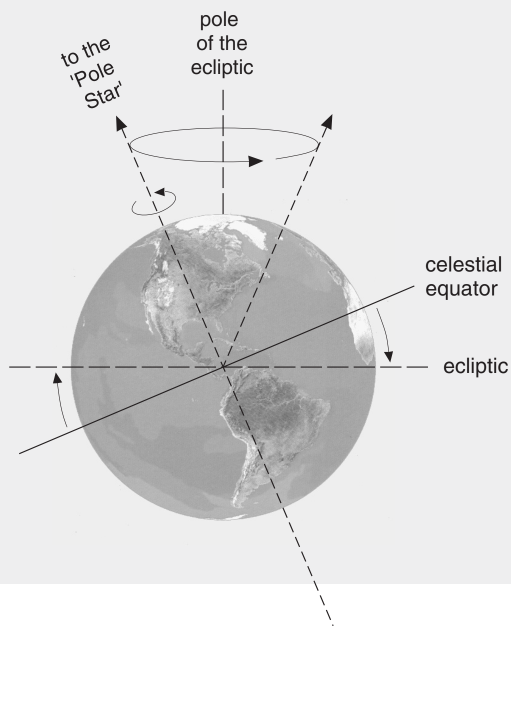


FIGURE 2.6. *Precession of the equinoxes (period 25,700 years).The "precession" appears as a gradual shift in the apparent positions of rising and setting stars on the horizon, as well as a shift in position of the celestial pole. This phenomenon arises because Earth's axis of rotation is not fixed in direction relative to its orbit and the stars, but rotates (precesses) very slowly around an imaginary axis called the "pole of the ecliptic," the direction perpendicular to the ecliptic plane (the plane of the Earth's orbit).*



essary corrections for diffraction in the reported observations. Nevertheless, Gauss naturally had to allow for a certain margin of error in Piazzi's observations, arising from the imprecision of optical instruments, in the determination of time, and other causes.

Finally, in addition to the exact times and observed positions of the object in the sky, Gauss also had to know the exact geographical position of Piazzi's observatory on the surface of the Earth.

What Did Piazzi See?

Let us assume, for the moment, that the complications introduced by effects **4**, **5**, **6**, and **7** above are of a relatively technical nature and do not touch upon what Gauss called "the nerve of my method." Focus first on obtaining some insight into the way the three main degrees of action **1**, **2**, and **3** combine to yield the observed positions.

For exploratory purposes, do something like the following experiment, which requires merely a large room and tables. **(Figures 2.7 and 2.8)** Set up one object to represent the sun, and arrange three other objects to represent three successive positions of the Earth in its orbit around the sun. This can be done in many variations, but a reasonable first selection of the "Earth" positions would be to place them on a circle of about two meters (about 6.5 feet) radius around the "sun," and about 23 centimeters (about 9 inches) apart—corresponding, let us say, to the positions on the Sundays of three successive weeks. Now arrange another three objects at a greater distance from the "sun," for example 5 meters (16 feet), and separated from each other by, say 6 and 7 centimeters. These positions need not be exactly on a circle, but only very roughly so. They represent hypothetical positions of Piazzi's object on the same three successive Sundays of observation.

For the purpose of the sightings we now wish to make, the best choice of "celestial objects" is to use small, bright-colored spheres or beads of diameter 1 cm or less, mounted at the end of thin wooden sticks which are fixed to wooden disks or other objects, the latter serving as bases placed on the table, as shown in the photograph in Figure 2.7.

Now, sight from each of the Earth positions to the corresponding hypothetical positions of Piazzi's object, and beyond these to a blackboard or posters hung from an opposing wall. Imagine that wall to represent part of the celestial sphere, or "sphere of fixed stars." Mark the positions on the wall which lie on the lines of sight between the three pairs of positions of the Earth and Piazzi's object. Those three marks on the wall, represent the "data" of three of Piazzi's observations, in terms of the object's apparent position relative to the background of the fixed stars, assuming the observations were made on successive Sundays. Experimenting with different relative positions of the two in their orbits, we can see how the observational phenomenon of apparent retrograde motion and "looping" can come about (in fact, Piazzi observed a retrograde motion). **(Figure 2.9)** Experiment also with different arrangements of the spheres representing Piazzi's object, as might correspond to different orbits.

From this kind of exploration, we are struck by an enormous apparent ambiguity in the observations. What Piazzi saw in his telescope was only a very faint point of light, hardly distinguishable from a distant star except by its motion with respect to the fixed stars from day to day.

EIRNS/Michael Micale

FIGURE 2.7. *Author Bruce Director demonstrates Piazzi's sightings. The models on the table in the foreground represent the three different positions of the Earth. The models on the table in front of the board represent the corresponding positions of Ceres. Marks 1, 2, and 3 on the board represent the sightings of Ceres, as seen from the corresponding positions of the Earth.*

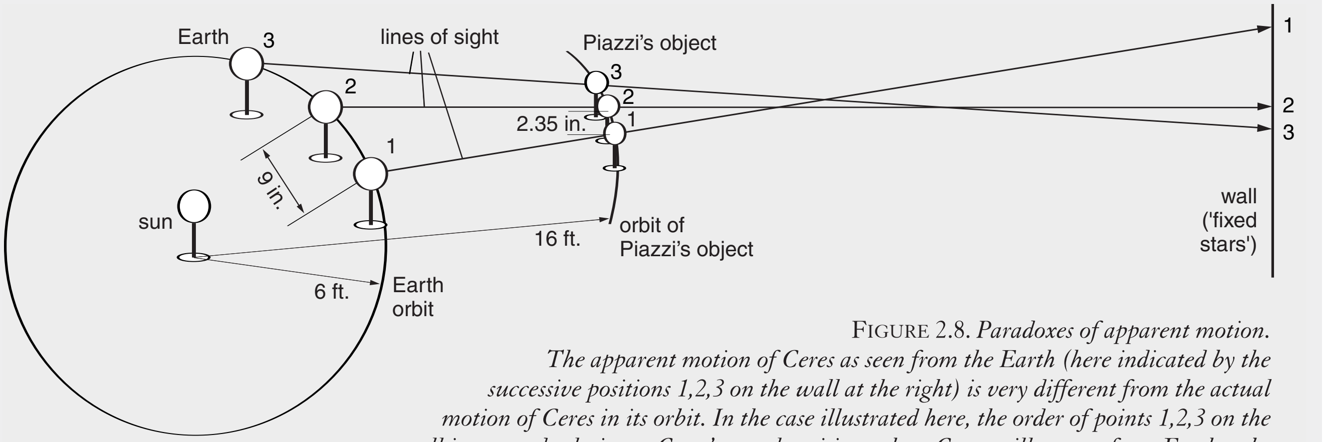


FIGURE 2.8. *Paradoxes of apparent motion. The apparent motion of Ceres as seen from the Earth (here indicated by the successive positions 1,2,3 on the wall at the right) is very different from the actual motion of Ceres in its orbit. In the case illustrated here, the order of points 1,2,3 on the wall is reversed relative to Ceres' actual positions; thus, Ceres will appear from Earth to be moving backwards! The bizarre appearance of retrograde motion and "looping" is due to the differential in motion of Earth and Ceres, combined with their relative configuration in space, Earth's orbital motion being faster than that of Ceres (see Figure 2.9). In reality, the apparent motion is further complicated by the circumstance that the two bodies are orbiting in different planes.*

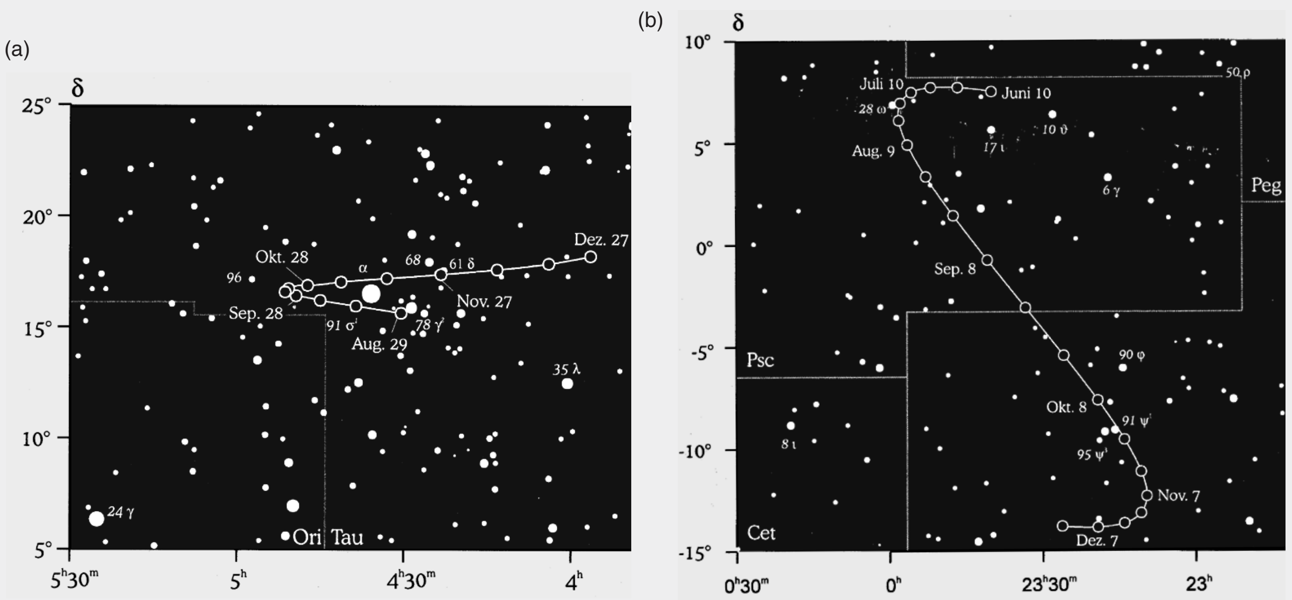
On the face of things, there would seem to be no way to know exactly how far away the object might be, nor in what exact direction it might be moving in space. Indeed, all we really have are three straight lines-of-sight, running from each of the three positions of the Earth to the corresponding marks on the wall. For all we know, each of the three positions of Piazzi's object might be located anywhere along the corresponding line-of-sight! We do know the *time intervals* between the positions we are looking at (in this case a period of one week), but how can that help us? Those times, in and of themselves, do not even tell us how fast the object is really moving, since it might be closer or farther away, and moving more or less toward us or away from us.

Try as we will, there seems to be no way to determine the positions in space from the observations in a deductive fashion. But haven't we forgotten what Kepler taught us, about the primacy of the *orbit,* over the motions and positions?

Gauss didn't forget, and we shall discover his solution in the coming chapters.

—Jonathan Tennenbaum

FIGURE 2.9. *Star charts show apparent retrograde motion for the asteroids (a) Ceres, and (b) Pallas, during 1998.*



CHAPTER 3

Method—Not Trial-and-Error

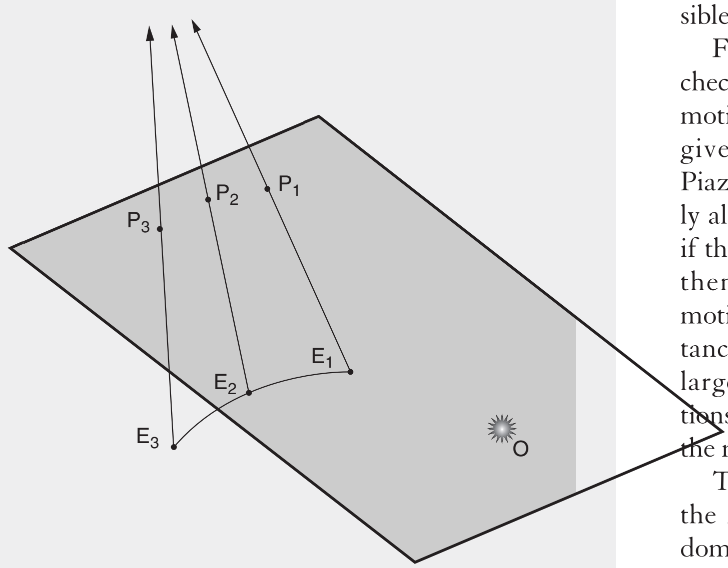
In investigations such as we are now pursuing, it should not be so much asked "what has occurred," as "what has occurred that has never occurred before."

—C. Auguste Dupin,
in Edgar Allan Poe's
"The Murders in the Rue Morgue"

With Dupin's words in mind, let us return to the dilemma in which we had entangled ourselves in our discussion in the previous chapter. That dilemma was connected to the fact, that what Piazzi observed as the motion of the unknown object against the fixed stars, was neither the object's actual path in space, nor even a simple projection of that path onto the celestial sphere of the observer, but rather, the result of the motion of the object and the motion of the Earth, mixed together.

Thanks to the efforts of Kepler and his followers, the determination of the orbit of the Earth, subsuming its distance and position relative to the sun on any given day of the year, was quite precisely known by Gauss's time. Accordingly, we can formulate the challenge posed by Piazzi's observations in the following way: We can determine a precise set of positions in space from which Piazzi's observations were made, taking into account the Earth's own motion. From each of the positions of Palermo, where Piazzi's observatory was located, draw a straight line-of-sight in the direction in which Piazzi saw the object at that moment. All we can say with certainty about the actual positions of the unknown object at the given times, is that each position lies *somewhere* along the corresponding straight line. What shall we do?

FIGURE 3.1. *Piazzi's observations define three "lines of sight" from three Earth positions E_1,E_2,E_3, but do not tell us where the planet lies on any of those lines. We do know that the positions lie on some plane through the sun.*



In the face of such an apparent degree of ambiguity, any attempt to "curve fit" fails. For, there are no well-defined positions on which to "fit" an orbit! But, don't we know *something* more, which could help us? After all, Kepler taught that the geometrical *forms* of the orbits are (to within a very high degree of precision, at least) plane conic sections, having a common focus at the center of the sun. Kepler also provided a crucial, additional set of constraints (to be examined in Chapter 7), which determine the precise motion in any given orbit, once the "elements" of the orbit discussed last chapter have been determined.

Now, unfortunately, Piazzi's observations don't even tell us what *plane* the orbit of Piazzi's object lies in. How do we find the right one?

Take an arbitrary plane through the sun. The lines-of-sight of Piazzi's observations will intersect that plane in as many points, each of which is a candidate for the position of the object at the given time. Next, try to construct a conic section, with a focus at the sun, which goes through those points or at least fits them as closely as possible. (Alas! We are back to curve-fitting!) **(Figure 3.1)**

Finally—and this is the substantial new feature—check whether the time intervals defined by a Keplerian motion along the hypothesized conic section between the given points, agree with the actual time intervals of Piazzi's observations. If they don't fit, which will be nearly always the case, then we reject the orbit. For example, if the intersection-points are very far away from the sun, then Kepler's constraints would imply a very slow motion in the corresponding orbit; outside a certain distance, the corresponding time-intervals would become larger than the times between Piazzi's actual observations. Conversely, if the points are very close to the sun, the motion would be too fast to agree with Piazzi's times.

The consideration of time-intervals thus helps to limit the range of trial-and-error search somewhat, but the domain of apparent possibilities still remains monstrously large. With the unique exception of Gauss, astronomers

C.F. Gauss: 'To determine the orbit of a heavenly body, without any hypothetical assumption'

It seems somewhat strange that the general problem—*to determine the orbit of a heavenly body, without any hypothetical assumption, from observations not embracing a great period of time, and not allowing a selection with a view to the application of special methods*—was almost wholly neglected up to the beginning of the present century; or, at least, not treated by any one in a manner worthy of its importance; since it assuredly commended itself to mathematicians by its difficulty and elegance, even if its great utility in practice were not apparent. An opinion had universally prevailed that a complete determination from observations embracing a short interval of time was impossible,—an ill-founded opinion,—for it is now clearly shown that the orbit of a heavenly body may be determined quite nearly from good observations embracing only a few days; and this without any hypothetical assumption.

Some ideas occurred to me in the month of September of the year 1801, [as I was] engaged at that time on a very different subject, which seemed to point to the solution of the great problem of which I have spoken. Under such circumstances we not infrequently, for fear of being too much led away by an attractive investigation, suffer the associations of ideas, which, more attentively considered, might have proved most fruitful in results, to be lost from neglect. And the same fate might have befallen these conceptions, had they not happily occurred at the most propitious moment for their preservation and encouragement that could have been selected. For just about this time the report of the new planet, discovered on the first day of January of that year with the telescope at Palermo, was the subject of universal conversation; and soon afterwards the observations made by that distinguished astronomer Piazzi, from the above date to the eleventh of February were published.

Nowhere in the annals of astronomy do we meet with so great an opportunity, and a greater one could hardly be imagined, for showing most strikingly, the value of this problem, than in this crisis and urgent necessity, when all hope of discovering in the heavens this planetary atom, among innumerable small stars after the lapse of nearly a year, rested solely upon a sufficiently approximate knowledge of its orbit to be based upon these very few observations. Could I ever have found a more seasonable opportunity to test the practical value of my conceptions, than now in employing them for the determination of the orbit of the planet Ceres, which during these forty-one days had described a geocentric arc of only three degrees, and after the lapse of a year must be looked for in a region of the heavens very remote from that in which it was last seen?

The first application of the method was made in the month of October 1801, and the first clear night (December 7, 1801), when the planet was sought for as directed by the numbers deduced from it, restored the fugitive to observation. Three other new planets subsequently discovered, furnished new opportunities for examining and verifying the efficiency and generality of the method. [*emphasis in original*]

Excerpted from the Preface to the English edition of Gauss's "Theory of the Motion of the Heavenly Bodies Moving about the Sun in Conic Sections."

felt themselves forced to make ad hoc assumptions and guesses, in order to radically reduce the range of possibilities, and thereby reduce the trial-and-error procedures to a minimum.

For example, the astronomer Wilhelm Olbers and others decided to start with the working assumption that the sought-for orbit was very nearly circular, in which case the motion becomes particularly simple. Kepler's third constraint (usually referred to as his "Third Law") determines a specific rate of uniform motion along the circle, as soon as the radius of the circular orbit is known. According to that third constraint, the square of periodic time in any closed orbit—i.e., a circular or an elliptical one—as measured in years, is equal to the cube of the orbit's major axis, as measured in units of the major axis of the Earth's orbit. Next, Olbers took **two** of Piazzi's observations, and calculated the radius which a circular orbit would have to have, in order to fit those two observations.

It is easy to see how to do that in principle: The two observations define two lines of sight, each originating from the position of the Earth at the moment of observation. Imagine a sphere of variable radius r, centered at the sun. **(Figure 3.2)** For each choice of r, that sphere will intersect the lines-of-sight in two points, P and Q. Assuming the planet were actually moving on a circular orbit of radius r, the points P and Q would be the corresponding positions at the times of the two observations, and the orbit would be the great circle on the sphere passing through those two points. On the other hand, Kepler's constraints tell us exactly how large is the arc which any planet would traverse, during the time interval between the two observations, if its orbit were a circle of radius r. Now compare the arc determined from

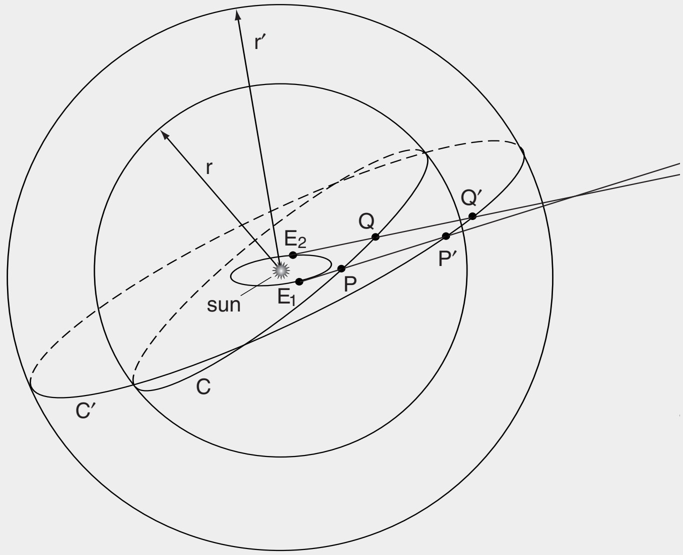


FIGURE 3.2. *Method to determine the orbit of Ceres, on the assumption that the orbit is circular. Two sightings of Ceres define two lines of sight coming from the Earth positions E_1, E_2 (the Earth's positions at the moments of observation). A sphere around the sun, of radius r, intersects the lines of sight in two points P,Q, which lie on a unique great circle C on that sphere. A sphere of some different radius r′ would define a different set of points P′, Q′ and a different hypothetical orbit C′. Determine the unique value of r, for which the size of the arc PQ agrees with the rate of motion a planet would really have, if it were moving according to Kepler's laws on the circular orbit C over the time interval between the given observations.*

Kepler's constraint, with the actual arc between *P* and *Q*, as the length of radius *r* varies, and locate the value or values of *r*, for which the two become coincident. That determination can easily be translated into a mathematical equation whose numerical solution is not difficult to work out. Having found a circular orbit fitting two observations in that way, Olbers then used the comparison with other observations to correct the original orbit.

Toward the end of 1801 astronomers all over Europe began to search for the object Piazzi had seen in January-February, based on approximations such as Olbers'. The search was in vain! In December of that year, Gauss published his hypothesis for the orbit of Ceres, based on his own, entirely new method of calculation. According to calculations based on Gauss's elements, the object would be located more than 6° to the south of the positions forecast by Olbers, an enormous angle in astronomical terms. Shortly thereafter, the object was found very close to the position predicted by Gauss.

Characteristically, *Gauss's method used no trial-and-error at all.* Without making any assumptions on the particular form of the orbit, and using only three well-chosen observations, Gauss was able to construct a good first approximation to the orbit immediately, and then perfect it *without further observations* to a high precision, making possible the rediscovery of Piazzi's object.

To accomplish this, Gauss treated the set of observations (including the times as well as the apparent positions) as being the equivalent of a *set of harmonic intervals.* Even though the observations are, as it were, jumbled up by the effects of projection along lines-of-sight and motion of the Earth, we must start from the standpoint that the underlying curvature, determining an entire orbit from any arbitrarily small segment, is somehow lawfully expressed in such an array of intervals. To determine the orbit of Piazzi's object, we must be able to identify the specific, tell-tale characteristics which reveal the whole orbit from, so to speak, "between the intervals" of the observations, and distinguish it from all other orbits. This requires that we conceptualize the higher curvature underlying the entire manifold of Keplerian orbits, taken as a whole. Actually, the higher curvature required, cannot be adequately expressed by the sorts of mathematical functions that existed prior to Gauss's work.

We can shed some light on these matters, by the following elementary experimental-geometrical investigation. Using the familiar nails-and-thread method, con-

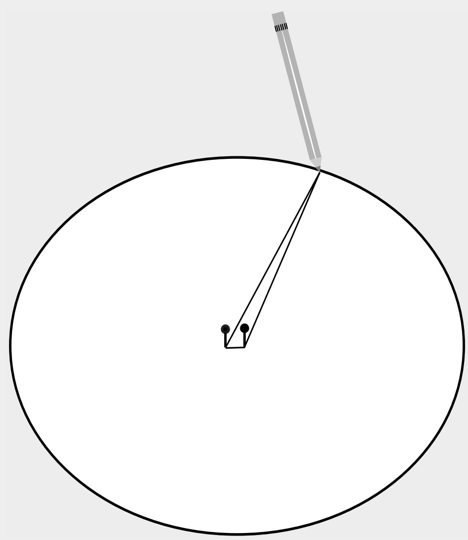


FIGURE 3.3. *Constructing an ellipse in the shape of the orbit of Mars.*

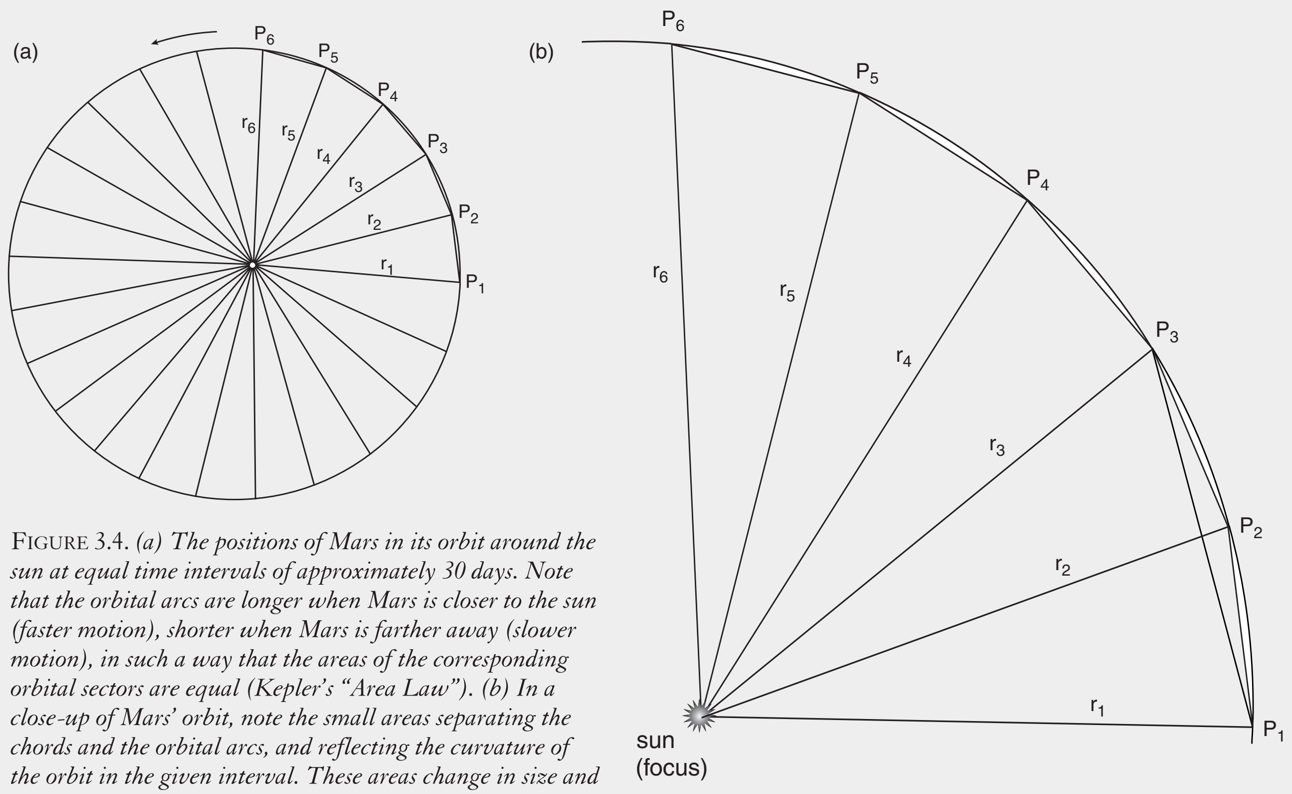


FIGURE 3.4. *(a) The positions of Mars in its orbit around the sun at equal time intervals of approximately 30 days. Note that the orbital arcs are longer when Mars is closer to the sun (faster motion), shorter when Mars is farther away (slower motion), in such a way that the areas of the corresponding orbital sectors are equal (Kepler's "Area Law"). (b) In a close-up of Mars' orbit, note the small areas separating the chords and the orbital arcs, and reflecting the curvature of the orbit in the given interval. These areas change in size and shape from one part of the orbit to the next, reflecting a constantly changing curvature.*

struct an ellipse having the shape of the Mars orbit, as follows. **(Figure 3.3)** Hammer two nails into a flat board covered with white paper, at a distance of 5.6 cm from each other. Take a piece of string 60 cm long and tie each end to one of the nails—or alternatively, make a loop of string of length 60 + 5.6 = 65.6 cm, and loop it around both nails. Pulling the loop tight with the tip of a pencil as shown, trace an ellipse. The positions of the two nails represent the foci. The resulting curve will be a scaled-down replica of Mars' orbit, with the sun at one of the foci.

Observe that the circumference generated is hardly distinguishable, by the naked eye, from a circle. Indeed, mark the midpoint of the ellipse (which will be the point midway between the foci), and compare the distances from various points on the circumference, to the *center.* You will find a maximum discrepancy of only about one millimeter (more precisely, 1.3 mm), between the maximum distance (the distance between the points on the circumference at the two ends of the major axis connecting the two foci) and the minimum distance (between the endpoints of the minor axis drawn perpendicular to the major axis at its mid-point). Thus, this ellipse's deviation from a perfect circle is only on the order of four parts in one thousand. How was Kepler able to detect and demonstrate the non-circular shape of the orbit of Mars, given such a minute deviation, and how could he correctly ascertain the precise nature of the non-circular form, on the basis of the technology available at his time?

Observe in **Figure 3.4a**, that the distances to the *sun* (the marked focus) change *very substantially***,** as we move along the ellipse.

Now, choose two points P_1 and P_2 anywhere along the circumference of the ellipse, two centimeters apart. The interval between them would correspond to successive positions of Mars at times about seven days apart (actually, up to about 10 percent more or less than that, depending on exactly where P_1 and P_2 lie, relative to the *perihelion* [closest] and *aphelion* [farthest] positions). Draw radial lines from each of P_1, P_2 to the sun, and label the corresponding lengths r_1, r_2.

Consider what is contained in the *curvilinear triangle* formed by those two radial line segments and the small arc of Mars' trajectory, from P_1 to P_2. Compare that arc with that of analogous arcs at other positions on the orbit, and consider the following propositions: Apart from the symmetrical positions relative to the two axes of the ellipse, *no two such arcs are exactly superimposable in any of their parts.* Were we to change the parameters of the ellipse—for example, by changing the distance between the foci, by any amount, however small—then *none* of the arcs on the new ellipse, no matter how small, would be superimposable with *any* of those on the first, in any of their parts! Thus, each arc is uniquely characteristic of the ellipse of which it is a part. The same is true among all species of Keplerian orbits.

Consider what means might be devised to reconstruct the whole orbit from any one such arc. For example, by what means might one determine, from a small portion of a planetary trajectory, whether it belongs to a parabolic, hyperbolic, or elliptical orbit?

Now, compare the orbital arc between P_1 and P_2 with the straight line joining P_1 and P_2. **(Figure 3.4b)** Together they bound a tiny, virtually infinitesimal area. Evidently, the unique characteristic of the particular elliptical orbit must be reflected somehow in the *specific manner* in which that arc *differs* from the line, as reflected in that "infinitesimal" area.

Finally, add a third point, P_3, and consider the curvilinear triangles corresponding to each of the three pairs (P_1, P_2), (P_2, P_3), and (P_1, P_3), together with the corresponding rectilinear triangles and "infinitesimal" areas which compose them. The harmonic mutual relations among these and the corresponding time intervals, lie at the heart of Gauss's method, which is *exactly the opposite* of "linearity in the small."

—JT

CHAPTER 4

Families of Catenaries

(An Interlude Considering Some Unexpected Facts About 'Curvature')

Any successful solution of the problem posed to Gauss must pivot on conceptualizing the characteristic curvature of Keplerian orbits "in the small." Before turning to Kepler's own investigations on this subject, it may be helpful to take a brief look at the closely related case of families of catenaries on the surface of the Earth—these being more easily accessible to direct experimentation, than the planetary orbits themselves.

Catenaries, Monads, and A First Glimpse at Modular Functions

When a flexible chain is suspended from two points, and permitted to assume its natural form under the action of its own weight, then, the portion of the chain between the two points forms a characteristic species of curve, known as a catenary. The ideal catenary is generated by a chain consisting of very small, but strong links made of a rigid material, and having very little friction; such a chain is practically inelastic (i.e., does not stretch), while at the same time being nearly perfectly flexible, down to the lower limit defined by the diameter of the individual links.

Interestingly, the form of the catenary depends only on the position of the points of suspension and the length of the chain between those points, but not on its mass or weight.

With the help of a suitable, fine-link chain, suspended parallel to, and not far from, a vertical wall or board (so that the chain's form can easily be seen and traced, as desired), carry out the following investigations.

(For some of these experiments, it is most convenient to use two nails or long pins, temporarily fixed into the wall or board, as suspension-points; the nails or pins should be relatively thin, and with narrow heads, so that the links of the chain can easily slip over them, in order to be able to vary the length of the suspended portion. In some experiments it is better to fix only one suspension-point with a nail, and to hold the other end in your hand.)

Start by fixing any two suspension-points and an arbitrary chain-length. **(Figure 4.1)** Observe the way the shape of each part of the catenary, so formed, depends on all the other parts. Thus, if we try to modify any portion of the catenary, by pushing it sideways or upwards with

FIGURE 4.1 *A catenary is formed by suspending a chain between points A and B.*

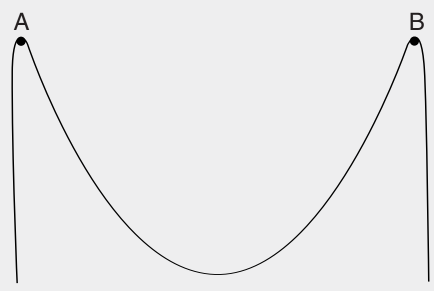
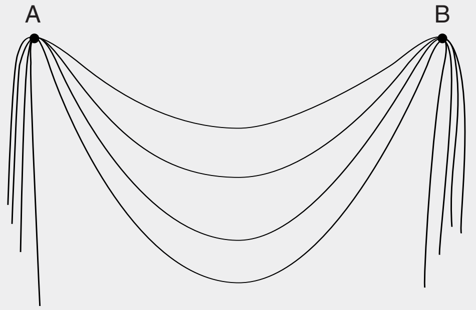


FIGURE 4.2. *Varying the lengths of the chain generates a family of catenaries of varying curvatures.*



the tip of a finger, we see that the entire curve is affected, at least slightly, over its entire length. This behavior of the catenary reflects Leibniz's principle of least action, whereby the entire Universe as a whole, including its most remote parts, reacts to any event anywhere in the Universe. There is no "isolated" point-to-point action in the way the Newtonians claim.

Note that the curvature of each individual catenary changes constantly along its length, as we go from its lowest point to its highest point.

Next, generate a family of catenaries, by keeping the suspension-points fixed, but varying the length of the chain between those points. **(Figure 4.2)** Observe the changes in the form and curvature, and the changes in the angles, which the chain makes to the horizontal at the points of suspension, as a function of the suspended length.

Generate a second family of catenaries, by keeping the chain length and one of the suspension-points fixed, while varying the other point. **(Figure 4.3)** If *A* is the first suspension-point, and *L* is the length of the suspended chain, then the second suspension-point *B* (preferably held by hand) can be located anywhere within the circle of radius *L* around *A.* For *B* on the circumference of the circle, the catenary degenerates into a straight line. (Or rather, something close to a straight line, since the latter would require a physically impossible, "infinite tension" to overcome the gravitational effect.) Observe the changes of form, as *B* moves around *A* in a circle of radius less than *L***.** Also, observe the change in the angles, which the catenary makes to the horizontal at each of the endpoints, as a function of the position of *B*. Finally, observe the changes in the tension, which the chain exerts at the endpoint *B,* held by hand, as its position is changed.

Examine this second family of catenaries for the case, where the suspended length is extremely short. Combining the variation of the endpoint with variation of length

FIGURE 4.3. *Varying the endpoint position of a fixed length of chain generates a second family of catenaries.*

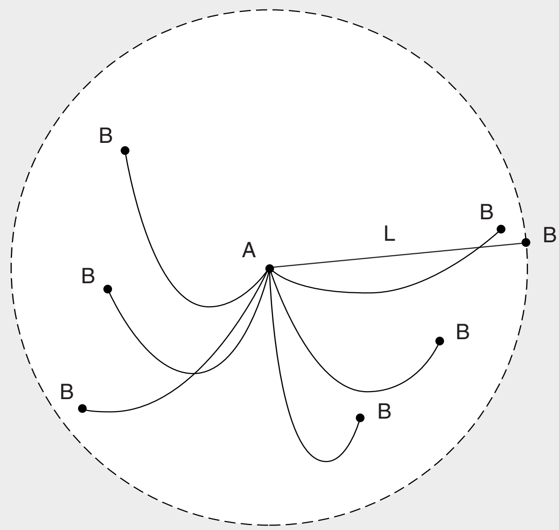
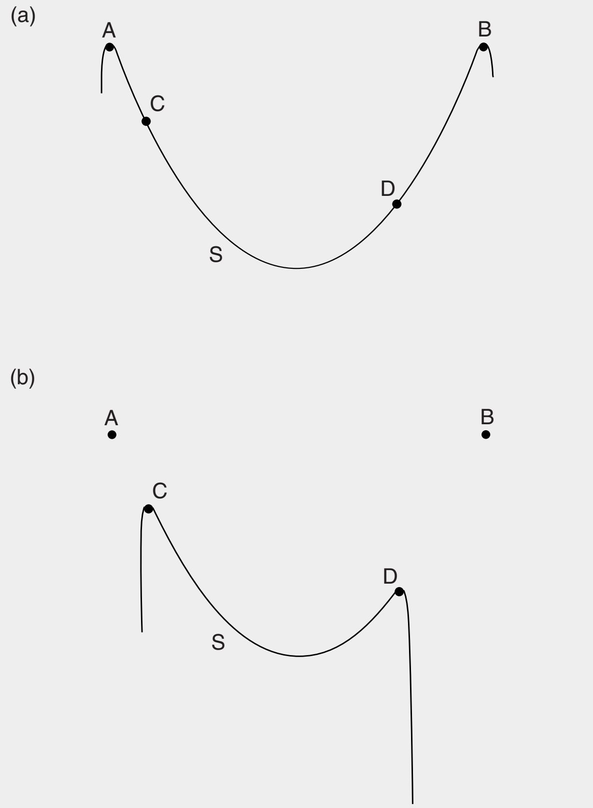


FIGURE 4.4. *Release catenary AB to points C,D. Every arc of a catenary, is itself a catenary!*



(families one and two) gives us the manifold of all elementary catenaries.

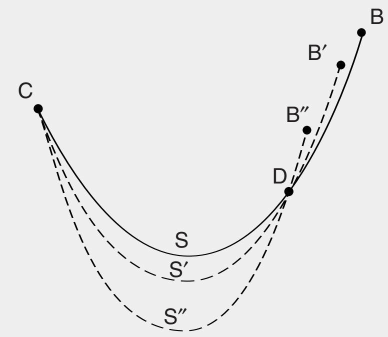
Consider, next, the following remarkable proposition: *Every arc of a catenary, is itself a catenary!* To wit: On a catenary with fixed suspension-points *A,B,* examine the arc *S* bounded by any two points *C* and *D* on the curve. (**Figure 4.4a)** Drive nails through the chain at *C* and *D* into the wall or board behind it. Note that the form of the chain remains unchanged. If we then remove the parts of the chain on either side of the arc, or simply release the chain from its original supports *A* and *B***,** then the portion of the chain between *C* and *D* will be suspended from those points as a catenary, while still retaining the original form of the arc *S*. **(Figure 4.4b)**

Consider another remarkable proposition: *The entire form of a catenary (up to its suspension-points), is implicitly determined by any of its arcs, however small.* Or, to put it another way: If any arc of one catenary, however small, is congruent in size and shape to an arc on another catenary, then the two catenaries are superimposable over their *entire* lengths. (Only the endpoints might differ, as when we replaced *A,B* by *C,D* to obtain a subcatenary of an originally longer catenary.) To get some insight into the validity of this proposition, try to "beat" it by an experiment, as follows.

Fix one of the endpoints of the arc in question, say *C,* by a nail, and mark the position of the other endpoint, *D,* on the wall or board behind the chain. (**Figure 4.5)** Now taking the end of the chain on *D*'s side, say *B,* in your hand (i.e., the right-hand endpoint, if *D* is to the right of *C,* or *vice versa*), try to move that endpoint in such a way, that the corresponding catenary, whose other suspension-point is now *C,* always passes through the position *D* as verified by the mark on the adjacent wall or board. Holding to that constraint, we generate a family of catenaries having the two common points *C* and *D***.** In doing so, observe that the shape of the arc between *C* and *D* continually changes, as the position of the movable endpoint *B* is changed. This change in shape correlates with the observation, that the tension exerted by the chain at its endpoints, changes according to their relative positions; according to the higher or lower level of tension, the arc between *C* and *D* will be less or more curved. Only a single, unique position of *B* (namely, the original one) produces exactly the same tension and same curvature, as the original arc *CD.* Our attempt to "beat" the stated proposition, fails.

While admittedly deserving more careful examination, these considerations suggest three things: Firstly, that all the catenary arcs, which are parts of one and the same catenary, share a common internal characteristic, which in turn determines the larger catenary as a whole. In consequence of this, secondly, when we look at different parts of a given catenary, *we are in a sense looking at different local expressions on the same global entity.* Although various, small portions of the catenary have different curvatures in the sense of visual geometry, in a deeper sense they all share a common "higher curvature," characteristic of the catenary of which they are parts. Finally, there must be a still higher mode of curvature, which defines the common characteristic of the entire family of catenaries. That latter entity would be congruent with Gauss's concept of a modular function for the species of catenaries, as a special case of his hypergeometric function; the latter subsuming the catenaries together with the analogous, crucial features of the Keplerian planetary orbits. (In the Earth-bound case of elementary catenaries, the distinction among different catenaries is, to a very high degree of approximation, merely one of self-similar "scaling." That is not even approximately the case for Keplerian orbits.)

FIGURE 4.5. *Only one unique position of B produces the exact tension and curvature of catenary CD. Different parts of a given catenary are local expressions of the whole, sharing a common internal characteristic.*



In a 1691 paper on the catenary problem, Leibniz notes that Galileo had made the error of identifying the catenary with a parabola. Galileo's error, and the discrepancy between the two curves, was demonstrated by Joachim Jungius (1585-1657) through careful, direct experiments. However, Jungius did not identify the true law underlying the catenary. Leibniz stressed, that the catenary cannot be understood in terms of the geometry we associate with Euclid, or, later, Descartes, but *is* susceptible to a *higher form of geometrical analysis,* whose principles are embodied in the so-called "infinitesimal calculus." The latter, in turn, is Leibniz's answer to the challenge, which Kepler threw out to the world's geometers in his *New Astronomy (Astronomia Nova)* of 1609.

—JT

Chapter 5

Kepler Calls for a 'New Geometry'

Non-linear curvature, exemplified by our exploration of catenaries, stands in the forefront of Johannes Kepler's revolutionary work *New Astronomy.* There Kepler bursts through the limitations of the Copernican heliocentric model, where the planetary orbits were assumed *a priori* to be circular.

The central paradox left by Aristarchus and Copernicus was this: Assume the motions of the planets as seen from the Earth—including the bizarre phenomena of retrograde motion—are due to the fact that the Earth is not stationary, but is itself moving in some orbit around the sun. These apparent motions result from combinations of the *unknown* true motion of the Earth and the *unknown* true motion of the heavenly bodies. How can we determine the one, without first knowing the other?

In the *New Astronomy,* Kepler recounts the exciting story, of how he was able to solve this paradox by a process of "nested triangulations," using the orbits of Mars and the Earth. Having finally determined the precise motions of *both,* a new set of anomalies arose, leading Kepler to his astonishing discovery of the elliptical orbits and the "area law" for non-uniform motion. Kepler's breakthrough is key to Gauss's whole approach to the Ceres problem, one hundred fifty years later. It is therefore fitting that we examine certain of Kepler's key steps in this and the following chapter.

As to mere shape, in fact, the orbits of the Earth, Mars, and most of the other planets (with the exception of Mercury and Pluto) are very nearly perfect circles, deviating from a perfect circular form only by a few parts in a thousand. The centers of these near-circles, on the other hand, do not coincide with the sun! Consequently, there is a constant variation in the distance between the planet and the sun in the course of an orbit, ranging between the extreme values attained at the *perihelion* (shortest distance) and the *aphelion* (farthest distance).

As Kepler noted, the perihelion and aphelion are at the same time the chief singularities of change in the planet's rate of motion along the orbit: the maximum of velocity occurs at the perihelion, and the minimum at the aphelion.

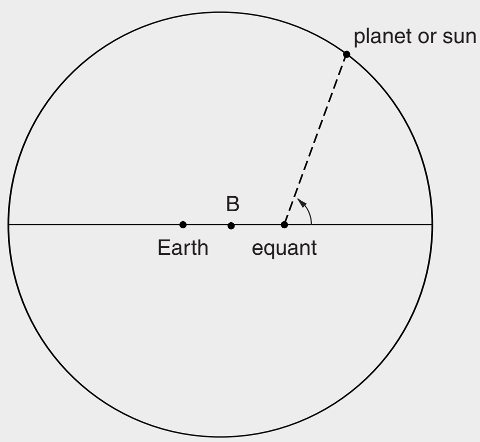
In an attempt to account for this fact, while trying to salvage the hypothesis of simple circular motion as elementary, Ptolemy had devised his theory of the "equant." According to that theory, the Earth is no longer the exact center of the motion, but rather another point *B*. **(Figure 5.1)** The planet is "driven" around its circular orbit (called an "eccentric" because of the displacement of its center from the position of the Earth) in such a way, that its *angular* motion is uniform with respect to a third point (the "equant"), located on the line of apsides opposite the Earth from the center of the eccentric circle.* In other words, the planet moves as if it were swept along the orbit by a gigantic arm, pivoted at the equant and turning around it at a constant rate.

On the basis of his precise data for Earth and Mars, Kepler was able to demolish Ptolemy's equant once and for all. This immediately raised the question: If simple rotational action is excluded as the underlying basis for planetary motion, then what new principle of action should replace it?

Step-by-step, already beginning in the *Mysterium Cosmographicum (Cosmographic Mystery),* Kepler developed his "electromagnetic" conception of the solar system, referring directly to the work of the English scientist William Gilbert, and implicitly to the investigations of Leonardo da Vinci and others on light, as well as Nicolaus of Cusa. Kepler identifies the sun as the original

* Readers should remember that in Ptolemy's astronomical model, the sun and planets are supposed to orbit about the Earth.

Figure 5.1. *To account for the differing rates of motion of the planet, Ptolemy's description placed the Earth at an eccentric (off-center) location, with the planet's uniform angular motion centered at a third, "equant" point.*



source and "organizing center" of the whole system, which is "run" on the basis of a harmonically ordered, but otherwise *constantly changing activity* of the sun vis-à-vis the planets. Kepler's conception of that activity, has nothing to do with the axiomatic assumption of smooth, featureless, linear forms of "push-pull" displacement in empty space, promoted by Sarpi and Galileo, and revived once more in Newton's solar theory, in which the sun is degraded to a mere "attracting center."

On the contrary! According to Kepler, the solar activity generates a harmonically ordered, everywhere-dense array of *events of change,* whose *ongoing, cumulative result* is reflected in—among other things—the visible motion of the planets in their orbits.

The need to elaborate a new species of mathematics, able to account for the *integration* of dense singularities, emerges ever more urgently in the course of the *New Astronomy,* as Kepler investigates the revolutionary implications of his own observation, that *the rate of motion of a planet in its orbit is governed by its distance from the sun.* This relationship emerged most clearly, in comparing the motions at the perihelion and aphelion. The ratio of the corresponding velocities was found to be precisely equal to the *inverse* ratio of the two extreme radial distances. For good reasons, Kepler chose to express this, not in terms of *velocities,* but rather in terms of the *time* required for the planet to traverse a given section of its orbit.*

Kepler's Struggle with Paradox

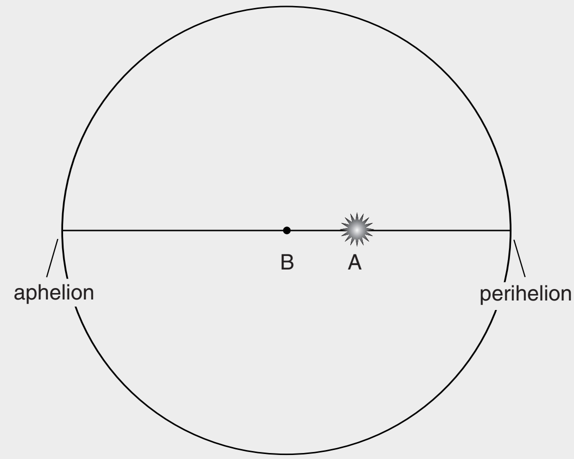
Let us join Kepler in his train of thought. While still operating with the approximation of a planetary orbit as an "eccentric circle," Kepler formulates this relationship in a preliminary way as follows: It has been demonstrated,

> that the elapsed times of a planet on equal parts of the eccentric circle (or equal distances in the ethereal air) are in the same ratio as the distances of those spaces from the point whence the eccentricity is reckoned [i.e., the sun–JT]; or more simply, to the extent that a planet is farther from the point which is taken as the center of the world, it is less strongly urged to move about that point.

Since the distances are constantly *changing,* the existence of such a relationship immediately raises the question: How does the temporally extended motion—as, for example, the periodic time corresponding to an entire revolution of the planet—relate to the magnitudes of those constantly varying "urges" or "impulses"?

* *Cf.* Fermat's later work on least-time in the propagation of light.

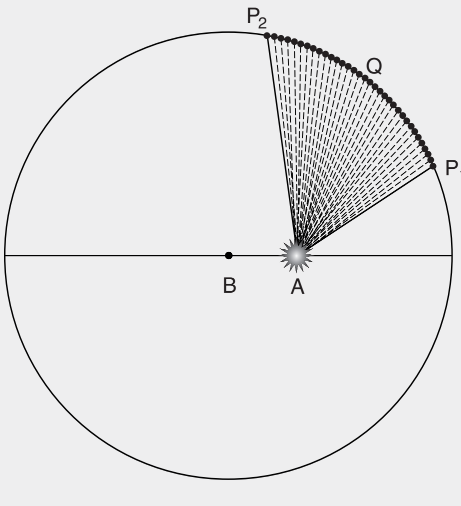
FIGURE 5.2. *Kepler's original hypothesis: The planetary orbits are circles whose centers are somewhat eccentric with regard to the sun. Kepler observed that the planet moves fastest at the perihelion, slowest at the aphelion, in apparent inverse proportion to the radial distances.*



A bit later, Kepler picks up the problem again. To follow Kepler's discussion, draw the following diagram. **(Figure 5.2)** Construct a circle and its diameter and label the center *B.* To the right of *B* mark another point *A.* The circumference of the circle represents the planetary orbit, and point *A* represents the position of the sun. Kepler writes:

> Since, therefore, the times of a planet over equal parts of the eccentric, are to one another, as the radial distances of those parts [from the sun–JT], and since the individual points of the entire . . . eccentric are all at different distances, it was no easy task I set myself, when I sought to find how one might obtain the *sums* of the individual radial distances. For, unless we can find the sum of all of them (and they are infinite in number) we cannot say how much time has elapsed for any one of them! Thus, the whole equation will not be known. *For, the whole sum of the radial distances is, to the whole periodic time, as any partial sum of the distances is to its corresponding time.* [Emphasis added]
>
> I consequently began by dividing the eccentric into 360 parts, as if these were least particles, and supposed that within one such part the distance does not change . . . .
>
> However, since this procedure is mechanical and tedious, and since it is impossible to compute the whole equation, given the value for one individual degree [of the eccentric–JT] without the others, I looked around for other means. Considering, that the points of the eccentric are infinite in number, and their radial lines are infinite in number, it struck me, that all the radial lines are contained within the area of the eccentric. I remembered that Archimedes, in seeking the ratio of the cir-

FIGURE 5.3. *Assuming the "momentary" orbital velocities are inversely proportional to the radial distances, Kepler tries to "add up" the radii to determine how much time the planet needs to go from one point of the orbit to another.*



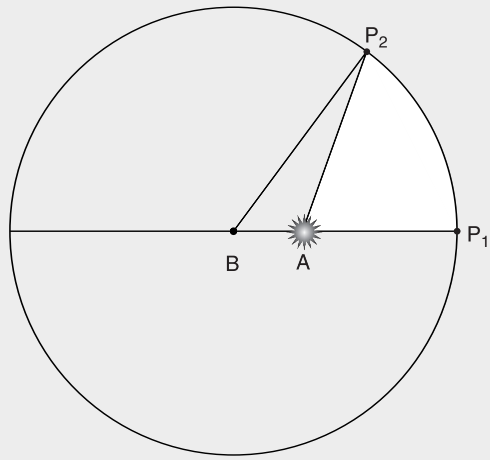
> cumference to the diameter, once divided a circle thus into an infinity of triangles—this being the hidden force of his *reductio ad absurdum*. Accordingly, instead of dividing the circumference, as before, I now cut the *area* of the eccentric into 360 parts, by lines drawn from the point whence the eccentricity is reckoned [*A,* the position of the sun–JT] . . ..

This brief passage marks a crucial breakthrough in the *New Astronomy.* To see more clearly what Kepler has done, on the same diagram as above, mark two positions P_1, P_2 of the planet on the orbit, and draw the radial lines from the sun to those positions—i.e., AP_1 and AP_2. **(Figure 5.3)** Kepler has dropped the idea of using the *length* of the arc between P_1 and P_2 as the appropriate *measure* of the action generating the orbital motion, and turned instead to the *area* of the curvilinear triangle bounded by AP_1, AP_2 and the orbital arc from P_1 to P_2.

We shall later refer to such areas as "orbital sectors." Kepler describes that area as the "sum" of the "infinite number" of radial lines *AQ,* of varying lengths, obtained as *Q* passes through all the positions of the planet from P_1 to P_2! Does he mean this literally? Or, is he not expressing, in metaphorical terms, the *coherence* between the macroscopic process, from P_1 to P_2, and the peculiar "curvature," which governs events within any arbitrarily small interval of that process?

The result, in any case, is a geometrical principle, which Kepler subsequently demonstrated to be empirically valid for the motion of all known planets in their orbits: *The time, which a planet takes in passing from any position P_1 to another position P_2 in its orbit, is proportional*

FIGURE 5.4. *Kepler's method for calculating the area swept out by the radial line from the sun to a planet on the assumption that the orbit is an eccentric circle, i.e., a circle whose center B is displaced from the position of the sun A.*



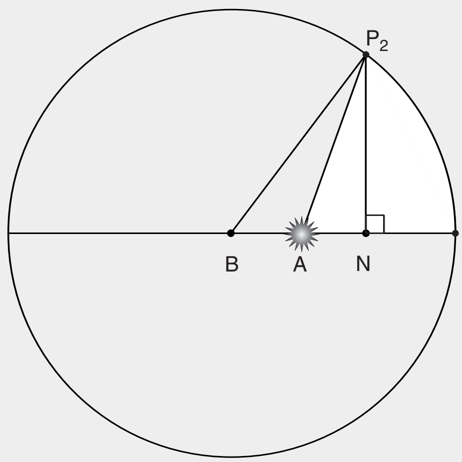
to the area of the sector bounded by the radial lines AP_1, AP_2, and the orbital trajectory P_1P_2, or, in other words, the area swept out by the radial line AP. This is Kepler's famous "Second Law," otherwise known as the "Area Law." All that is needed in addition, to arrive at an extremely precise construction of planetary motion, is to replace the "eccentric circle" approximation, by a true ellipse, as Kepler himself does in the later sections of the *New Astronomy.* We shall attend to that in the next chapter.

Time Produced by Orbital Action?

Are you not struck by something paradoxical in Kepler's formulation? Does he not express himself as if nearly to say, that time is *produced* by the orbital action? Or, does this only seem paradoxical to us (but not to Kepler!), because we have been indoctrinated by the kinematic conceptions of Sarpi, Descartes, and Newton?

There is another paradox implicit here, which Kepler himself emphasized. Sticking for a moment to the eccentric-circle approximation for the orbit, Kepler found a very simple way to calculate the areas of the sectors. In our earlier drawing, choose P_1 to be the intersection of the circumference and the line of apsides passing through *B* and *A*. **(Figure 5.4)** P_1 now represents the position of the planet at the point of perihelion. Take P_2 to be any point on the circumference in the upper half of the circle. If *A* and *B* were at the same place (i.e., if the sun were at the geometrical center of the orbit), then the sectoral area between AP_1 and AP_2 would simply be proportional to the angle formed at *A* between those two lines. Otherwise, we can transform

FIGURE 5.5. *The swept-out area, AP_1P_2, is equal to the circular sector P_1BP_2, minus the triangular area AP_2B.*



the sector in question into a simple, center-based circular sector, by *adding* to it the triangular area ABP_2.

Indeed, as can be seen in **Figure 5.5**, the sum of the two areas is the circular sector between BP_1 and BP_2. The area of the circular sector, on the other hand, is proportional to the angle formed by the radial lines BP_1, BP_2 at the circle's center *B,* as well as to the circular arc from P_1 to P_2. Turning this around, we can express the sector AP_1P_2, which, according to Kepler, tells us the time elapsed between the two positions, as the result of subtracting the triangle ABP_2 from the sector BP_1P_2. In other words: The time T to go from P_1 to P_2, is proportional to the area AP_1P_2, which in turn is equal to the area of the circular sector between BP_1 and BP_2 minus the area of triangle ABP_2. Of these two areas, the first is proportional to the angle P_1BP_2 at the circle's center and to the circular arc P_1P_2; while the second is equal to the product of the base of triangle ABP_2, namely the length *AB,* times its height. The height is the length of the perpendicular line P_2N drawn from the orbital position P_2 to the line of apsides, which (up to a factor of the radius) is just the *sine* of the angle P_1BP_2. In this way—leaving aside, for the moment, a certain modification required by the non-circularity of the orbit—Kepler was able to calculate the elapsed times between any two positions in an orbit.

These simple relationships, which are much easier to express in geometrical drawings than in words, are crucial to the whole development up to Gauss. They involve the following peculiarity, highlighted by Kepler: The elapsed time is shown to be a combined function of the indicated *angle* or *circular arc* on the one side, and the length of the perpendicular straight line drawn from P_2 to the line of apsides, on the other. Now, as Kepler notes, *in implicit reference to Nicolaus of Cusa,* those two magnitudes are "heterogeneous"; one is essentially a curved magnitude, the other a straight, linear one. (That is, they are incommensurable; in fact, as Cusa discovered, the curve is "transcendental" to the straight line.) That heterogeneity seems to block our way, when we try to invert Kepler's solution, and to determine the position of a planet after any given elapsed time (i.e., rather than determining the time as it relates to any position). In fact, this is one of the problems which Gauss addressed with his "higher transcendents," including the hypergeometric function.

Let us end this discussion with Kepler's own challenge to the geometers. For the present purposes—deferring some further "dimensionalities" of the problem until Chapter 6—you can read Kepler's technical terms in the following quote in the following way. What Kepler calls the "mean anomaly," is essentially the elapsed time; the term, "eccentric anomaly," refers to the angle subtended by the planetary positions P_1, P_2 as seen from the center B of the circle—i.e., the angle P_1BP_2. Here is Kepler:

> But given the mean anomaly, there is no geometrical method of proceeding to the eccentric anomaly. For, the mean anomaly is composed of two areas, a sector and a triangle. And while the former is measured by the arc of the eccentric, the latter is measured by the sine of that arc. . . . And the ratios between the arcs and their sines are infinite in number [i.e., they are incommensurable as functional "species"–ed.]. So, when we begin with the sum of the two, we cannot say how great the arc is, and how great its sine, corresponding to the sum, unless we were previously to investigate the area resulting from a given arc; that is, unless you were to have constructed tables and to have worked from them subsequently.
>
> That is my opinion. And insofar as it is seen to lack geometrical beauty, I exhort the geometers to solve me this problem:
>
> Given the area of a part of a semicircle and a point on the diameter, to find the arc and the angle at that point, the sides of which angle, and which arc, encloses the given area. Or, to cut the area of a semicircle in a given ratio from any given point on the diameter.
>
> It is enough for me to believe that I could not solve this, *a priori*, owing to the heterogeneity of the arc and sine. Anyone who shows me my error and points the way will be for me the great Apollonius.*

—*JT*

* Apollonius of Perga (c. 262-200 B.C.), Greek geometer, author of *On Conic Sections,* the definitive Classical treatise. Drawn by the reputation of the astronomer Aristarchus of Samos, he lived and worked at Alexandria, the great center of learning of the Hellenistic world, where he studied under the successors of Euclid. SEE article, page 100, this issue.–Ed.

Chapter 6

Uniting Beauty and Necessity

A great crisis and a great opportunity were created by Giuseppe Piazzi's startling observations of a new object in the sky, in the early days of 1801. Astronomers were now forced to confront the problem of determining the orbit of a planet from only a few observations. Before Piazzi's discovery, C.F. Gauss had considered this problem purely for its intellectual beauty, although anticipating its eventual practical necessity. Others, mired in purely practical considerations, ignored Beauty's call, only to be caught wide-eyed and scrambling when presented with the news from Piazzi's observatory in Palermo. Gauss alone had the capacity to unite Beauty with Necessity, lest humanity lose sight of the newly expanded Universe.

As we continue along the circuitous path to rediscovering Gauss's method for determining the orbit of Ceres, we are compelled to linger a little longer at the beginning of an earlier century, when a great crisis and opportunity arose in the mind of someone courageous and moral enough to recognize its existence. In those early years of the Seventeenth century, as Europe disintegrated into the abyss of the Thirty Years War, Johannes Kepler's quest for beauty led him to the discoveries that anticipated the crisis Gauss would later face, and laid the groundwork for its ultimate solution.

In the last chapter, we retraced the first part of Kepler's great discoveries: that the time which a planet takes to pass from one position of its orbit to another, is proportional to the area of the sector formed by the lines joining each of those two planetary positions with the sun, and the arc of the orbit between the two points.* But, this discovery of Kepler was immediately thrown into crisis when he compared his calculations to the observed positions of Mars, and the time elapsed between those observations. This combination of the change in the observed position and the time elapsed, is a reflection of the *curvature* of the orbit. Kepler had assumed that the planets orbited the sun in eccentric circles. If, however, the planet were moving on an arc that is not circular, it could be observed in the same positions, but the elapsed time between observations would be different than if it were moving on an eccentric circle. When Kepler calculated his new principle using different observations of the planet Mars, the results were not consistent with a circular planetary orbit.

Kepler's Account

The following extracts from Kepler's *New Astronomy* trace his thinking as he discovers his next principle. Uniquely, Kepler left us with a subjective account of his discovery. Speaking across the centuries, Kepler provides an important lesson for today's "Baby Boomers," who, so lacking the *agapē* to face a problem and discover a creative solution, desperately need the benefit of Kepler's honest discussion of his own mental struggle.

> You see, my thoughtful and intelligent reader, that the opinion of a perfect eccentric circle drags many incredible things into physical theories. This is not, indeed, because it makes the solar diameter an indicator for the planetary mind, for this opinion will perhaps turn out to be closest to the truth, but because it ascribes incredible facilities to the mover, both mental and animal.
>
> Although our theories are not yet complete and perfect, they are nearly so, and in particular are suitable for the motion of the sun, so we shall pass on to quantitative consideration.

It was in the "nearly so," the infinitesimal, that Kepler's crisis arose. He continues, a few chapters later:

> You have just seen, reader, that we have to start anew. For you can perceive that three eccentric positions of Mars and the same number of distances from the sun, when the law of the circle is applied to them, reject the aphelion found above (with little uncertainty). This is the source of our suspicion that the planet's path is not a circle.

Having come to the realization that he must abandon the hypothesis of circular orbits, he first considers ovals.

> Clearly, then, the orbit of the planet is not a circle, but comes in gradually on both sides and returns again to the circle's distance at perigee. One is accustomed to call the shape of this sort of path "oval."

Yet, after much work, Kepler had to admit that this too was incorrect:

> When I was first informed in this manner by [Tycho] Brahe's most certain observations that the orbit of the planet is not exactly circular, but is deficient at the sides, I judged

* This principle has now become known as Kepler's Second Law, even though it was the first of Kepler's so-called three laws to be discovered. Kepler never categorized his discoveries of principles into a numbered series of laws. The codification of Kepler's discovery, to fit academically acceptable Aristotelean categories, has masked the true nature of Kepler's discovery and undermined the ability of others to know Kepler's principles, by rediscovering them for themselves.

that I also knew the natural cause of the deflection from its footprints. For I had worked very hard on that subject in Chapter 39. . . . In that chapter I ascribed the cause of the eccentricity to a certain power which is in the body of the planet. It therefore follows that the cause of this deflecting from the eccentric circle should also be ascribed to the same body of the planet. But then what they say in the proverb—"A hasty dog bears blind pups"—happened to me. For, in Chapter 39, I worked very energetically on the question of why I could not give a sufficiently probable cause for a perfect circle's resulting from the orbit of a planet, as some absurdities would always have to be attributed to the power which has its seat in the planet's body. Now, having seen from the observations that the planet's orbit is not perfectly circular, I immediately succumbed to this great persuasive impetus. . . .

Self-consciously describing the emotions involved:

> And we, good reader, can fairly indulge in so splendid a triumph for a little while (for the following five chapters, that is), repressing the rumors of renewed rebellion, lest its splendor die before we shall go through it in the proper time and order. You are merry indeed now, but I was straining and gnashing my teeth.

And, continuing:

> While I am thus celebrating a triumph over the motions of Mars, and fetter him in the prison of tables and the leg-irons of eccentric equations, considering him utterly defeated, it is announced again in various places that the victory is futile, and war is breaking out again with full force. For while the enemy was in the house as a captive, and hence lightly esteemed, he burst all the chains of the equations and broke out of the prison of the tables. That is, no method administered geometrically under the direction of the opinion of Chapter 45 was able to emulate in numerical accuracy the vicarious hypotheses of Chapter 16 (which has true equations derived from false causes). Outdoors, meanwhile, spies positioned throughout the whole circuit of the eccentric—I mean the true distances—have overthrown my entire supply of physical causes called forth from Chapter 45, and have shaken off their yoke, retaking their liberty. And now there is not much to prevent the fugitive enemy's joining forces with his fellow rebels and reducing me to desperation, unless I send new reinforcements of physical reasoning in a hurry to the scattered troops and old stragglers, and, informed with all diligence, stick to the trail without delay in the direction whither the captive has fled. In the following chapters, I shall be telling of both these campaigns in the order in which they were waged.

In another place, Kepler writes:

> *"Galatea seeks me mischievously, the lusty wench,*
> *She flees the willows, but hopes I'll see her first."*
>
> It is perfectly fitting that I borrow Virgil's voice to sing this about Nature. For the closer the approach to her, the more petulant her games become, and the more she again and again sneaks out of the seeker's grasp, just when he is about to seize her through some circuitous route. Nevertheless, she never ceases to invite me to seize her, as though delighting in my mistakes.
>
> Throughout this entire work, my aim has been to find a physical hypothesis that not only will produce distances in agreement with those observed, but also, and at the same time, sound equations, which hitherto we have been driven to borrow from the vicarious hypothesis of Chapter 16. . . .

And, after much work, he finally arrives at the answer the Universe has been telling him all along:

> The greatest scruple by far, however, was that, despite my considering and searching about almost to the point of insanity, I could not discover why the planet, to which a reciprocation *LE* on the diameter *LK* was attributed with such probability, and by so perfect an agreement with the observed distances, would rather follow an elliptical path, as shown by the equations. O ridiculous me! To think that reciprocation on the diameter could not be the way to the ellipse! So it came to me as no small revelation that through the reciprocation an ellipse was generated. . . .

With the discovery of an additional principle, Kepler has accomplished the next crucial step along the road Gauss would later extend by the determination of the orbit of Ceres. The discovery that the shape of the orbit of the planet Mars (later generalized to all planets) was an ellipse, would be later generalized even further to include all conic sections, when other heavenly bodies, such as comets, were taken into account.

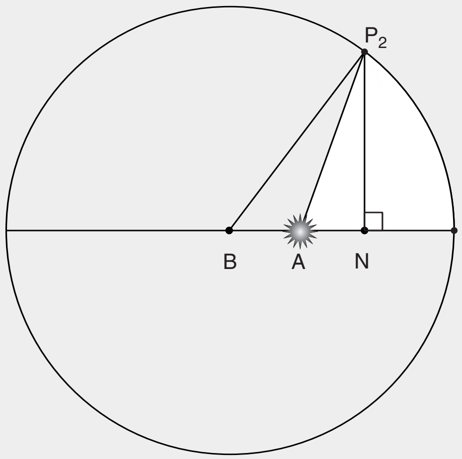
But now a new crisis developed for Kepler. What we discussed in the last chapter—the elegant way of calculating the area of the orbital sector, which is proportional to the elapsed time—no longer works for an ellipse. For that method was discovered when Kepler was still assuming the shape of the planet's orbit to be a circle.

To grasp this distinction, the reader will have to make the following drawings:

First re-draw Figure 5.5. **(Figure 6.1)** [For the reader's convenience, figures from previous chapters are displayed again when re-introduced.]

The determination of the area formed by the motion of the planet in a given interval of time, was defined as the "sum" of the infinite number of radial lines obtained as the planet moves from P_1 to P_2. This "sum," which Kepler represents by the area AP_1P_2, is calculated by subtracting the area of the triangle ABP_2 from the circular sector BP_1P_2. But, as noted previously, determining the area of triangle ABP_2 depended on the sine of the angle ABP_2, i.e., P_2N, which Kepler, as a student of Cusa, recognized was transcendental to the arc P_1P_2, thus making

FIGURE 6.1. *Kepler's method of calculating swept-out areas for an eccentric circular orbit.*



a direct algebraic calculation impossible.

But now that Kepler has abandoned the circular orbit for an elliptical one, this problem is compounded. For the circular arc is characterized by constant uniform curvature, while the curvature of the ellipse is non-uniform, constantly changing. Thus, if we abandon the circular orbit and accept the elliptical one, as reality demands, the simplicity of the method for determining the area of the orbital sector disappears.

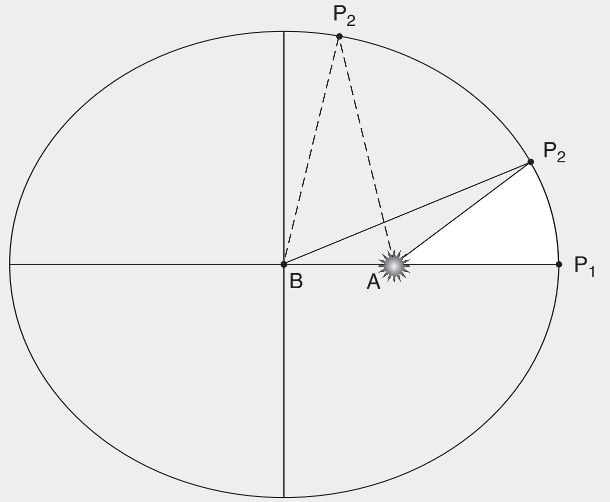
A Dilemma, and a Solution

What a dilemma! Our Reason, following Kepler, leads us to the hypothesis that the area of the orbital sector swept out by the planet, is proportional to the time it takes for the planet to move through that section of its orbit. But, following Kepler, our Reason, guided by the actual observations of planetary orbits, also leads us to abandon the circular shape of the orbit, in favor of the ellipse, and to lose the elegant means for applying the first discovery.

This is no time to emulate Hamlet. Our only way out is to forge ahead to new discoveries. As has been the case so far, Kepler does not let us down.

For the next step, the reader will have to draw another diagram. **(Figure 6.2)** This time draw an ellipse, and call the center of the ellipse *B* and the focus to the right of the center *A*. Call the point where the major axis intersects the circumference of the ellipse closest to *A*, point P_1. Mark another point on the circumference of the ellipse (moving counter-clockwise from P_1), point P_2. As in the previous diagram, *A* represents the position of the sun, P_1 and P_2 represent positions of the planet at two different

FIGURE 6.2. *Kepler's elliptical orbit hypothesis. Here, length P_2B is not constant, but constantly changing at a changing rate. What lawful process now underlies the generation of swept-out areas?*

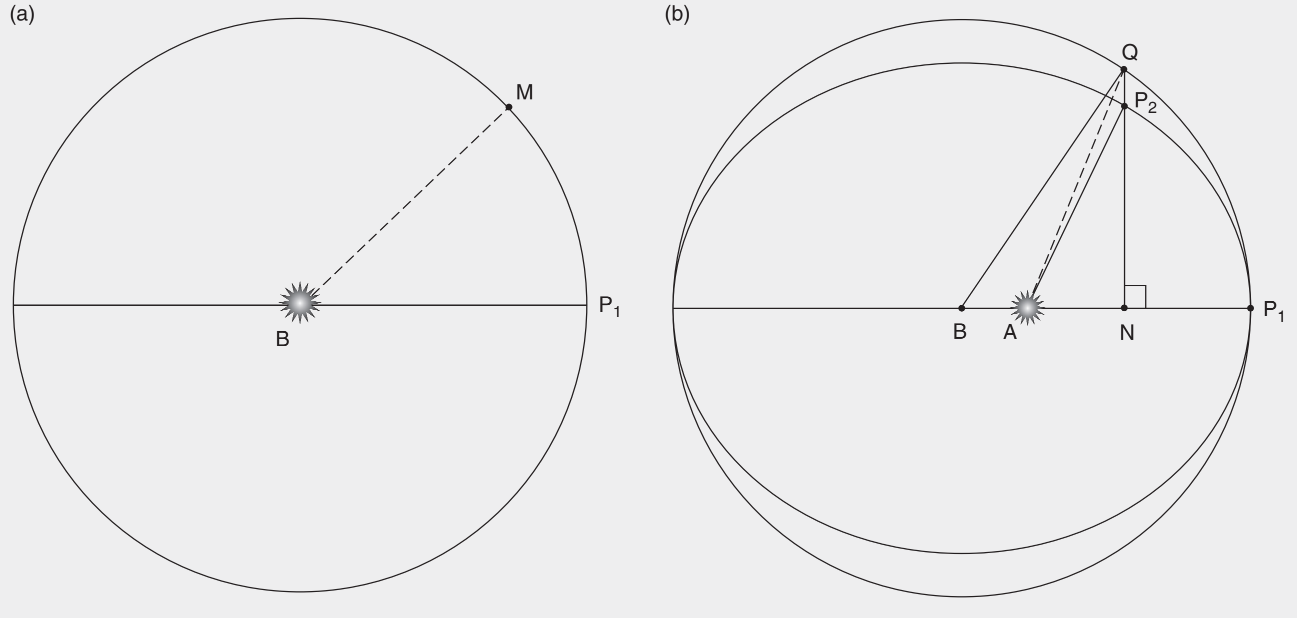


points in time, and the circumference of the ellipse represents the orbital path of the planet.

Now compare the shape of the orbital sector in the two different orbital paths, circular and elliptical, as shown in Figures 6.1 and 6.2. The difference in the *type* of curvature between the two is reflected in the *type* of change in triangle ABP_2 as the position P_2 changes. In the circular orbit, the length of line P_2A changes, but the length of line P_2B, being a radius of the circle, remains the same. In the elliptical orbit, the length of the line P_2B also changes. In fact, the rate of change of the length of line P_2B is itself constantly changing.

To solve this problem, Kepler discovers the following relationship. Draw a circle around the ellipse, with the center at *B* and the radius equal to the semi-major axis. **(Figure 6.3b)** This circle circumscribes the ellipse, touching it at the aphelion and perihelion points of the orbit. Now draw a perpendicular from P_2 to the major axis, striking that axis at a point *N*, and extend the perpendicular outward until it intersects the circle, at some point *Q*. Recall one of the characteristics of the ellipse (Figure 1.7b): An ellipse results from "contracting" the circle in the direction perpendicular to the major axis according to some fixed ratio. In other words, the ratio $NP_2 : NQ$ has the same constant value for all positions of P_2. Or, said inversely, the circle results from "stretching" the ellipse outward from the major axis by a certain constant factor, as if on a pulled rubber sheet. It is easy to see that the value of that factor must be the ratio of the major to minor axes of the ellipse.

FIGURE 6.3. *Ironies of Keplerian motion. (a) M is the position a planet would reach after a given elapsed time, assuming it started at P_1 and travelled on the circular orbit with the sun at the center B. (b) P is the corresponding position on the elliptical orbit with the sun at the focus A. The orbital period is the same as (a), but the arc lengths travelled vary with the changing distance of the planet from the sun (Kepler's "area law"). Q is the position the planet would reach if it were moving on the circle, but with the sun at A rather than the center B. For equal times, the area P_1MB will be equal to area P_1QA, the latter being in a constant ratio to the area P_1P_2A.*



With a bit of thought, it might occur to us that the result of such "stretching" will be to change all *areas* in the figure by the same factor. Look at Figure 6.3b from that standpoint. What happens to the *elliptic sector* which we are interested in, namely P_1P_2A, when we stretch out the ellipse in the indicated fashion? It turns into the *circular sector* P_1QA! Accordingly, the area of the elliptical sector swept out by P_2, and that swept out on the circle by Q, stay in a constant ratio to each other throughout the motion of P_2. Since the planet (or rather, the radial line AP_2) sweeps out equal areas on the ellipse in equal times, in accordance with Kepler's "area law," the corresponding point Q (and radial line AQ) will do the same thing on the circle.

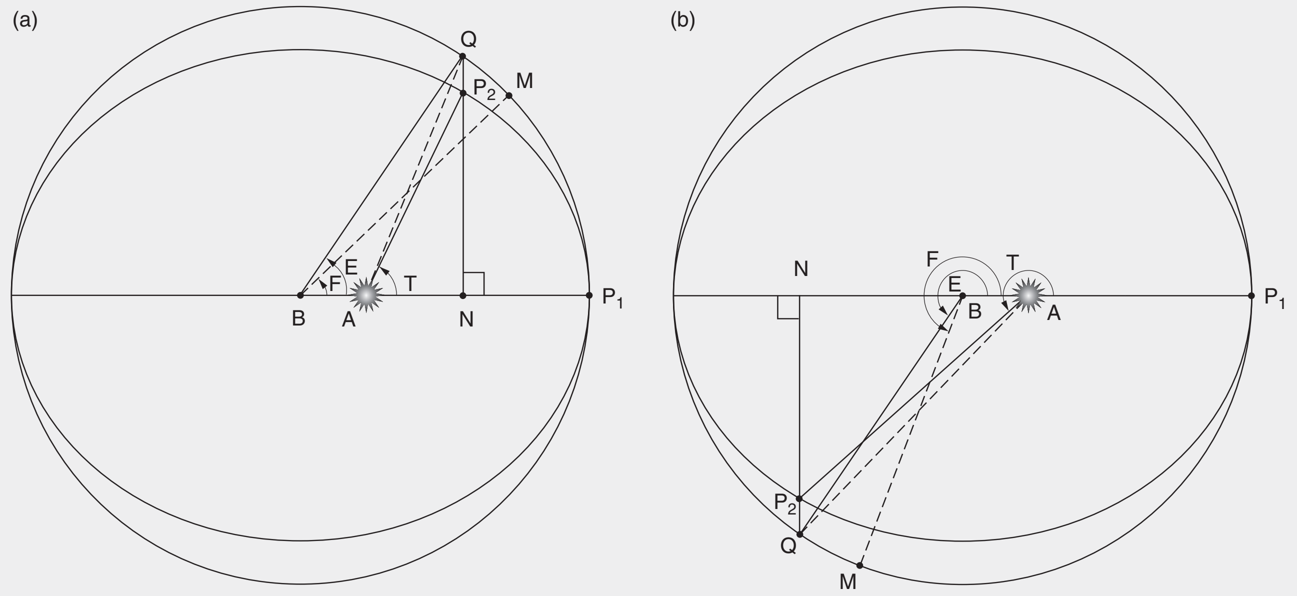
This crucial insight by Kepler unlocks the whole problem. First, it shows that Q is just the position which the planet would occupy, were it moving on an eccentric-circular orbit in accordance with the "area law," as Kepler had originally believed. The difference in position between Q and the actual position P_2 (as observed, for example, from the sun) reflects the non-circular nature of the actual orbit. Second, the constant proportionality of the swept-out areas permits Kepler to reduce the problem of calculating the motion on the ellipse, to that of the eccentric circle, whose solution he has already obtained. (SEE Chapter 5)

Further details of Kepler's calculations need not concern us here. What is most important to recognize, is the *triple* nature of the deviation of a real planet's motion from the hypothetical case of perfect circular motion with the sun at the center—a deviation which Kepler measured in terms of three special angles, called "*anomalies.*" First, the sun is not at the center. Second, the orbit is not circular, but elliptical. Third, the speed of the planet varies, depending upon the planet's distance from the sun. For which reason, Kepler's approach implies reconceptualizing, from a higher standpoint, what we mean by the "curvature" of the orbit. Rather than being thought of merely as a geometrical "shape," on which the planet's motion appears to be non-uniform, the "curvature" must instead be conceived of as the motion of the planet moving along the curve *in time*—that is, we must introduce a new conception of *physical space-time*.

In a purely circular orbit, the uniformity of the planet's spatial and temporal motions coincide. That is, the planet sweeps out equal arcs and equal areas in equal times as it moves. Such motion can be completely represented by a single angular measurement.

In true elliptical orbits, however, the motion of the planet can only be completely described by a combination of three angular measurements, which are the three anomalies described below. The uniformity of the "curvature" of the planet's motion finds expression in Kepler's equal-area principle, from the more advanced *physical space-time* standpoint.

FIGURE 6.4. *Non-uniform motion in an elliptical orbit is characterized by the "polyphonic" relationship between the "eccentric anomaly" (angle E), "true anomaly" (angle T), and "mean anomaly" (angle F). (a) As the planet moves from perihelion to aphelion, the true anomaly is greater than the eccentric, which is greater than the mean. (b) After the planet passes aphelion, these relationships are reversed.*



Kepler's conception follows directly from the approach to experimental physics established by his philosophical mentor Nicolaus of Cusa. This may rankle the modern reader, whose thinking has been shaped by Immanuel Kant's neo-Aristotelean conceptions of space and time. Kant considered three-dimensional "Euclidean" space, and a linear extension of time, to be a true reflection of reality. Gauss rejected Kant's view, calling it an illusion, and insisting instead that the true nature of space-time can not be assumed *a priori* from purely mathematical considerations, but must be determined from the physical reality of the Universe.

Kepler's Three Anomalies

The first anomaly is the angle formed by a line drawn from the sun to the planet, and the line of apsides (P_2AP_1 in Figure 6.3b). Kepler called this angle the "equated anomaly." In Gauss's time it was called the "true anomaly." The true anomaly measures the true displacement along the elliptical orbit. The next two anomalies can be considered as two different "projections," so to speak, of the true anomaly.

The second anomaly, called the "eccentric anomaly," is the angle QBP_1, which measures the area swept out had the planet moved on a circular arc, rather than an elliptical one. Since this area is proportional to the time elapsed, it is also proportional, although obviously not equal, to the true orbital sector swept out by the planet.

The third anomaly, called the "mean anomaly," corresponds to the elapsed time, as measured either by area AP_1P_2 or by AP_1Q. It can be usefully represented by the position and angle F at B formed by an *imaginary point M* moving on the circle, whose motion is that which a hypothetical planet would have, if its orbit were the circle and if the sun were at center B rather than A! **(Figure 6.4)** As a consequence of Kepler's Third Law, the total period of the imaginary orbit of M, will coincide with that of the real planet. Hence, if M is taken to be "synchronized" in such a way that the positions of M and the actual planet coincide at the perihelion point P_1, then M and the planet will return to that same point simultaneously after having completed one full orbital cycle.

Kepler established a relationship between the mean and eccentric anomalies, such that, given the eccentric, the mean can be approximately calculated. The inverse problem—that is, given the time elapsed, to calculate the eccentric anomaly—proved much more difficult, and formed part of the considerations provoking G.W. Leibniz to develop the calculus.

The relationship among these three anomalies is a reflection of the *curvature* of space-time relevant to the harmonic motion of the planet's orbit, just as the catenary function described in Chapter 4, reflects such a physical principle in the gravitational field of the Earth. This threefold relationship is one of the earliest examples of what Gauss and Bernhard Riemann would later develop into *hypergeometric,* or *modular functions*—functions in which several seemingly incommensurable cycles are unified into a One.

Kepler describes the relationship between these anomalies this way (we have changed Kepler's labelling to correspond to our diagram):

> The terms "mean anomaly," "eccentric anomaly," and "equated anomaly" will be more peculiar to me. The mean anomaly is the time, arbitrarily designated, and its measure, the area P_1QA. The eccentric anomaly is the planet's path from apogee, that is, the arc of the ellipse P_1P_2, and the arc P_1Q which defines it. The equated anomaly is the apparent magnitude of the arc P_1Q as viewed from A, that is, the angle P_1AP_2.

All three anomalies are zero at perihelion. As the planet moves toward aphelion, all three anomalies increase, with the true always being greater than the eccentric, which in turn is always greater than the mean. At aphelion, all three come together again, equaling 180°. As the planet moves back to perihelion, this is reversed, with the mean being greater than the eccentric, which in turn is greater than the true, until all three come back together again at the perihelion.

Suffice it to say, for now, that Gauss's ability to "read between the anomalies," so to speak, was a crucial part of his ability to hear the new polyphonies sounded by Piazzi's discovery—the unheard polyphonies that the ancient Greeks called the "music of the spheres."

—BD

CHAPTER 7

Kepler's 'Harmonic Ordering' Of the Solar System

At this point in our journey toward Gauss's determination of the orbit of Ceres, before plunging into the thick of the problem, it will be worthwhile to look ahead a bit, and to take note of a crucial *irony* embedded in Gauss's use of a generalized form of Kepler's "Three Laws" for the motion of heavenly bodies in conic-section orbits.

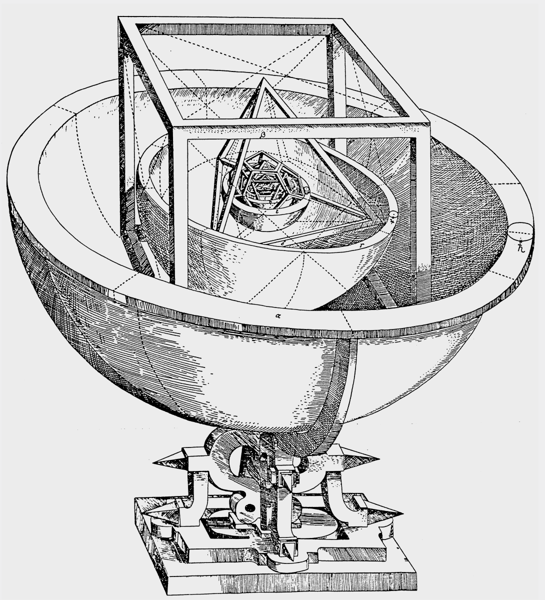


FIGURE 7.1 *(a) Kepler's "harmonic ordering" of the solar system. The planetary orbits are nested according to the ratios of inscribed and circumscribed Platonic (regular) solids, in this model from the "Mysterium Cosmographicum."*

On the one hand, we have the *harmonic ordering* of the solar system as a whole, whose essential idea is put forward by Plato in the *Timaeus,* and demonstrated by Kepler in detail in his *Mysterium Cosmographicum* (*Cosmographic Mystery*) and *Harmonice Mundi (The Harmony of the World).* **(Figure 7.1a)** A crucial feature of that ordering, already noted by Kepler, is the existence of a singular, "dissonant" orbital region, located between Mars and Jupiter—a feature whose decisive confirmation was first made possible by Gauss's determination of the orbit of Ceres. **(Figure 7.1b)**

Although Kepler's work in this direction is incomplete in several respects, that harmonic ordering *in principle* determines not only which orbits or arrays of planetary orbits are possible, but also the *physical characteristics* of the planets to be found in the various orbits. Thus, the Keplerian ordering of the solar system is not only *analogous* to Mendeleyev's natural system of the chemical elements, but ultimately expresses the *same* underlying curvature of the Universe, manifested in the astrophysical and microphysical scales.*

On the other hand, we have Kepler's constraints for the motion of the planets within their orbits, developed step-by-step in the course of his *New Astronomy* (1609), *Harmony of the World* (1619), and *Epitome Astronomiae Copernicanae (Epitome of Copernican Astronomy)* (1621).

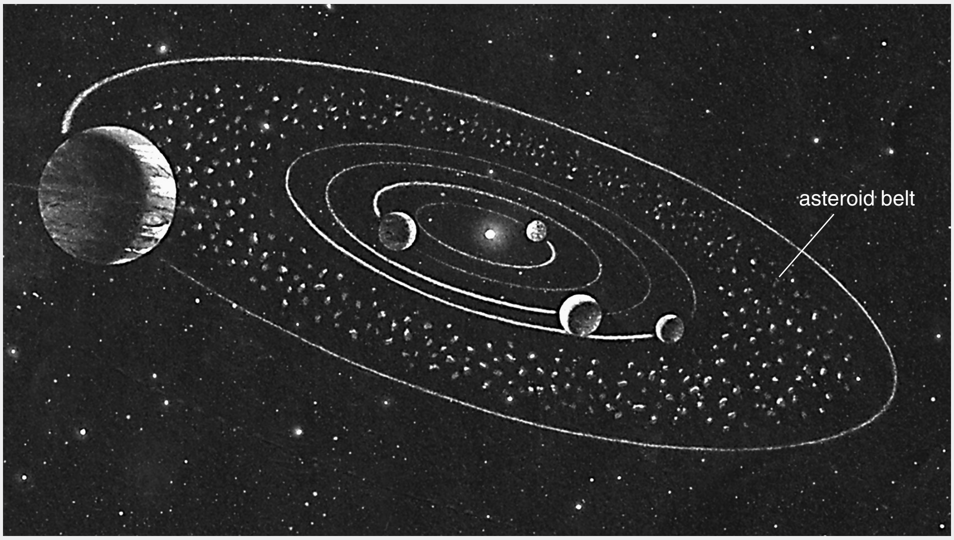


FIGURE 7.1(*b*) *Kepler's model defines a "dissonant" interval, the orbital region between Mars and Jupiter. Decisive confirmation of Kepler's hypothesis was first made possible by Gauss's determination of the orbit of the asteroid Ceres. This region, known today as the "asteroid belt," marks the division between the "inner" and "outer" planets of the solar system, and may be the location of an exploded planet unable to survive at this harmonically unstable position. (Artist's rendering)*

These constraints provide the basis for calculating, to a very high degree of precision, the position and motion of a planet or other object at any time, once the basic spatial parameters of the orbit itself (the "elements" described in Chapter 2) have been determined. The three constraints go as follows.

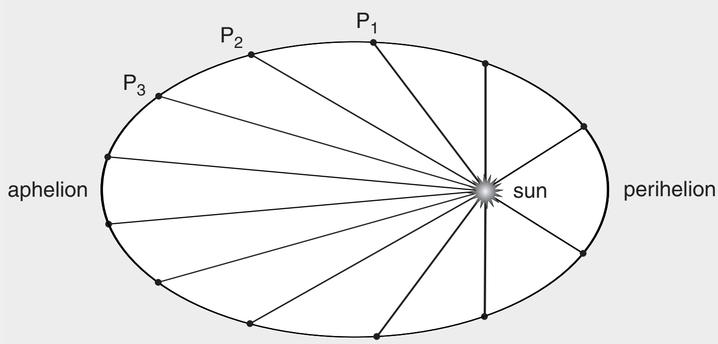
1. **The area of the curvilinear region, swept out by the radial line connecting the centers of the given planet and the sun, as the planet passes from any position in its orbit to another, is proportional in magnitude to the time elapsed during that motion.** Or, to put it another way: If P_1, P_2, and P_3 are three successive positions of the planet, then the ratio of the area, swept out in going from P_1 to P_2, to the area, swept out in passing from P_2 to P_3, is equal to the ratio of the corresponding elapsed times. **(Figure 7.2)**

2. **The planetary orbits have the form of perfect ellipses, with the center of the sun as a common focus.**

3. **The periodic times of the planets (i.e., the times required to complete the corresponding orbital cycles), are related to the major axes of the orbits in such a way, that the ratio of the** `squares` **of the periodic times of any two planets, is equal to the ratio of the** `cubes` **of the corresponding semi-major axes of the orbits.** (The "semi-major axis" is half of the longest axis of the ellipse, or the distance from the center of the ellipse to either of the two extremes, located at the perihelion and aphelion points; for a circular orbit, this is the same as the radius.) Using the semi-major axis and periodic time of the Earth as units, the stated proposition amounts to saying, that the planet's periodic time T, and the semi-major axis

* Lyndon LaRouche has shed light on that relationship, through his hypothesis on the historical generation of the elements—and, ultimately, of the planets themselves—by "polarized" fusion reactions within a Keplerian-ordered, magnetohydrodynamic plasmoid, "driven" by the rotational action of the sun. In that process, Mendeleyev's harmonic values for the chemical elements, and the congruent, harmonic array of orbital corridors of the planets, *predate* the generation of the elements and planets themselves!

FIGURE 7.2. *Kepler's constraint for motion on an elliptical orbit. The ratios of elapsed times are proportional to the ratios of swept-out areas. In equal time intervals, therefore, the areas of the curvilinear sectors swept out by the planet, will be equal—even though the curvilinear distances traversed on the orbit are constantly changing. In the region about perihelion, nearest the sun, the planet moves fastest, covering the greatest orbital distance; whereas, at aphelion, farthest from the sun, it moves most slowly, covering the least distance. This constraint is known as Kepler's "area law," later referred to as his "Second Law."*



A, of the planet are connected by the relation:

$$T \times T = A \times A \times A.$$

(So, for example, the semi-major axis of Mars' orbit is very nearly 1.523674 times that of the Earth, while the Mars "year" is 1.88078 Earth years.) **(Table I)**

In the next chapter, we shall present Gauss's generalized form of these constraints, applied to hyperbolic and parabolic, as well as to elliptical, orbits.

Unfortunately, in the context of ensuing epistemological warfare, Kepler's constraints were ripped out of the pages of his works, severing their intimate connection with the harmonic ordering of the solar system as a whole, and finally dubbed "Kepler's Three Laws." The resulting "laws," taken in and of themselves, do not specify which orbits are possible, nor which actually occur, might have occurred, or might occur in the future; nor do they say anything about the character of the planet or other object occupying a given orbit.

This flaw did not arise from any error in Kepler's work *per se*, but was imposed from the outside. Newton greatly aggravated the problem, when he "inverted" Kepler's constraints, to obtain his "inverse square law" of gravitation, and above all when he chose—for political reasons—to make that "inversion" a vehicle for promoting a radical-empiricist, Sarpian conception of a Universe governed by pair-wise interactions in "empty" space.

However, apart from the distortions introduced by Newton *et al.,* there does exist a paradoxical relationship—of which Gauss was clearly aware—between the three constraints, stated above, and Kepler's harmonic ordering of the solar system as a whole. While rejecting the notion of Newtonian pair-wise interactions as elementary, we could hardly accept the proposition, that the orbit and motion of any planet, does not reflect the rest of the solar system in some way, and in particular the existence and motions of all the other planets, within any arbitrarily small interval of action. Yet, the three constraints make no provision for such a relationship! Although Kepler's constraints are approximately correct within a "corridor" occupied by the orbit, they do not account for the "fine structure" of the orbit, nor for certain other characteristics which we know must exist, in view of the ordering of the solar system as a whole.

A New Physical Principle

Hence the irony of Gauss's approach, which applies Kepler's three constraints as the basis for his mathematical determination of the orbit of Ceres from three observations, *as a crucial step toward uncovering a new physical principle which must manifest itself in a discrepancy, however "infinitesimally small" it might be, between the real motion, and that projected by those same constraints!*

TABLE I. *The ratio of the squares of the periodic times of any two planets, is equal to the ratio of the cubes of the corresponding mean distances to the sun, which are equal to the semi-major axes of the orbits.*

Planet	Mean distance to sun A (in A.U.*)	Time T (in Earth yrs)
Mercury	0.387	0.241
Venus	0.723	0.615
Earth	1.000	1.000
Mars	1.524	1.881
Jupiter	5.203	11.862
Saturn	9.534	29.456

* 1 Astronomical Unit (A.U.) = 1 Earth-sun distance

Compare this with the way Wilhelm Weber later derived his electrodynamic law, and the necessary existence of a "quantum" discontinuity on the microscopic scale. Compare this, more generally, with the method of "modular arithmetic," elaborated by Gauss as the basis of his *Disquisitiones Arithmeticae.* Might we not consider any given hypothesis or set of physical principles, or the corresponding functional "hypersurface," as a "modulus," relative to which we are concerned to define and measure various species of discrepancy or "remainder" of the real process, that in turn express the effect of a new physical principle? Thus, we must discriminate, between arrays of phenomena which are "similar," or congruent, in the sense of relative agreement with an existing set of principles, and the species of anomaly we are looking for.

The concept of a series of successive "moduli" of increasing orders, in that sense, derived from a succession of discoveries of new physical principle, each of which "brings us closer to the truth by one dimension" (in Gauss's words), is essential to Leibniz's calculus, and is even implicit in Leibniz's conception of the decimal system.

With these observations in mind, we can better appreciate some of the developments following Gauss's successful forecast of the orbit of Ceres.

On March 28, 1802, a short time after the rediscovery of Ceres by several astronomers in December 1801 and January 1802, precisely confirming Gauss's forecast, Gauss's friend Wilhelm Olbers discovered *another* small planet between Mars and Jupiter—the asteroid Pallas. Gauss immediately calculated the Pallas orbit from Olber's observations, and reported back with great excitement, that the two orbits, although lying in quite different planes, had nearly exactly the same periodic times, and appeared to cross each other in space! Gauss wrote to Olbers:

> In a few years, the conclusion [of our analysis of the orbits of Pallas and Ceres–JT] might either be, that Pallas and Ceres once occupied the same point in space, and thus doubtlessly formed parts of one and the same body; or else that they orbit the sun undisturbed, and with precisely equal periods . . . [in either case,] these are phenomena, which to our knowledge are unique in their type, and of which no one would have had the slightest dream, a year and a half ago. To judge by our human interests, we should probably not wish for the first alternative. What panic-stricken anxiety, what conflicts between piety and denial, between rejection and defense of Divine Providence, would we not witness, were the possibility to be supported by fact, that a planet can be annihilated? What would all those people say, who like to base their academic doctrines on the unshakable permanence of the planetary system, when they see, that they have built on nothing but sand, and that all things are subject to the *blind* and *arbitrary play* of the forces of Nature! For my part, I think we should refrain from such conclusions. I find it almost wanton arrogance, to take as a measure of eternal wisdom, the perfection or imperfection which we, with our limited powers and in our caterpillar-like stage of existence, observe or imagine to observe in the material world around us.

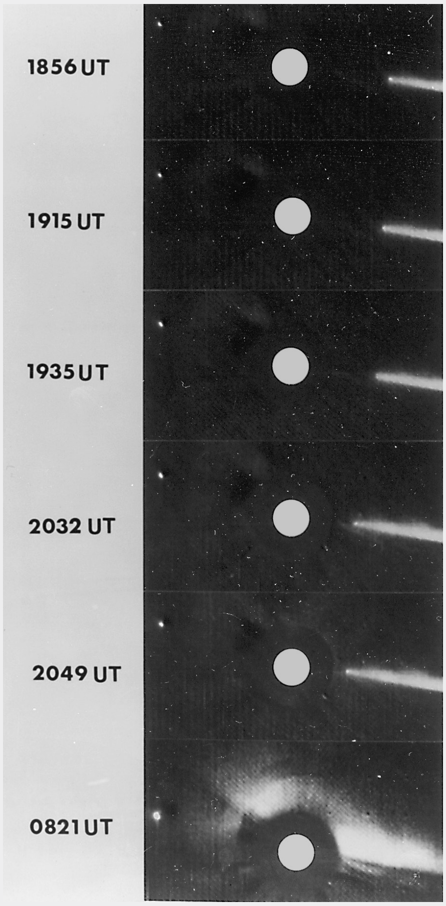


FIGURE 7.3.
Aug. 30, 1979: Comet Howard-Koomen-Michels streaks toward the sun at a speed of about 640,000 mph, trailed by a tail of dust and gas more than three million miles in length. A white disk has been added to the central area of the time-lapsed images, to show the size and location of the sun (which is masked by an opaque disk in the orbiting camera). The bright spot in the upper left corner of the photographs is the planet Venus. (Photo: U.S. Naval Research Laboratory)

The discovery of Ceres and Pallas, as probably the largest fragments of what had once been a larger planet, orbiting between Mars and Jupiter, helped dispose of the myth of "eternal tranquility" in the heavens. Indeed, we have good reason to believe, that cataclysmic events have occurred in the solar system in past, and might occur in the future. On an astrophysical scale, thanks to progress in the technology of astronomical observation, we are ever more frequent witnesses to a variety of large-scale events unfolding on short time scales. This includes the disappearance of entire stars in supernova explosions. The first well-documented case of this—the supernova which gave birth to the famous Crab Nebula—was recorded by Chinese astronomers in the year 1054. But, even within the boundaries of our solar system, dramatic events are by no means so exceptional as most people believe.

Apart from the hypothesized event of an explosion of a planet between Mars and Jupiter, made plausible by the discovery of the asteroid belt, collisions with comets and other interplanetary bodies are relatively frequent. We witnessed one such collision with Jupiter not long ago. Another example is the collision of the comet Howard-Koomen-Michels with the surface of the sun, which occurred around midnight on Aug. 30, 1979. This spectacular event was photographed by an orbiting solar observatory of the U.S. Naval Research Laboratory. **(Figure 7.3)** The comet's trajectory (which ended at the point of impact) was very nearly a perfect, parabolic Keplerian orbit, whose perihelion unfortunately was located closer to the center of the sun, than the sun's own photosphere surface! A century earlier, the Great Comet of 1882 was torn apart, as it passed within 500,000 kilometers of the photosphere, emerging as a cluster of five fragments.

Beyond these sorts of events, that appear more or less accidental and without great import for the solar system as a whole, it is quite conceivable, that even the present arrangement of the planetary orbits might undergo more or less dramatic and rapid changes, as the system passes from one Keplerian ordering to another.

—*JT*

Chapter 8

Parabolic and Hyperbolic Orbits

We have one last piece of business to dispose of, before we launch into Gauss's solution in Chapter 9. We have to devise a way of extending Kepler's constraints to the case of the parabolic and hyperbolic orbits, inhabited by comets and other peculiar entities in our solar system.

Comets and Non-Cyclical Orbits

During Kepler's time, the nature and motion of the comets was a subject of great debate. From attempts to measure the "daily parallax" in the apparent positions of the Great Comet of 1577, as observed at different times of the day (i.e., from different points of observation, as determined by the rotation and orbital motion of the Earth), the Danish astronomer Tycho Brahe had concluded that the distance from the Earth to the comet must be at least four times that of the distance between the Earth and Moon. Tycho's measurement was viciously attacked by Galileo, Chiaramonti, and others in Paolo Sarpi's Venetian circuits. Galileo *et al.* defended the generally accepted "exhalation theory" of Aristotle, according to which the comets were supposed to be phenomena generated inside the Earth's atmosphere. Kepler, in turn, refuted Galileo and Chiaramonti point-by-point in his late work, *Hyperaspistes,* published 1625. But Kepler never arrived at a satisfactory determination of comet trajectories.

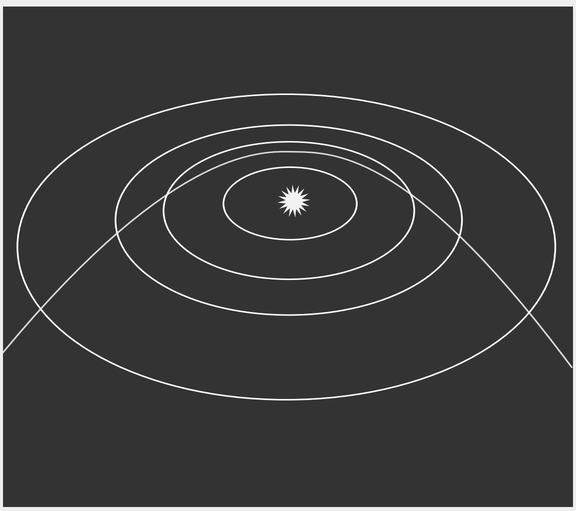


Figure 8.1. *The parabolic path of a comet, crossing the elliptical orbits of Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars.*

If Johann von Maedler's classic account is to be believed, the hypothesis of parabolic orbits for comets was first put forward by the Italian astronomer Giovanni Borelli in 1664, and later confirmed by the German pastor Samuel Doerfel, in 1681.

By the time of Gauss, it was definitively established that parabolic and even hyperbolic orbits were possible in our solar system, in addition to the elliptical orbits originally described by Kepler. In the introduction to his *Theory of the Motion of the Heavenly Bodies Moving about the Sun in Conic Sections,* Gauss emphasizes that the discovery of parabolic and hyperbolic orbits had added an important new dimension to astronomy. Unlike the periodic, cyclical motion of a planet in an elliptical orbit, a body moving in a parabolic or hyperbolic orbit traverses its trajectory only once.* This poses the problem of constructing the equivalent of Kepler's constraints for the case of non-elliptical orbits. **(Figure 8.1)**

The existence of parabolic and hyperbolic orbits, in fact, highlighted a paradox already implicit in Kepler's own derivation of his constraints, and to which Kepler himself pointed in the *New Astronomy.*†

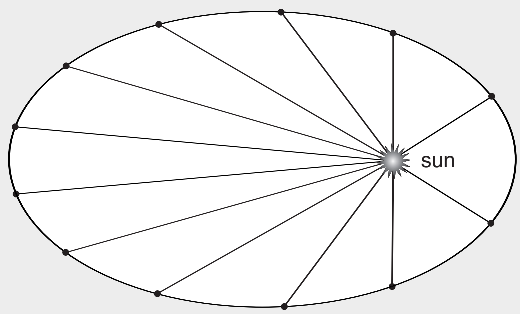
In his initial formulation of what became known as the Second Law, Kepler spoke of the "time spent" at any given position of the orbit as being proportional to the "radial line" from the planet to the sun. He posed to future geometers the problem of how to "add up" the radial lines generated in the course of the motion, which seemed "infinite in number." Later, Kepler replaced the radial lines with the notion of sectoral areas described around the sun during the motion of "infinitely small" intervals of time. He prescribed that the ratios of those infinitesimal areas to the corresponding elapsed times, be the same for all parts of the orbit. Since that relationship is preserved during the entire process, during which such

---

* A certain percentage of the comets have essentially elliptical orbits and relatively well-defined periods of recurrence. A famous example is Halley's Comet (which Halley apparently stole from Flamsteed), with a period of 76 years. Generally, however, the trajectories even of the recurring comets are unstable; they depend on the "conjunctural" situation in the solar system, and never exactly repeat. In the idealized case of a parabolic or hyperbolic orbit, the object never returns to the solar system. In reality, "parabolic" and "hyperbolic" comets sometimes return in new orbits.

† see extracts from Kepler's 1609 *New Astronomy*, pp. 24-25.

FIGURE 8.2. *Kepler's "area law." The ratios of elapsed times are proportional to the ratios of swept-out areas.*



"infinitesimal" areas accumulate to form a macroscopic area in the course of continued motion, it will be valid for any elapsed times whatever.

The result is Kepler's final formulation of the Second Law, which very precisely accounts for the manner in which the rate of angular displacement of a planet around the sun actually slows down or speeds up in the course of an orbit. **(Figure 8.2)**

However, while specifying, in effect, that the *ratios* of elapsed times are proportional to the ratios of swept-out areas, the Second Law says nothing about their absolute magnitudes. The latter depend on the dimensions of the orbit as a whole, a relationship manifested in the progressive, stepwise decrease in the overall periods and average velocities of the planets, as we move outward away from the sun, i.e., from Mercury, to Venus, the Earth, Mars, Jupiter, and so on. (SEE Figure 7.1b) In his *Harmony of the World* of 1619, Kepler characterized that overall relationship by what became known as the Third Law, demonstrating that the squares of the periodic times are proportional to the cubes of the semi-major axes of the orbits or, equivalently: The periodic times are proportional to the three-halves powers of the semi-major axes (SEE Table I, page 36).

Thus, the Third Law addresses the integrated result of an entire periodic motion, while the Second Law addresses the changes in rate of motion subsumed within that cycle. The relationship of the two, in terms of Kepler's original approach, is that of an integral to a differential.

What happens to the Third Law in the case of a parabolic or hyperbolic orbit? In such case, the motion is no longer periodic, and the axis of the orbit has no assignable length. The periodic time and semi-major axes have, in a sense, both become "infinite." On the other hand, the motion of comets must somehow be coherent with the Keplerian motion of the main planets, just as there exists an overall coherence among all ellipses, parabolas, and hyperbolas, as subspecies of the family of conic sections. In fact, the motions of the comets are found to follow Kepler's Second Law to a very high degree of precision. That suggests a very simple consideration: How might we characterize the relationship between elapsed times and areas swept out, in terms of absolute values (and not only ratios), *without* reference to the length of a completed period? We can do that quite easily, thanks to Kepler's own work, by combining all three of Kepler's constraints.

Gauss's Constraints

Kepler's Second Law defines the ratio of the area swept out around the sun, to the elapsed time, as an unchanging, characteristic value for any given orbit. For an elliptical orbit, Kepler's Third Law allows us to determine the value of that ratio, by considering the special case of a single, completed orbital period. The area swept out during a complete period, is the entire area of the ellipse, which (as was already known to Greek geometers) is equal to $\pi \times A \times B$, where A and B are the semi-major and semi-minor axes, respectively. The elapsed time is the duration T of a whole period, known from Kepler's Third Law to be equal to $A^{3/2}$, when the semi-major axis and periodic time of the Earth's orbit are taken as units. The quotient of the two is $\pi \times A \times (B/A^{3/2})$, or in other words $\pi \times (B/\sqrt{A})$. Now, the quotient $B/\sqrt{A}$ has a special significance in the geometry of elliptical orbits [SEE **Appendix** (l)]: Its square, B^2/A, is equal to the "half-parameter" of the ellipse, which is half the width of the ellipse as measured across the focus in the direction perpendicular to the major axis. **(Figure 8.3a)** The importance of the half-parameter, which is equivalent to the radius in the case of a circle, lies in the fact that it has a definite meaning not only for circular and elliptical orbits, but also for parabolic and hyperbolic ones. **(Figures 8.3b and c)** The "orbital parameter" and "half-parameter" played an important role in Gauss's astronomical theories.

We can summarize the result just obtained as follows: For elliptical orbits, at least, the value of Kepler's ratio of area swept out to elapsed time—a ratio which is constant for any given orbit—comes out to be

$$\pi \times \sqrt{H},$$

where H is the half-parameter of the orbit. Unlike a periodic time and finite semi-major axis, which exist for elliptical but not parabolic or hyperbolic orbits, the "parameter" does exist for all three. Does the corresponding relationship actually hold true, for the actually observed trajectories of comets? It does, as was verified, to a high degree of accuracy, by Olbers and earlier

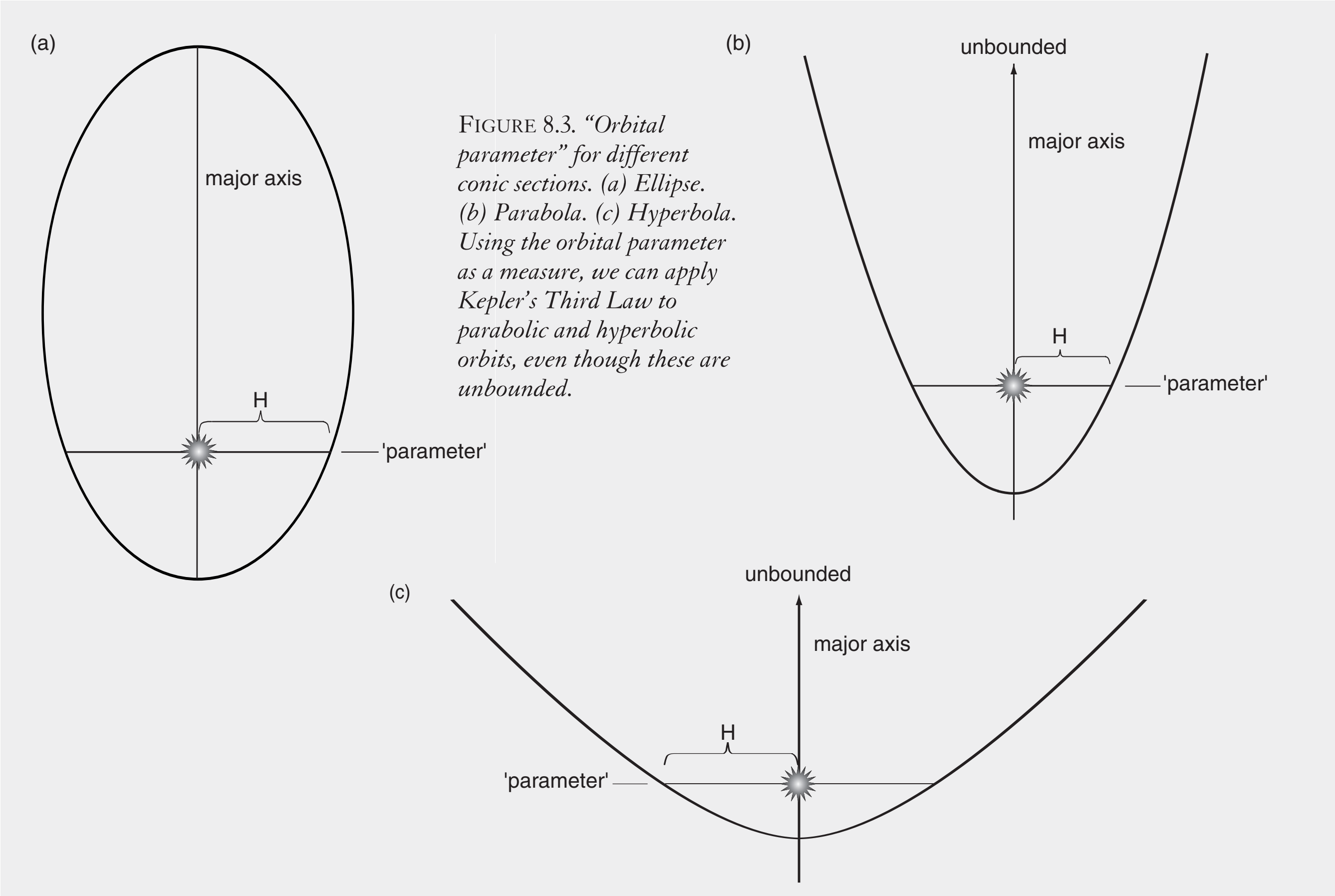


FIGURE 8.3. *"Orbital parameter" for different conic sections. (a) Ellipse. (b) Parabola. (c) Hyperbola. Using the orbital parameter as a measure, we can apply Kepler's Third Law to parabolic and hyperbolic orbits, even though these are unbounded.*

astronomers prior to Gauss's work.

The purpose of this exercise was to provide a replacement for Kepler's Third Law, which applies to parabolic and hyperbolic orbits, as well as to elliptical ones. We have succeeded. The constant of proportionality, connecting the ratio of area and time on the one side, and the square root of the "parameter" on the other, came to be known as "Gauss's constant." Taking the orbit of Earth as a unit, the constant is equal to π.

With one slight, additional modification, whose details need not concern us here,* the following is the generalized form of Kepler's constraints, which Gauss sets forth at the outset of his *Theory of the Motion of the Heavenly Bodies Moving about the Sun in Conic Sections.*

Gauss emphasizes that they constitute "the basis for all the investigations in this work":

(i) The motion of any given celestial body always occurs in a constant plane, upon which lies, at the same time, the center of the sun.

(ii) The curve described by the moving body is a conic section whose focus lies at the center of the sun.

(iii) The motion in that curve occurs in such a way, that the sectoral areas, described around the sun during various time intervals, are proportional to those time intervals. Thus, if one expresses the times and areas by numbers, the area of any sector, when divided by the time during which that sector was generated, yields an unchanging quotient.

(iv) For the various bodies orbiting around the sun, the corresponding quotients are proportional to the square roots of the half-parameters of the orbits.

—*JT*

* In his formulation in the *Theory of the Motion,* Gauss includes a factor correcting for a slight effect connected with the "mass ratio" of the planet to the sun. That effect, manifested in a slight increase in Kepler's ratio of area to elapsed time, becomes distinctly noticeable only for the larger planets, especially Jupiter, Saturn, and Uranus. The "mass," entering here, does not imply Newton's idea of some self-evident quality inhering in an isolated body. Rather, "mass" should be considered as a complex physical effect, measurable in terms of slight discrepancies in the orbits, i.e., as an additional dimension of curvature involving the relationship of the orbit, as singularity, to the entire solar system.

Chapter 9

Gauss's Order of Battle

Now, let us join Gauss, as he thinks over the problem of how to calculate the orbit of Ceres. Gauss had at his disposal about twenty observations, made by Piazzi during the period from Jan. 1 to Feb. 11, 1801. The data from each observation consisted of the specification of a moment in time, precise to a fraction of a second, together with two angles defining the precise direction in which the object was seen at that moment, relative to an astronomical system of reference defined by the celestial sphere, or "sphere of the fixed stars." Piazzi gave those angles in degrees, minutes, seconds, and tenths of seconds of arc.

In principle, each observation defined a line through space, starting from the location of Piazzi's telescope in space at the moment of the observation—the latter determinable in terms of the Earth's known rotation and motion around the sun—and directed along the direction defined by Piazzi's pair of angles. Naturally, Gauss had to make corrections for various effects such as the precession of the Earth's axis, aberration and refraction in the Earth's atmosphere, and take account of possible margins of error in Piazzi's observations.

Although the technical execution of Gauss's solution is rather involved, and required a hundred or more hours of calculation, even for a master of analysis and numerical computation such as Gauss, the basic method and principles of the solution are in principle quite elementary. Gauss's tactic was, first, to determine a relatively rough approximation to the unknown orbit, and then to progressively refine it, up to a high degree of precision.

Gauss's procedure was based on using only three observations, selected from Piazzi's data. Gauss's original choice consisted of the observations from Jan. 2, Jan. 22, and Feb. 11. (Figure 1.1) Later, Gauss made a second, definitive round of calculations, based on using the observations of Jan. 1 and Jan. 21, instead of Jan. 2 and Jan. 22.

Overall, Piazzi's observations showed an apparent retrograde motion from the time of the first observation on Jan. 1, to Jan. 11, around which time Ceres reversed to a forward motion. Most remarkable, was the size of the angle separating Ceres' apparent direction from the plane of the ecliptic—an angle which grew from about 15° on Jan. 1, to over 18° at the time of Piazzi's last observation. That wide angle of separation from the ecliptic, together with the circumstance, that all the major planets were known to move in planes much closer to the ecliptic, prompted Piazzi's early suspicion that the object might turn out to be a comet.

Gauss's first goal, and the most challenging one, was *to determine the distance of Ceres from the Earth,* for at least one of the three observations. In fact, Gauss chose the *second* of the unknown distances—the one corresponding to the intermediate of the three selected observations—as the prime target of his efforts. Finding that distance essentially "breaks the back" of the problem. Having accomplished that, Gauss would be in a position to successively "mop up" the rest.

In fact, Gauss used his calculation of that value to determine the distances for the first and third observations; from that, in turn, he determined the corresponding spatial positions of Ceres, and from the two spatial conditions and the corresponding time, he calculated a first approximation of the orbital elements. Using the coherence provided by that approximate orbital calculation, he could revise the initial calculation of the distances, and obtain a second, more precise orbit, and so on, until all values in the calculation became coherent with each other and the three selected observations.

The discussion in Chapter 2 should have afforded the reader some appreciation of the enormous ambiguity contained in Piazzi's observations, when taken at face value. Piazzi saw only a faint point of light, only a "line of sight" *direction,* and nothing in any of the observations *per se,* permitted any conclusion whatsoever about how far away the object might be. It is only by analyzing the *intervals* defined by all three observations taken together, on the basis of the underlying, Keplerian curvature of the solar system, that Gauss was able to reconstruct the reality behind what Piazzi had seen.

Polyphonic Cross-Voices

Gauss's opening attack is a masterful application of the kinds of synthetic-geometrical methods, pioneered by Gérard Desargues *et al.,* which had formed the basis of the revolutionary accomplishments of the Ecole Polytechnique under Gaspard Monge.

Firstly, of course, we must have confidence in the powers of Reason, that the Universe is composed in such a way, that the problem can be solved. Secondly, we must consider everything that might be relevant to the problem. We are not permitted to arbitrarily "simplify" the problem. We cannot say, "I refuse to consider this, I refuse to consider that."

To begin with, it is necessary to muster not only the relevant data, but above all the *complex of interrelationships*—potential polyphonic cross-voices!—underlying the three observations in relation to each other and (chiefly) the sun, the positions and known orbital motion of the Earth, the unknown motion of Ceres, and the "background" of the rest of the solar system and the stars.

Accordingly, denote the times of the three observations by t_1, t_2, t_3, the corresponding (unknown!) true spatial positions of Ceres by P_1, P_2, P_3, and the corresponding positions of the Earth (or more precisely, of Piazzi's observatory) at each of the three moments of observation, by E_1, E_2, E_3. Denote the position of the center of the sun by O. **(Figure 9.1)** We must consider the following relationships in particular:

(i) The three "lines of sight" corresponding to Piazzi's observations. These are the lines passing from E_1 through P_1, from E_2 through P_2, and from E_3 through P_3. As already noted, the observations tell us only the *directions* of those lines and, from knowledge of the Earth's motion, their points of origin, E_1, E_2 and E_3; but *not* the *distances* E_1P_1, E_2P_2 and E_3P_3.

(ii) The *elapsed times* between the observations, taken pairwise, i.e., $t_2–t_1$, $t_3–t_2$, and $t_3–t_1$, as well as the ratios or intervals of those elapsed times, for example $t_3–t_2 : t_2–t_1$, $t_2–t_1 : t_3–t_1$, $t_3–t_2 : t_3–t_1$, and the various permutations and inversions of these.

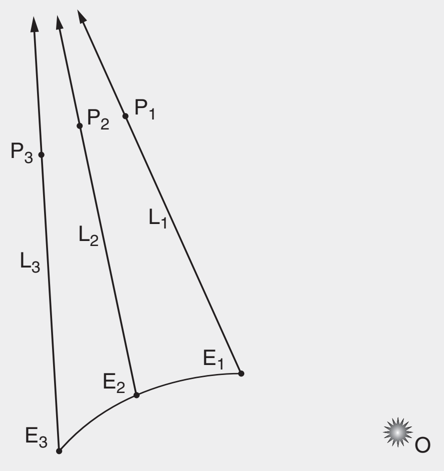


FIGURE 9.1. *Positions of the sun (O), Earth (E), and Ceres (P), at the three times of observation.* P_1*,*P_2*,*P_3 *must lie on lines of sight* L_1*,*L_2*,*L_3*, but their distances from Earth are not known.*

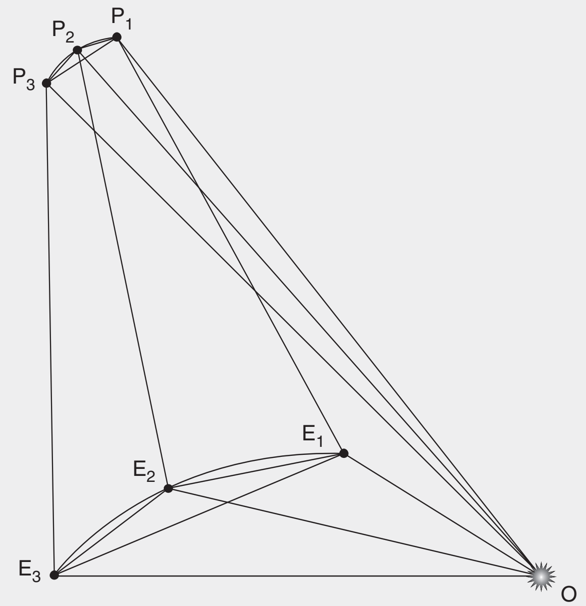


FIGURE 9.2. *Triangular relationships among Earth, Ceres, and the sun.*

(iii) The *orbital sectors* for the Earth and Ceres, corresponding to the elapsed times just enumerated, in relation to one another and the elapsed times.

(iv) The *triangles* formed by the positions of the Earth, Ceres and the sun, in particular the triangles OE_1E_2, OE_2E_3, OE_1E_3, and triangles OP_1P_2, OP_2P_3, OP_1P_3, representing relationships among the three positions of the Earth and of Ceres, respectively; plus the three triangles formed by the positions of the sun, the Earth and Ceres at each of the three times, taken together: OE_1P_1, OE_2P_2, OE_3P_3. Also, each of the line segments forming the sides of those triangles. **(Figure 9.2)**

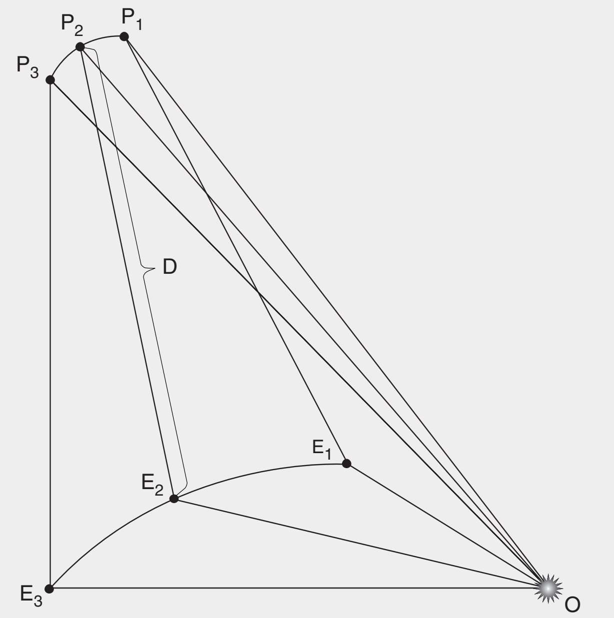
Each line segment must be considered, not as a noun but as a verb, a geometrical interval. For example, the segment E_1P$_1$ implies a potential action of displacement from E_1 to P_1. Displacement E_1P_1 is therefore not the same as P_1E_1.

(v) The relationships (including relationships of area) between the triangles OE_1E_2, OE_2E_3, OE_1E_3, as well as OP_1P_2, OP_2P_3, OP_1P_3 and the corresponding orbital sectors, as well as the elapsed times, in view of the Kepler/Gauss constraints.

Gauss's immediate goal, is to determine the second of those distances, the distance from E_2 to P_2. Call that critical unknown, "D." **(Figure 9.3)**

Although we shall not require it explicitly here, for his detailed calculations, Gauss, in a typical fashion, intro-

FIGURE 9.3. *Gauss's immediate goal: determine distance D from E_2 to P_2.*



duces a spherical projection into the construction, transferring the directions of all the various lines in the problem for reference to a single center. **(Figure 9.4)** Thereby, Gauss generates a new set of relationships, as indicated in Figure 9.4.

Faced with this bristling array of relationships, some readers might already be inclined to call off the war, before it has even started. Don't be a coward! Don't be squeamish! Nothing much has happened yet. However bewildering this complex of spatial relationships might appear at first sight, remember: everything is bounded by the curvature of what Jacob Steiner called "the organism of space." All relationships are generated by one and the same Gaussian-Keplerian principle of change, as embodied in the combination of motions of the Earth and Ceres, in particular. The apparent complexity just conceals the fact that we are seeing one and the same "One," reflected and repeated in many predicates.

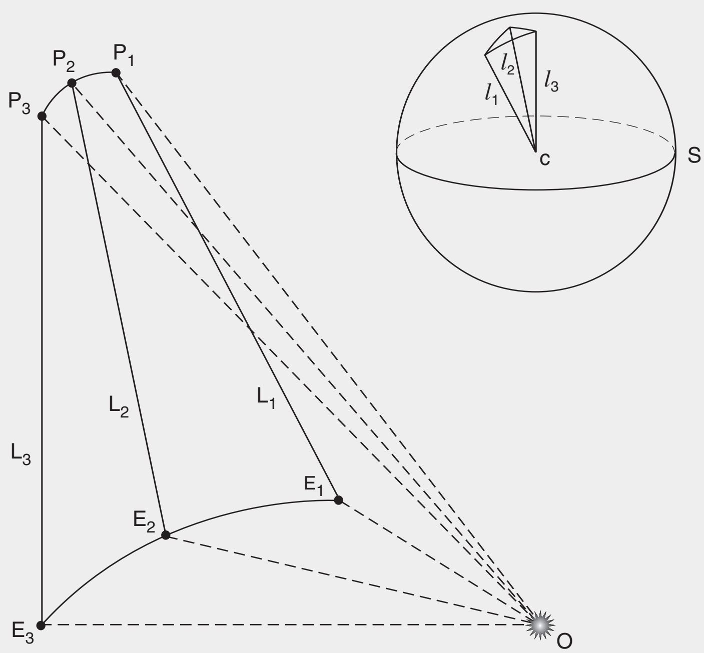
As for the construction, it is all in our heads. Seen from the standpoint of Desargues, the straight lines are nothing but artifacts subsumed under the "polyphonic" relationships of the angles formed by the various directions, seen as "monads," located at the sun, Earth, and Ceres.

Somewhere within these relationships, the desired distance "*D*" is lurking. How shall we smoke it out? Might the answer not lie in looking for the footprints of a *differential of curvature* between the Earth's motion and the (unknown) motion of Ceres?

We shall discover Gauss's wonderfully simple solution in the following chapter.

—JT

FIGURE 9.4. *Gauss's spherical mapping. The directions of the lines L_1, L_2, L_3 are transferred to an imaginary sphere S, by drawing unit segments l_1, l_2, l_3, parallel to L_1, L_2, L_3, respectively, from the center c. In addition (although not shown here, for the sake of simplicity), Gauss transferred all the other directions in the problem—i.e., the directions of the lines OE_1, OE_2, OE_3, and OP_1, OP_2, OP_3—to the "reference sphere," thus obtaining a summary of all the angular relationships.*



CHAPTER 10

Closing In on Our Target

Gauss is a mathematician of fanatical determination, he does not yield even a hand's width of terrain. He has fought well and bravely, and taken the battlefield completely.

—Comment by Georg Friedrich von Tempelhoff, 1799.

Prussian General and Chief of Artillery, Tempelhoff was also known for his work in mathematics and military history. The youthful Gauss, who regarded him as one of the best German mathematicians, had sent him a pre-publication copy of his *Disquisitiones Arithmeticae.*

Although Gauss knew analytical calculation perhaps better than any other living person, he was sharply opposed to any mechanical use of it, and sought to reduce its use to a minimum, as far as circumstances allowed. He often told us, that he never took a pencil into his hand to calculate, before the problem had been completely solved by him in his head; the calculation appeared to him merely as a means by which to carry out his work to its conclusion. In discussions about these things, he once remarked, that many of the most famous mathematicians, including very often Euler, and even sometimes Lagrange, trusted too much to calculation alone, and could not at all times account for what they were doing in their investigations. Whereas he, Gauss, could affirm, that at every step he always had the goal and purpose of his operations precisely in mind, and never strayed from the path.

—Walther Sartorius von Waltershausen,

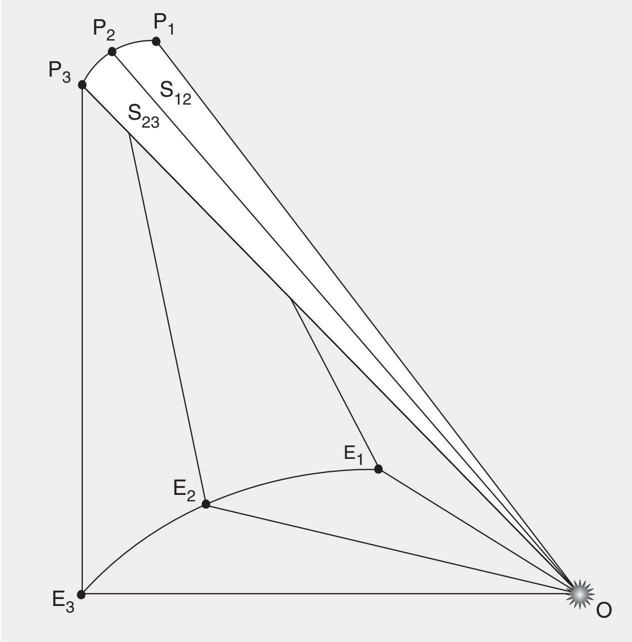
godson of Goethe and a student and close friend of Gauss, in a biographical sketch written soon after Gauss's death in December 1855.

In the last chapter, we mustered the key elements which must be taken into account to determine the Earth-Ceres distances and, eventually, the orbit of Ceres, from a selection of three observations, each giving a time and the angular coordinates of the apparent position of Ceres in the heavens at the corresponding instants.

Our suggested approach is to "read" the space-time intervals among the three chosen observations, as implicitly expressing a relationship between the curvatures of the orbits of Earth and Ceres. Then, compare the adduced differential, with the "projected" appearance, to derive the distances and the positions of the object.

To carry out this idea, Gauss first focusses on the manner in which the second ("middle") position of each planet is related to its first and third (i.e., "outer") positions. In other words: How is P_2 related to P_1 and P_3? And, what is the distinction of the relation of P_2 to P_1 and P_3, in comparison with that of E_2 to E_1 and E_3? **(Figure 10.1)**

FIGURE 10.1. *Sectoral areas S_{12} and S_{23}, swept out as Ceres moves, respectively, from P_1 to P_2, and from P_2 to P_3.*



Thanks to our knowledge of the overall curvature of the solar system, embodied *in part* in the Gauss-Kepler constraints, we can say something about those questions, even before knowing the details of Ceres' orbit.

To wit: Regard P_2 and E_2 as singularities resulting from *division of the total action of the solar system,* which carries Ceres from P_1 to P_3, and simultaneously carries the Earth from E_1 to E_3, during the time interval from t_1 to t_3. In both cases, the Gauss-Kepler constraints tell us, that the *sectoral areas* swept out by the two motions, are proportional to the elapsed times. The latter, in turn, are known to us, from Piazzi's observations.

Explore this matter further, as follows. Concentrating first on Ceres, write, as a shorthand:

S_{12} = area of orbital sector swept out by Ceres from P_1 to P_2,

S_{23} = area of orbital sector from P_2 to P_3,

S_{13} = area of orbital sector from P_1 to P_3.

According to the Gauss-Kepler constraints, the ratios

$S_{12} : t_2 - t_1$, $S_{23} : t_3 - t_2$, and $S_{13} : t_3 - t_1$,

which are equivalent to the fractional expressions more easily used in computation

$$\frac{S_{12}}{t_2-t_1}, \quad \frac{S_{23}}{t_3-t_2}, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{S_{13}}{t_3-t_1},$$

all have the same identical value, namely, the product of Gauss's constant (in our context equal to π) and the square root of Ceres' orbital parameter. (SEE Chapter 8) The analogous relationships obtain for the Earth. Now, we don't know the value of Ceres' orbital parameter, of course; nevertheless, the above-mentioned proportionalities are enough to determine key "cross"-ratios of the areas and times among themselves, without reference to the orbital parameter. For example, the just-mentioned circumstance that

S_{12} : elapsed time $t_2 - t_1$: : S_{23} : elapsed time $t_3 - t_2$

(the " : : " symbol means an equivalence between two ratios), has as a consequence, that the ratio of those areas must be equal to the ratio of the elapsed times, or in other words:

$$\frac{S_{12}}{S_{23}} = \frac{t_2-t_1}{t_3-t_2},$$

and similarly for the various permutations of orbital positions 1, 2, and 3.

Now, we can compute the elapsed times, and their ratios, from the data supplied by Piazzi, for the observations chosen by Gauss. The specific values are not essential to the general method, of course, but for concreteness, let's introduce them now. In terms of "mean solar time," the times given by Piazzi for the three chosen observations, were as follows:

t_1 = 8 hours 39 minutes and 4.6 seconds p.m. on Jan. 2, 1801.
t_2 = 7 hours 20 minutes and 21.7 seconds p.m. on Jan. 22, 1801.
t_3 = 6 hours 11 minutes and 58.2 seconds p.m. on Feb. 11, 1801.

The circumstance, that t_2 is nearly half-way between t_1 and t_3, yields a certain advantage in Gauss's calculations, and is one of the reasons for his choice of observations. Calculated from the above, the elapsed times are:

$t_2 - t_1$ = 454.68808 hours,

$t_3 - t_2$ = 478.86014 hours, and

$t_3 - t_1$ (the sum of the first two) = 933.54842 hours.

Calculating the various ratios, and taking into account what we just observed concerning the implications of the Gauss-Kepler constraints, we get the following conclusion:

$$\frac{S_{12}}{S_{23}} = \frac{t_2-t_1}{t_3-t_2} = 0.94952,$$

$$\frac{S_{12}}{S_{13}} = \frac{t_2-t_1}{t_3-t_1} = 0.48705,$$

$$\frac{S_{23}}{S_{13}} = \frac{t_3-t_2}{t_3-t_1} = 0.51295.$$

Everything we have said so far, including the numerical values just derived, applies just as well to the Earth, as to Ceres. We merely have to substitute the areas swept out by the Earth in the corresponding times. Of course, in the case of the Earth, we know its positions and orbital motion quite precisely; here, the ratios of the sectoral areas tell us nothing essentially new. For Ceres, whose orbit is *unknown* to us, our application of the "area law" has placed us in a paradoxical situation: Without, for the moment, having any way to calculate the orbit and the areas of the orbital sectors themselves, we now have precise values for the *ratios* of those areas!

How could we use those ratios, to derive the orbit of Ceres? Not in any linear way, obviously, because the same values apply to the Earth and *any* planet moving according to the Gauss-Kepler constraints. The key, here, is not to think in terms of "getting to the answer" by some "straight-line" procedure. Rather, we have to think of progressing in *dimensionalities,* just as in a battle we strive to increase the freedom of action of our own forces, while progressively reducing that of the enemy forces. So, at each stage of our determination of the Ceres orbit, we try to increase what we know by one or more dimensions, while reducing the indeterminacy of what we must know, but don't yet know, to a corresponding extent. We don't have to worry about how the orbital values will finally be calculated, in the end. It is enough to know, that by proceeding in the indicated way, the values will eventually be "pinned down" as a matter of course.

So, our acquiring the values for the *ratios* of the sectoral areas generated by Ceres' motion, does not in itself lead to the desired orbital determination; but, in the context of the whole complex of relationships, we have closed in on our target by at least one "dimensionality."

Accordingly, return once more to the relationship of the intermediate position of Ceres (P_2), to the outside positions (P_1 and P_3). Introduce a new tactic, as follows.

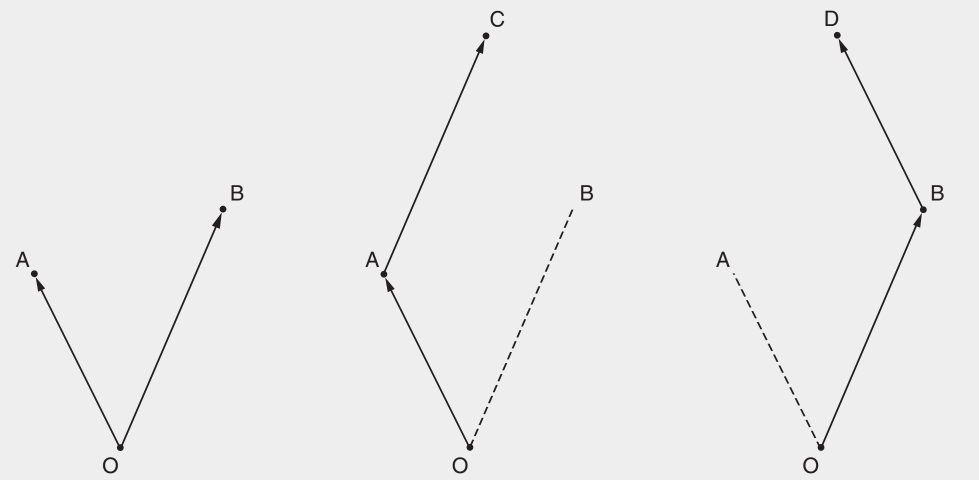


FIGURE 10.2. *The famous "parallelogram law" for combination of displacements OA and OB, assumes that the result of the combination does not depend on the order in which the displacements are carried out—i.e., that C and D coincide. Gauss considered that this might only be approximately true, and that the parallelogram law might break down when the displacements are very large.*

The Harmonic Ordering of Action in Space

Among most elementary characteristics of the "organism of space," is the manner in which the result of a series of displacements, is related to the individual displacements making up that series. This concerns us very much in the case in point. For example, the *apparent* position of Ceres, as seen from the Earth at any given moment, corresponds to the direction, in space, of the line segment from the Earth to Ceres. The latter, seen as a geometrical interval or displacement, can be represented as a differential between two other spatial intervals or displacements, namely the interval from the sun to the Earth, "subtracted," in a sense, from the interval from the sun to Ceres. Or, to put it another way: the displacement from the sun to Ceres, can be broken down as the resultant or sum of the displacement from the sun to the Earth, following by the displacement from the Earth to Ceres. Similarly, we have to take account of successive displacements corresponding to the motions P_1 to P_2, P_2 to P_3, E_1 to E_2, E_2 to E_3, etc.

Now, this *apparently* self-evident mode of combining displacements, involves an *implicit assumption,* which Gauss was well aware of. If I have two displacements from a *common locus,* say from the O (i.e., the center of the sun) to a location A, and from the O to location B, then I might envisage the combination or addition of the displacements in either of the following two ways **(Figure 10.2)**: I might apply the first displacement, to go from O to A, and then go from A to a third location, C, by displacing *parallel* to the second displacement from

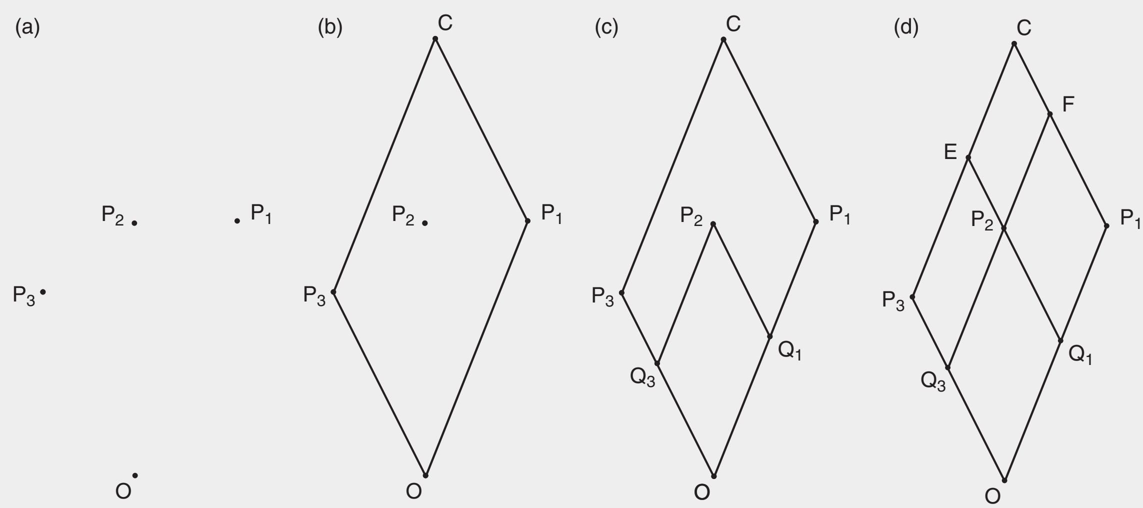


FIGURE 10.3. *Derivation of the location of P_2 by parallel displacements along directions OP_1 and OP_3.*

the O to B, and by the same distance. The displacement from A to C is parallel and congruent to that from O to B, and can be considered as equivalent to the latter in that sense. Or, I might operate the displacements in the *opposite order;* moving first from O to B, and *then* moving parallel and congruent with OA, from B to a point D. The obvious assumption here is, that the two procedures produce the same end result, or in other words, that C and D will be the same location. In that case, the displacements OA, AC, OB, BC will form a *parallelogram* whose opposing pairs of sides are congruent and parallel line segments.

Could it happen, that C and D might actually turn out to be different, in reality? Gauss himself sought to define large-scale experiments using beams of light, which might produce an anomaly of a similar sort. Gauss was convinced, that Euclidean geometry is nothing but a useful approximation, and that the actual characteristics of visual space, are derived from a higher, "anti-Euclidean" curvature of space-time. Such an "anti-Euclidean" geometry, is already implied by the Keplerian harmonic ordering of the solar system, and would be demonstrated, again, by Wilhelm Weber's work on electromagnetic singularities in the microscopic domain, as well as the work of Fresnel on the nonlinear behavior of light "in the small." Hence, once more, the irony of Gauss's applying elementary constructions of Euclidean geometry, to the orbital determination of Ceres. Gauss's use of such constructions, is informed by the primacy of the "anti-Euclidean" geometry, in which his mind is already operating.

Turning to the relationship of P_2 to P_1 and P_3, the question naturally arises: Is it possible to describe the location P_2, as the combined result of a pair of displacements, along the directions of OP_1 and OP_3, respectively? **(Figure 10.3)** The possibility of such a representation, is already implicit in the fact, emphasized by Gauss in his reformulation of Kepler's constraints, that the orbit of any planet lies in a *plane* passing through the center of the sun. A plane, on the other hand, is a simplified representation of a "doubly extended manifold," where all characteristic modes of displacement are reducible to two principles or "dimensionalities." On the elementary geometrical level, this means, that out of any *three* displacements, such as OP_1, OP_2, and OP_3, one must be reducible to a combination of the other two, or at least of displacements along the directions defined by the other two. In fact, it is easy to construct such a decomposition, as follows.

Start with only the two displacements OP_1 and OP_3. Combine the two displacements, in the manner indicated above, to generate a point C, as the fourth vertex of a parallelogram consisting of OP_1, OP_3, P_1C, and P_3C. **(Figure 10.3b)** Now, apart from extreme cases (which we need not consider for the moment), the position P_2 will lie *inside* the parallelogram. We need only "project" P_2 onto each of the "axes" OP_1, OP_3 by lines parallel with the other axis. **(Figure 10.3c)** In other words, draw a parallel to OP_1 through P_2, intersecting the segment OP_3 at a point Q_3, and intersecting the parallel segment P_1C at a point F. Draw a parallel to OP_3 through P_2, intersecting the segment OP_1 at a point Q_1 and the parallel segment P_3C at a point E. The result of this construction, is to create several sub-parallelograms, including one with sides OQ_1, Q_1P_2, OQ_3, Q_3P_2, and having P_2 as a vertex. **(Figure 10.3d)**

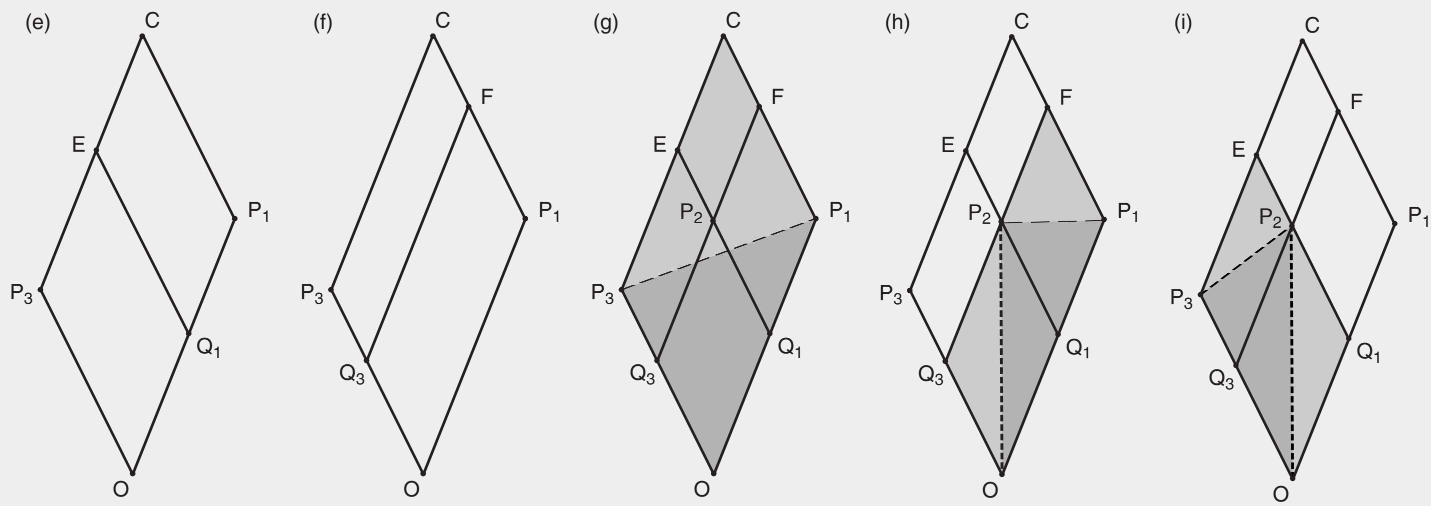
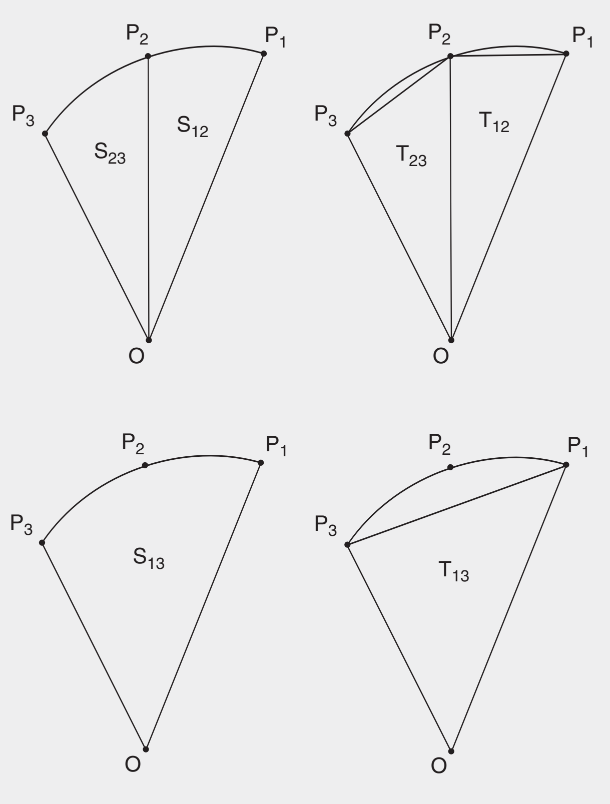


FIGURE 10.4. *Orbital sectors S_{12},S_{23},S_{13}, and their corresponding triangular areas T_{12}, T_{23}, T_{13}.*



Examining this result, we see that the displacement OP_2, which corresponds to the diagonal of the above mentioned sub-parallelogram, is equivalent, *by construction,* to the combination or sum of the displacements OQ_1 and OQ_3, the latter lying along the axes defined by P_1 and P_3. We have thus expressed the position of P_2 in terms of P_1, P_3, and the two other division points Q_1 and Q_3.

This suggests a new question: Given, that all these constructions are hypothetical in character, since the positions of P_1, P_2, and P_3 are yet unknown to us, do Piazzi's observations together with the Gauss-Kepler constraints, allow us to draw any conclusions of interest, concerning the location of the points Q_1 and Q_3, or at least the shape and *proportions* of the sub-parallelogram $OQ_1P_2Q_3$, in relation to the parallelogram OP_1CP_3?

Aha! Why not have a look at the relationships of *areas* involved here, which must be related in some way to the areas swept out during the orbital motions. First, note that the line Q_1E, which was constructed as the parallel to OP_3 through P_2, divides the area of the whole parallelogram OP_1CP_3 according to a specific proportion, namely that defined by the ratio of the segment OQ_1, to the larger segment OP_1. **(Figure 10.3e)** Similarly, the line Q_3F divides the area of the whole parallelogram according to the proportion of OQ_3 to OP_3. **(Figure 10.3f)** Or, conversely: the ratios $OQ_1:OP_1$ and $OQ_3:OP_3$ are the same, respectively, as the *ratios of the areas* of the sub-parallelograms OQ_1EP_3 and OQ_3FP_1, to the whole parallelogram OP_1CP_3.

What are those areas? Examining the triangles generated by our division of the parallelogram, and by the segments P_1P_2, P_2P_3, and P_1P_3, observe the following: The triangle OP_1P_3 makes up exactly *half* the area of the whole parallelogram OP_1CP_3. **(Figure 10.3g)** The triangle OP_1P_2 makes up half the area of the sub-parallelogram OQ_3FP_1 **(Figure 10.3h)**, and the triangle OP_2P_3 makes up exactly half the area of the parallelogram OQ_1EP_3. **(Figure 10.3i)** Consequently, the ratios of the parallelogram areas, which in turn are the ratios by which Q_3 and Q_1 divide the segments OP_3 and OP_1, respectively, are nothing other than the ratios of the triangular areas OP_1P_2 and OP_2P_3, respectively, to the triangular area OP_1P_3. As a shorthand, denote those areas by T_{12}, T_{23}, and T_{13}, respectively. **(Figure 10.4)**

This brings us to a critical juncture in Gauss's whole solution: How are the areas of the triangles, just mentioned, related to the corresponding sectors, swept out by the motion of Ceres, and whose ratios are known to us?

Comparing T_{12} with S_{12}, for example, we see that the difference lies only in the relatively small area, enclosed between the orbital arc from P_1 to P_2, and the line segment connecting P_1 and P_2. The magnitude of that area, is an effect of the curvature of the orbital arc. Now, if we knew what that was, we could calculate the ratios of the triangular areas from the known ratios of the sectors; and from that, we would be in possession of the ratios defining the division of OP_1 and OP_3 by the points Q_1 and Q_3. Those ratios, in turn, express the spatial relationship between the intermediate position P_2 and the outer positions P_1 and P_3. As we shall see in Chapter 11, that would bring us very close to being able to calculate the distance of Ceres from the Earth, by comparing such an adduced spatial relationship, to the observed positions as seen from the Earth.

Fine and good. But, what do we know about the curvature of the orbital arc from P_1 to P_3? Was it not exactly the problem we wanted to solve, to determine what Ceres' orbit is? Or, do we know something more about the curvature, even without knowing the details of the orbit?

—*JT*

Chapter 11

Approaching the *Punctum Saliens*

We are nearing the *punctum saliens* of Gauss's solution. The constructions in this and the following chapters are completely elementary, but highly polyphonic in character.

Let us briefly review where we stand, and add some new ideas in the process.

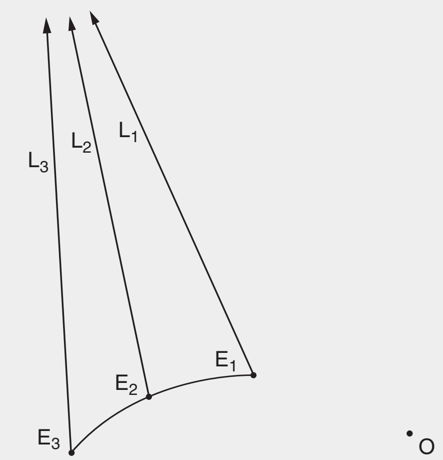
Recall the nature of the problem: We have three observations by Piazzi, reporting the apparent position of Ceres in the sky, as seen from the Earth, at three specified moments of time, approximately twenty days apart. The first task set by Gauss, is to determine the distance of Ceres from the Earth for at least one of those observations.

Two "awesome" difficulties seemed to stand in our way:

First, the observations of the motion of Ceres, were made from a point which is not fixed in space, but is also moving. The position and apparent motion of Ceres, as seen from the Earth, is the result of not just one, but several simultaneous processes, including Ceres' actual orbital motion, but also the orbital motion and daily rotation of the Earth. In addition, Gauss had to "correct" the observations, by taking account of the precession of the equinoxes (the slow shift of the Earth's rotational axis), optical aberration and refraction, etc.

Secondly, there is nothing in the observations of Ceres *per se,* which gives us any direct hint, about how distant the object might be from the Earth. Each observation defines nothing more than a "line-of-sight," a direction in which the object was seen. We can represent this situation as follows **(Figure 11.1)**: From each of three points, E_1, E_2, E_3, representing the positions of the Earth (or more precisely, of Piazzi's observatory) at the three times of observation, draw "infinite" lines L_1, L_2, L_3, each in

Figure 11.1. *Points P_1,P_2,P_3 must lie on lines of sight L_1,L_2,L_3. But where?*



Box I. The position of P_2 is related to that of P_1 and P_3, by a parallelogram, formed from displacements OQ_1 and OQ_3, along the axes OP_1 and OP_3, respectively.

Points Q_1 and Q_3 divide the segments OP_1 and OP_3 according to proportions which can be expressed in terms of the triangular areas T_{12}, T_{23}, and T_{13}. In fact, from the discussion in Chapter 10, we know that

$$\frac{OQ_1}{OP_1} = \frac{T_{23}}{T_{13}}, \text{ and}$$

$$\frac{OQ_3}{OP_3} = \frac{T_{12}}{T_{13}}.$$

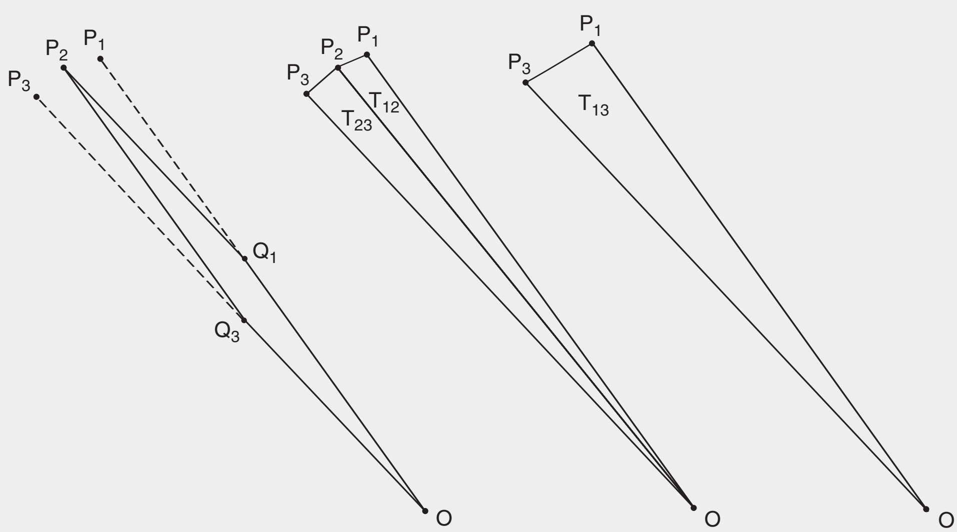
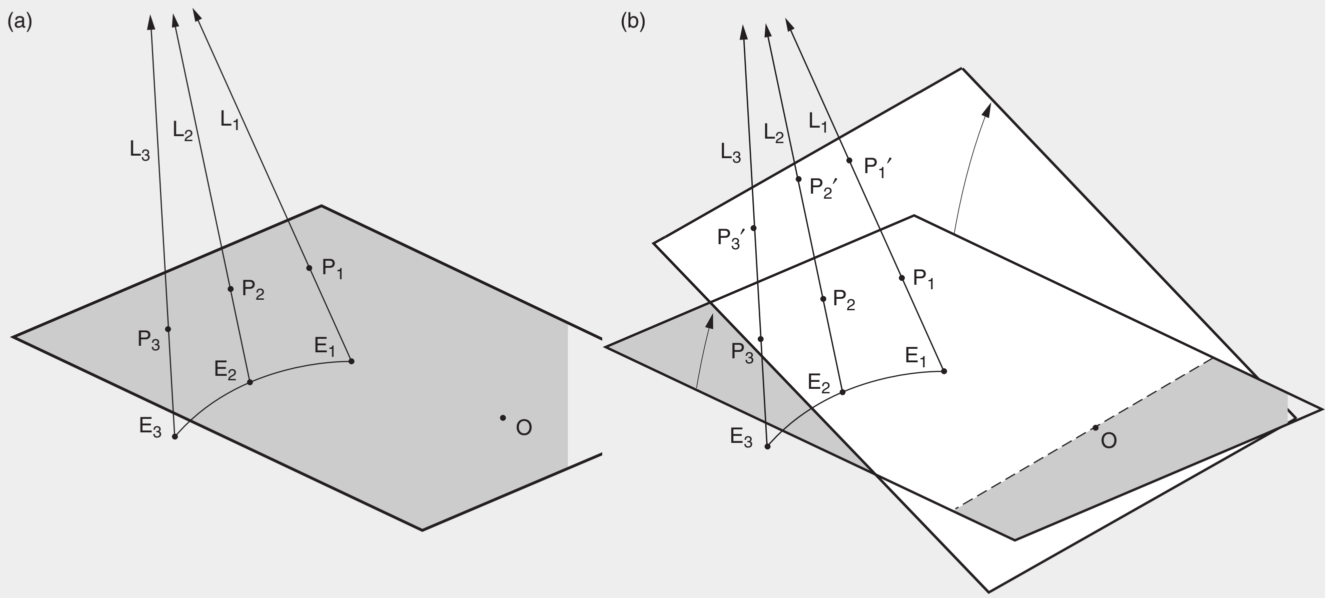


FIGURE 11.2. *(a) P_1, P_2, P_3, which are positions on Ceres' orbit, must all lie in some plane passing through the sun. (b) Each hypothetical position of the orbital plane defines a different configuration of positions P_1, P_2, P_3 relative to each other.*



the direction in which Ceres was seen at the corresponding time. Concerning the actual positions in space of Ceres (positions we have designated P_1, P_2, P_3), the observations tell us only, that P_1 is located somewhere along L_1, P_2 is somewhere on L_2, and P_3 is somewhere on L_3. For an empiricist, the distances along those lines remain completely indeterminate.

We, however, know more. If Ceres belongs to the solar system, its motion must be governed by the harmonic ordering of that system, as expressed (in part) by the Gauss-Kepler constraints. Those constraints reflect the curvature of the space-time, within which the events recorded by Piazzi occurred, and relative to which we must "read" his observations.

According to Gauss's first constraint, the orbit of Ceres is confined to some *plane* passing through the center of the sun. This simple proposition, should already transform our "reading" of the observations. The three positions P_1, P_2, P_3, rather than simply lying "somewhere" along the respective lines, are the points of intersections of the three lines L_1, L_2, L_3 with a certain plane passing through the sun. **(Figure 11.2a)** We don't yet know which plane this is; but, the very occurrence of an intersection of that form, already greatly reduces the degree of indeterminacy of the problem, and introduces a relationship between the three (as yet unknown) positions and distances.

Indeed, imagine a variable plane, which can pivot around the center of the sun; for each position of that plane, we have three points of intersection, with the lines L_1, L_2, L_3. Consider, how the *configuration* of those three points, relative to each other and the sun, *changes* as a function of the variable "tilt" of the plane. **(Figure 11.2b)** Can we specify something characteristic about the geometrical relationship among the three actual positions P_1, P_2, P_3 of Ceres, which might distinguish that specific group of points *a priori* from all other "triples" of points, generated as intersections of the three given lines with an arbitrary plane through the center of the sun?

Thanks to the work of the last chapter, we already have part of the answer. **(Box I)** We found, that the second position of Ceres, P_2, is related to the first and third positions P_1 and P_3, by the existence of a *parallelogram,* whose vertices are O, P_2, and two points Q_1 and Q_3, lying on the axes OP_1 and OP_3 respectively. Furthermore, we discovered that the *positions* Q_1 and Q_3, defining those two displacements, can be precisely characterized in terms of ratios of the triangular areas spanned by the positions P_1, P_2, P_3 (and O).

Henceforth, we shall sometimes refer to the values of those ratios, $T_{23} : T_{13}$ and $T_{12} : T_{13}$ (or, T_{23}/T_{13} and T_{12}/T_{13}), as "coefficients," determining the interrelation of the three positions in question.

We already observed in the last chapter, that the triangular areas entering into these relationships, are *nearly* the same as the orbital sectors swept out by the planet in moving between the corresponding positions; and, whose ratios are *known* to us, thanks to Kepler's "area law," as ratios of elapsed times. In fact, we calculated them in the last chapter from Piazzi's data.

The area of each orbital sector, however, *exceeds* that of the corresponding triangle, by the lune-shaped area, enclosed between the orbital arc and the straight-line segment connecting the corresponding two positions of the planet.

As long as the three positions of the planet are relatively close together—as they are in the case of Ceres at the times of Piazzi's observations—the lune-shaped excesses amount to only a small fraction of the areas of the triangles (or sectors). In that case, the ratios of the triangles $T_{23}:T_{13}$ and $T_{12}:T_{13}$ would be "very nearly" equal to the ratios of the corresponding orbital sectors, $S_{23}:S_{13}$ and $S_{12}:S_{13}$, whose values we calculated in the preceding chapter.

Can we regard the small difference between the triangle and sector ratios, as an "acceptable margin of error" for the purposes of a first approximation? If so, then we could take the numerical values calculated in Chapter 10 from the ratios of the elapsed times, and say:

$$\frac{T_{23}}{T_{13}} = \text{(approximately)}\ \frac{S_{23}}{S_{13}} = 0.513\ ,$$

$$\frac{T_{12}}{T_{23}} = \text{(approximately)}\ \frac{S_{12}}{S_{23}} = 0.487\ .$$

Let us suppose, for the moment, that these equations were exactly correct, or very nearly so. What would they tell us, about the configuration of the three points P_1, P_2, P_3?

To get a sense of this, readers should perform the following graphical experiment: Choose a fixed point O, to represent the center of the sun, and choose *any* two other points as hypothetical positions for P_1 and P_3. Next, determine the corresponding positions of Q_1 and Q_3 on the segments OP_1 and OP_3, so that OQ_1 is 0.513 times the total length of OP_1, and OQ_3 is 0.487 times the total length of OP_3. Combine the displacements OQ_1 and OQ_3 according to the "parallelogram law," to determine a position for P_2. Now, change the positions of P_1 and P_3, and see how P_2 changes. What remains constant in the relationship between P_2, P_1, and P_3? Also, examine the effect, of replacing the "coefficients" just used, by some other pair of values, say 0.6 and 0.9.

Evidently, by *specifying* the values of the ratios in terms of which the position of P_2 is determined by those of P_1 and P_3, we have *greatly restricted* the range of "possible" triples of points, which could qualify as the three actual positions for Ceres.

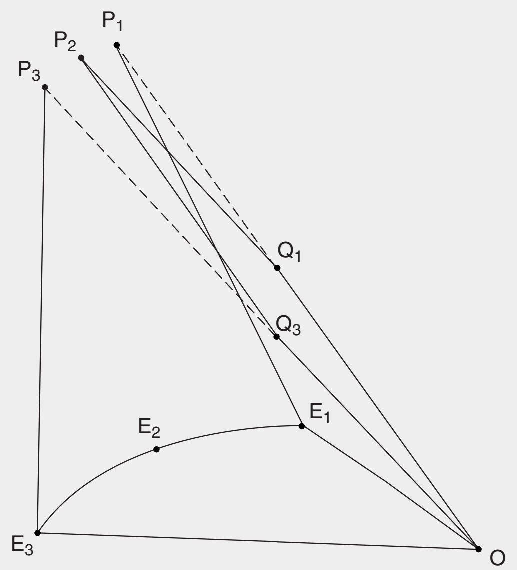
Recall the image of a manifold of "triples" of points, generated as the intersections of a variable plane, passing through the center of the sun, with the three "lines of sight" L_1, L_2, L_3. (SEE Figure 11.2) How many of those triples manifest the specific type of relationship of the second upon the first and third, defined by those specific values for the coefficients? Exploring this question by drawings and examples, we soon gain the conviction, that—apart from very exceptional cases in terms of the lines L_1, L_2, L_3, and the specified values of the coefficients—the specified type of configuration is realized for only *one* position of the movable plane. Thus, the positions of the three points in question, are practically uniquely determined, once L_1, L_2, L_3 and the "coefficients" are given.

If that is the case, then the task we have set ourselves must, intrinsically, be capable of solution! In particular, there must be a way to determine the Earth-Ceres distances from nothing more than the directions of the lines L_1, L_2, L_3 (as given by Piazzi's observations), the positions of the Earth, and sufficiently accurate values for the coefficients defined above.

To see how this might be accomplished, reflect on the implications of the parallelogram expressing the interrelationship between the second, and the first and third positions of Ceres. (SEE Box I) That parallelogram expresses the circumstance, that the (as yet unknown) position of P_2, results from a combination of the two displacements OQ_1 and OQ_3. Concerning the positions of Q_1 and Q_3, we know that they lie on the segments OP_1 and OP_3, respectively, and divide those segments according to proportions ("coefficients") whose values are known to us, at least in approximation. **(Figure 11.3)** Unfortunately, since we don't know P_1 and P_3, we have no way to directly determine the positions of Q_1 and Q_3 in space.

Let us look into the situation more carefully. Consider, first, the displacement OQ_1 in relation to the positions of the sun, Earth, and Ceres at the first moment of observation. Those positions form a triangle, whose sides are

FIGURE 11.3. *Closing in on P_2. The proportional relationships of Q_1,Q_3 to OP_1,OP_3 are known approximately from the ratios of elapsed times.*



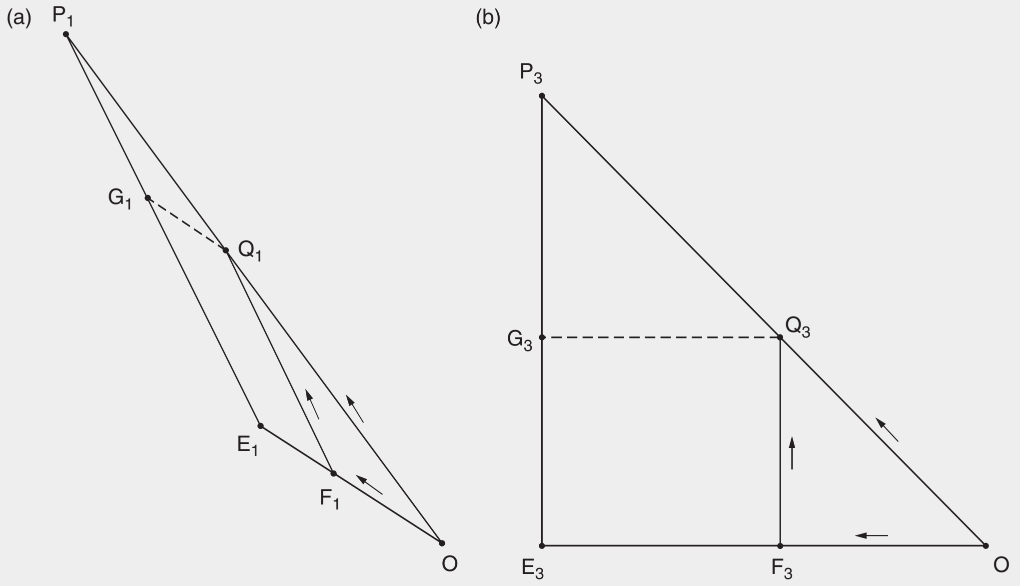


FIGURE 11.4. *Closing in on P_2. Determining (a) F_1 and the direction of F_1Q_1, and (b) F_3 and the direction of F_3Q_3.*

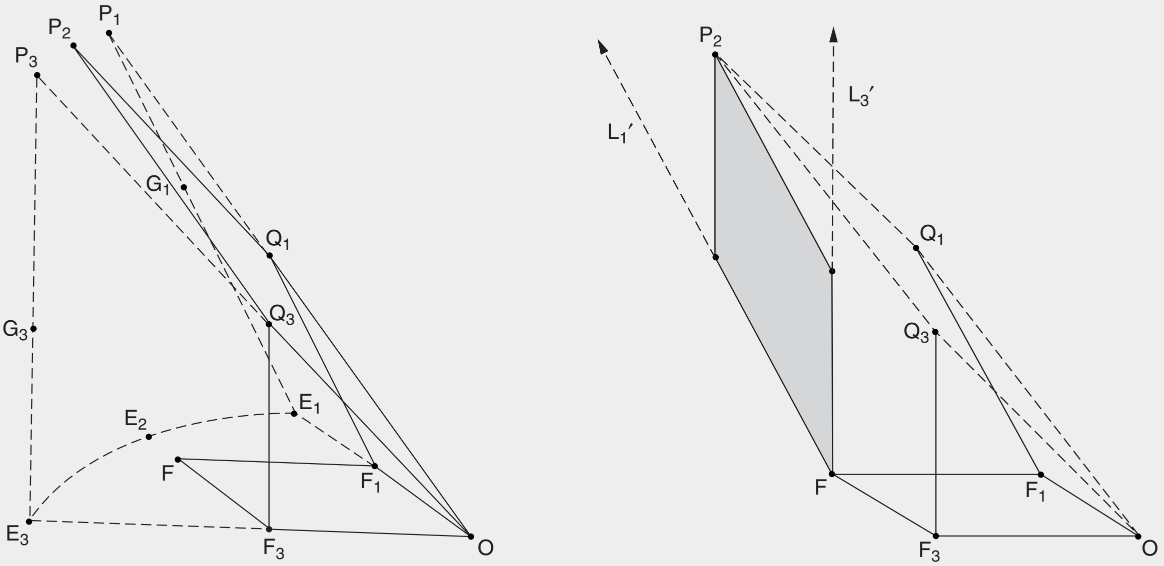
OE_1, OP_1 and E_1P_1. **(Figure 11.4a)** Point Q_1 lies on one of those sides, namely OP_1, dividing it according to the proportion defined by the first coefficient. However, we can't say anything about the lengths of OP_1 and E_1P_1, nor about the angle between them, so the position of Q_1 remains undetermined for the moment.

But what about the points, which correspond to Q_1 on the *other* sides of the triangle? Draw the parallel to the line-of-sight E_1P_1, through Q_1 down to OE_1. That parallel intersects the axis OE_1 at a location, which we shall call F_1. That point F_1 will divide the segment OE_1 by the *same* proportion, that Q_1 divides OP_1 (for, by construction,

BOX II. The position of P_2 results from the combination of the displacements OQ_1 and OQ_3. On the other hand, by our constructions,

$$OQ_1 = OF_1 + F_1Q_1, \text{ and } OQ_3 = OF_3 + F_3Q_3.$$

Combine displacements OF_1 and OF_3, to get a position F, and then perform the other two displacements, F_1Q_1 and F_3Q_3. This amounts to constructing a parallelogram based at F whose sides are parallel to, and congruent with, the segments F_1Q_1 and F_3Q_3. The directions of the latter segments are parallel to Piazzi's "lines of sight" from E_1 to P_1 and E_3 to P_3, respectively. The end result must be P_2. This tells us that P_2 lies in the plane through F, determined by those two "line of sight" directions.



OF_1Q_1 and OE_1P_1 are similar triangles). That proportion, as we noted, is at least approximately known. Since the position of the Earth, E_1, is known, *we can determine the position of* F_1 *directly,* by dividing the known segment OE_1 according to that same proportion.

This result brings us, by implication, a dimension closer to our goal! Observe, that—by construction—the segment F_1Q_1 is parallel to, and congruent with, a sub-segment of the line-of-sight E_1P_1. Call that sub-segment E_1G_1. In other words, to arrive at the location of Q_1 from O, we can first go from O to the position F_1, just constructed, and then carry out a second displacement, equivalent to the displacement E_1G_1 but applied to F_1 instead of E_1. We don't know the magnitude of that displacement, but we *do know its direction,* which is that of the line of sight L_1 given by Piazzi's first observation.

Now, apply the very same considerations, to the positions for the third moment of observation (i.e., the triangle OE_3P_3). **(Figure 11.4b)** Dividing the segment OE_3 according to the value of the second coefficient, determine the position of a point F_3 on the line OE_3, such that the line F_3Q_3 is parallel with the line-of-sight E_3P_3. The displacement OQ_3 is thus equivalent to the combination of OF_3, and a displacement in the direction defined by the line of sight E_3P_3, i.e., L_3.

We are now inches away from being able to determine the position of P_2! Recall, that we resolved the displacement OP_2 into the combination of OQ_1 and OQ_3. Each of the latter two displacements, on the other hand, has now been decomposed, into a known displacement (OF_1 and OF_3, respectively), and a displacement along one of the directions determined by Piazzi's observations. In other words, OP_2 is the result of *four* displacements, of which two are known in direction and length, and the other two are known only as to direction. **(Box II)**

Assuming, as we did from the outset, that *the result of a series of displacements of this type, does not sensibly depend on the order in which they are combined,* we can imagine carrying out the four displacements, yielding the position of P_2 relative to O, in the following way: First, combine the displacements OF_1 and OF_3. The result is a point F, located in the plane of the ecliptic. We can determine the position of F directly from the known positions F_1 and F_3. Then, apply the two remaining displacements, to get from F to P_2.

What does that say, about the nature of the relationship of P_2 to F? We don't know the magnitudes of the displacements carrying us from F to P_2, but we know their two directions. They are the directions defined by Piazzi's original lines of sight, L_1 and L_3. *Aha!* Those two directions, as projected from F, define a *specific plane* through F. We have only to draw parallels L_1', L_3' through F, to the just-mentioned lines of sight; the plane in question, plane Q, is the plane upon which L_1' and L_3' lie. **(Figure 11.5)** Since that plane contains both of the directions of the two displacements in question, their combined result, starting from F—i.e., P_2—will in any

FIGURE 11.5. *P_2 must lie on plane Q constructed at point F. But where?*

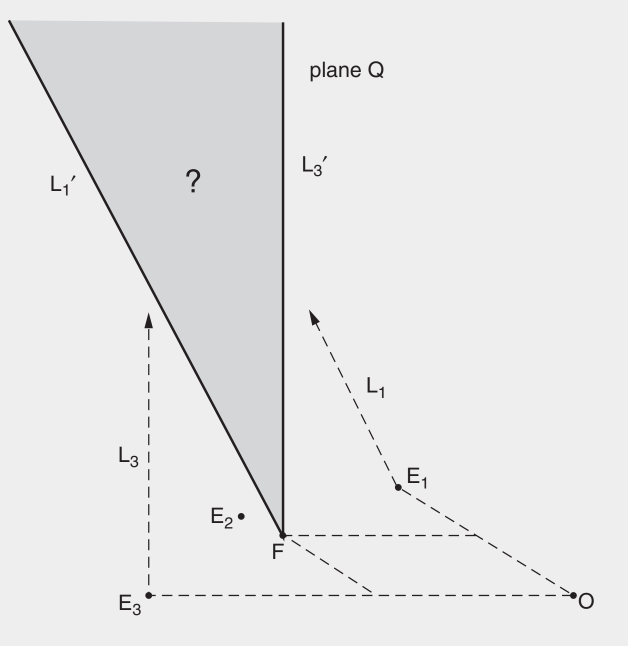
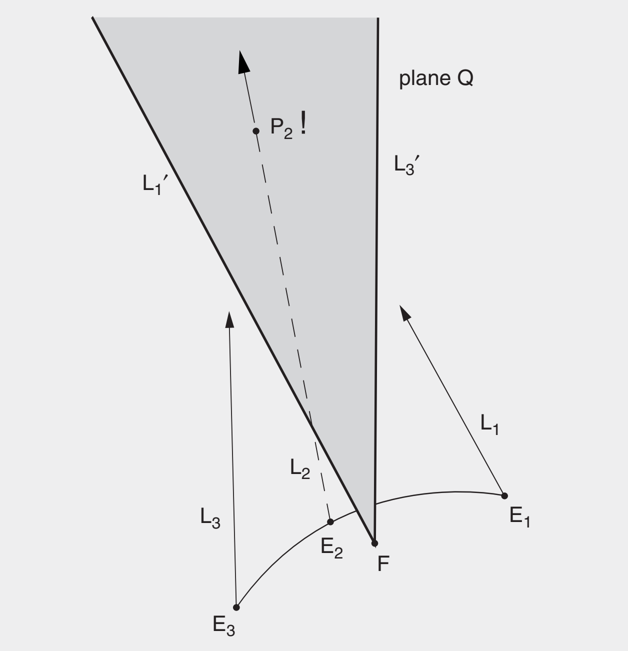


FIGURE 11.6. *Locating P_2. Line L_2, originating at E_2, must intersect plane Q at point P_2. E_2P_2 is the crucial distance we are seeking.*



case be some point in that plane.

So, P_2 lies on that plane. But where? Don't forget the second of the selected observations of Piazzi! That observation defines a line L_2, extended from E_2, along which P_2 is located. Where is it located? Evidently, *at the point of intersection of L_2 with the plane which we just constructed!* **(Figure 11.6)** The distance along L_2, between E_2 and that point of intersection (i.e., the distance E_2P_2), is the crucial distance we are seeking. *Eureka!*

This—with one, *very crucial* addition by Gauss—defines the kernel of a method, by which we can actually calculate the Earth-Ceres distance. It is only necessary to translate the geometrical construct, just sketched, into a form which is amenable to precise computations.

However, the pathway of solution we have found so far, has one remaining flaw. We shall discover that, and Gauss's ingenious remedy, in Chapter 12.

In the meantime, readers should ponder the following: The possibility of determining the position of P_2, as the intersection of the line L_2 with a certain plane through F, presupposes, that F does not coincide with the origin of that line, namely E_2. In fact, the size of the gap between F and E_2, reflects the difference in curvature between the orbits of Earth and Ceres, over the interval from the first to the third observations.

—*JT*

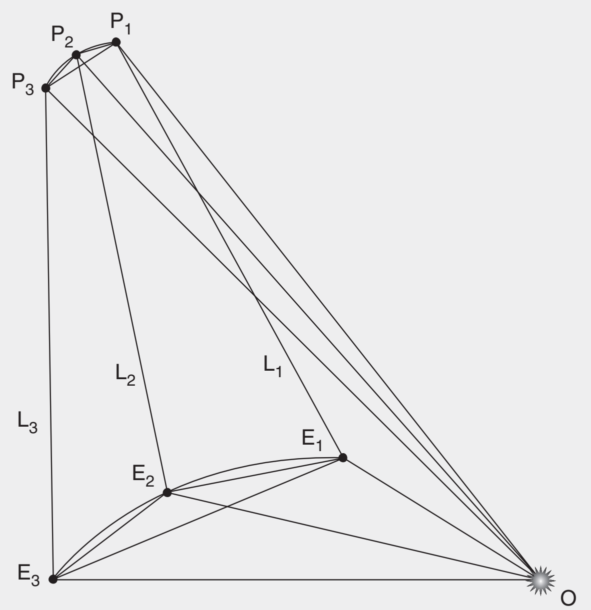
CHAPTER 12

An Unexpected Difficulty Leads to New Discoveries

In Chapter 11, we appeared to have won a major battle in our efforts to determine the orbit of Ceres from three observations. The war, however, has not yet been won. As we soon shall see, the greatest challenge still lies before us.

We developed a geometrical construction that gives us an approximation for the second position of Ceres. That construction consisted of the following essential steps:

FIGURE 12.1. *Relationships of the positions of the sun (O), Earth (E_1,E_2,E_3), lines of sight, and Ceres (P_1,P_2,P_3).*



1. The three chosen observations define the directions of three "lines-of-sight" from Piazzi's observatory through the positions of Ceres, at each of the given times of observation. Using that information, and the known orbit and rotational motion of the Earth, determine the positions of the observer, E_1, E_2, E_3, and construct lines L_1, L_2, L_3, running from each of those positions in the corresponding directions.* **(Figure 12.1)**

2. From the times provided for Piazzi's observations, compute the ratios of the elapsed times, between the first and second, the second and third, and the first and third times—i.e., the ratios $t_2–t_1 : t_3–t_1$ and $t_3–t_2 : t_3–t_1$.

3. According to Kepler's "area law," the values, just computed, coincide with the ratios of the sectoral areas, $S_{12} : S_{13}$ and $S_{23} : S_{13}$, swept out by Ceres over the corresponding time intervals. We *assumed,* that for the pur-

* For reference, Piazzi gave the apparent positions for Jan. 2, Jan. 22, and Feb. 11, 1801, as follows:

	right ascension	declination
Jan. 2	51° 47′ 49″	15° 41′ 5″
Jan. 22	51° 42′ 21″	17° 3′ 18″
Feb. 11	54° 10′ 23″	18° 47′ 59″

Those "positions" are nothing but the directions in which the lines L_1, L_2, L_3 are "pointing."

pose of approximation, it would be possible to ignore the relatively small discrepancy between the ratios of the *orbital sectors* on the one hand, and those of the corresponding *triangular areas* formed by the sun and the corresponding positions of Ceres, on the other. **(Figure 12.2)**

4. On that basis, we assumed that the ratios of the elapsed times, computed in step **2**, provide "sufficiently precise"*approximations* to the values for the ratios of the triangular areas, $T_{12}:T_{13}$ and $T_{23}:T_{13}$. The true values of those ratios, which I shall refer to as "*d*" and "*c*," respectively, are the coefficients which define the spatial relationship of the *second* position of Ceres to the *first* and *third* positions, in terms of the "parallelogram law" for the combination and decomposition of simple displacements in space.

5. Using the approximate values for *c* and *d* adduced from the elapsed times in the manner just described, construct a position *F*, in the plane of the Earth's orbit, in such a way, that *F's relationship to the Earth positions* E_1 *and* E_3*, is the same as that adduced to exist between the second, and first and third positions of Ceres.*

To spell this out just once more: Divide the lengths of the segments from the sun to the Earth, OE_1 and OE_3, according to the ratios defined by the approximate values for the coefficients *c* and *d*. In other words, construct points F_1 and F_3, along the segments OE_1 and OE_3, respectively, in such a way, that $OF_1/OE_1 = t_3-t_2 / t_3-t_1$ and $OF_3/OE_3 = t_2-t_1 / t_3-t_1$. Then, construct *F* as the endpoint of the resultant of the two displacements OF_1 and OF_3. (Thus, *F* will be the fourth vertex of the parallelogram constructed from points *O*, F_1, and F_3.) **(Figure 12.3)**

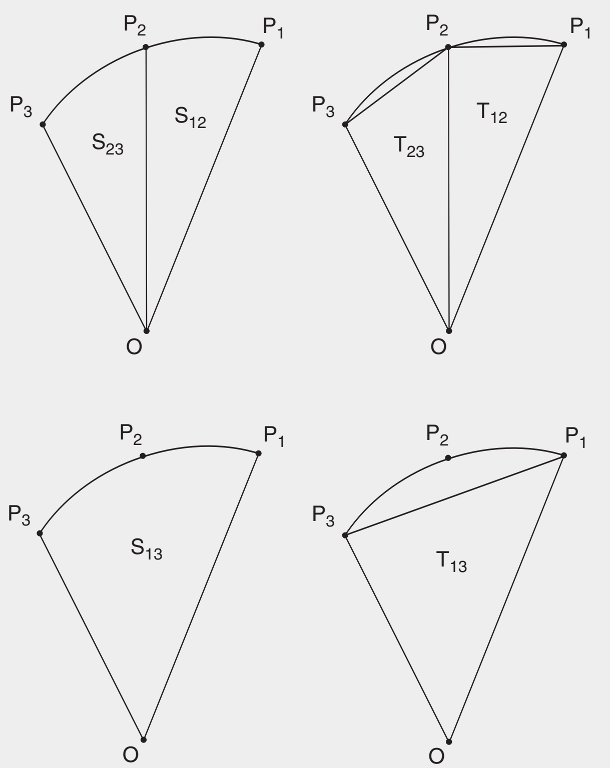
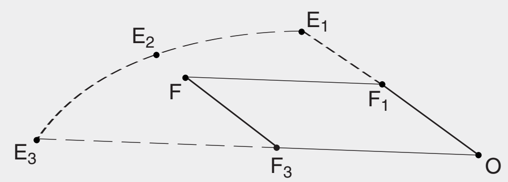


FIGURE 12.2. *Orbital sectors* S_{12}, S_{23}, S_{13} *and corresponding triangular areas* T_{12}, T_{23}, T_{13}.

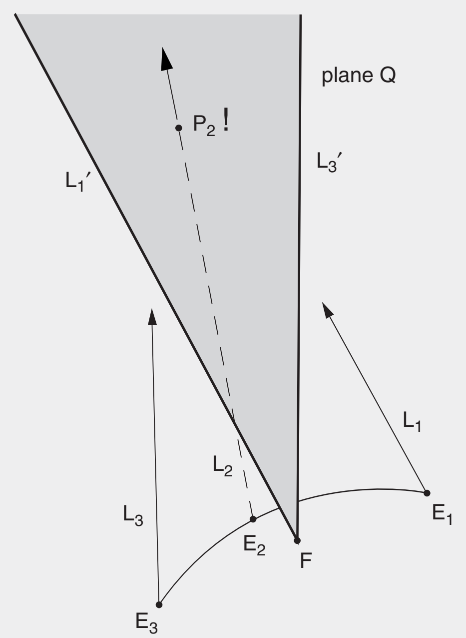
FIGURE 12.3. *Determining point F, as a combination of displacements along* OE_1 *and* OE_3.



6. Next, draw lines L_1', L_3' parallel to the lines L_1 and L_3, through *F*. The resulting lines determine a unique plane, *Q*, passing through *F*.

7. Determine the point *P*, where the line L_2 intersects the plane *Q*. In other words, "project" from the second position E_2 of the Earth, along the "line of sight" defined by the second observation, until you hit the plane *Q*. **(Figure 12.4)** That point, *P*, is our first approximation for the Ceres position P_2!

FIGURE 12.4. *The intersection of line* L_2 *with plane Q, determines point* P_2.



Using routine methods of analytical and descriptive geometry, as developed by Fermat and perfected by Gaspard Monge *et al.,* we can translate the geometrical construction, sketched above, into a procedure for numerical computation of the distance E_2P, from the data provided by Piazzi.

We would be well advised, however, to think twice before launching into laborious calculation. As it stands, our method is based on a crude approximation for estimating the values of the crucial coefficients, *c* and *d*. Remember, we chose to ignore the differences between the orbital sectors and the corresponding triangles. We might argue for the admissibility of that step, for the purposes of approximation, as follows.

Firstly, we are concerned only with the ratios, and not the absolute magnitudes of the sectors and triangles. Secondly, the differences in question—namely the lune-shaped areas contained between the orbital arcs and the straight-line chords connecting the corresponding orbital positions—are certainly only a tiny fraction of the *total* areas of the orbital sectors. Hence, they will have only a "marginal" effect on the values of the *ratios* of those areas.

In fact, simple calculations, carried out for the hypothetical assumption of a circular orbit between Mars and Jupiter,* indicate, that we can expect an error on the order of about *one-fourth of one percent* in the determination of the coefficients *c* and *d*, when we disregard the difference between the sectors and the triangles. Not bad, eh?

Before celebrating victory, however, let us look at the possible effect of that magnitude of error in the coefficients, for the rest of the construction.

Look at the problem more closely. An error of *x* percent in the values of *c* and *d*, will produce a corresponding percentual error in the positions of F_1 and F_2, and at most twice that error, in the process of combining OF_1 and OF_3 to create *F*. Any error in the position of *F*, however, produces a corresponding shift in the position of the plane *Q*, whose intersection with L_2 defines our approximation to the position of Ceres. Now, the *directions* of the lines L_1, L_2, L_3, which arose from observations made over a relatively short time, differ only by a few degrees. Since the orientation of the plane *Q* is determined by parallels to L_1 and L_3 at *F*, this means that L_2 will make an extremely "flat" angle to the plane *Q*. A slight shift in the position of the plane, yields a *much larger* change in the location of its intersection with L_2. How much larger? If we analyze the relative configuration of L_2, *Q*, and the ecliptic, corresponding to the situation in Piazzi's observations, then it turns out that any error in the position of *F*, can generate an error *ten to twenty times larger* in the location of the intersection-point. **(Figure 12.5)** That would bring us into the range of a worrisome 5-10 percent error in our estimate for the Earth-Ceres distance E_2P_2.

---

* To get a sense, how large that supposedly "marginal" error might be, let us work out a hypothetical case. Suppose that the unknown planet were moving in a circular orbit, about halfway between Mars and Jupiter; say, at a distance of 3 Astronomical Units (A.U.) from the sun (three times the mean Earth-sun distance). According to Kepler's constraints, the square of the periodic time (in years) of any closed orbit in the solar system, is equal to the cube of the major axis of the orbit (in A.U.). The periodic time for the unknown planet, in this case, would be the square root of $3\times3\times3$, or about 5.196152 (years). In a period of 20 days (i.e., approximately the time between the successive observations selected by Gauss), the planet would traverse a certain fraction of a total revolution around the sun, equivalent to 20 divided by the number of days in the orbital period of 5.196152 years, i.e., $20/(365.256364 \times 5.196152)$, or 0.010538. To find the area of the orbital sector swept out during 19 days, we have only to form the product of 0.010538 and the area enclosed by a total revolution—the latter being equal to π ($\sim$3.141593) times the square of the orbital radius (3×3). We get a result of 0.297951, in units of square A.U.

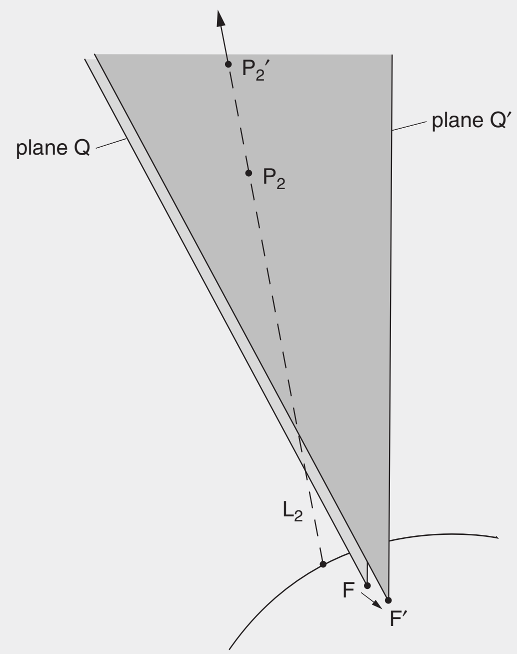
Next, compute the triangular area between the sun and two positions of the planet, 20 days apart. The angle swept out at the sun by that motion, is $0.010538 \times 360°$, or 3.79368°. The height and base of the corresponding isosceles triangle, whose longer sides are equal to the orbital radius, can be estimated by graphical means, or computed with the help of sines and cosines. The triangle is found to have a height of 2.998356 A.U. and a base (the chord between the two planetary positions) of 0.198600 A.U., for an area of 0.297737 square A.U.

Comparing the values just obtained, we find the excess area of the orbital sector over the triangle, to be a "mere" 0.000214 square A.U. (Given that an astronomical unit is 150 million kilometers, that "tiny" area corresponds to "only" about 5 trillion square kilometers!) More to the point, the ratio of the sector to the triangular area is 1.000718. Thus, in replacing the triangular areas T_{12} and T_{23} by the corresponding sector areas S_{12} and S_{23}, in the ratios which define the coefficients *c* and *d*, we introduce an error of about 0.07 percent.

Note, however, that these estimates only apply to an elapsed time of the order of 20 days—such as between the first and second, and the second and third positions. The first and third positions, on the other hand, are about 40 days apart; calculating this case through, we find an orbital sector area of 0.595902 and a triangular area of 0.594170 square A.U. In this case, the difference is 0.00193 square A.U.—almost *eight times* what it was in the earlier case!—and the ratio is 1.0029, corresponding to a proportional error of more than 0.29 percent. This is the error to be expected, when we use S_{13} instead of T_{13} in the ratios defining the coefficients *c* and *d*.

From these exploratory computations, we conclude that by far the largest source of error, in our estimate of the coefficients *c* and *d*, is due to the discrepancy between S_{13} and T_{13}.

FIGURE 12.5. *Owing to the extremely flat angle which the line L_2 makes to the plane Q, a slight shift in the position of F (from F to F′) causes a much larger change in the point of intersection with L_2 (from P_2 to P_2').*



As a matter of fact, our calculation with circular orbits *greatly* underestimates the error in the coefficients *c* and *d*, which would occur in the case of a significantly *non-circular* orbit (as is the case for Ceres). In that case, the error can amount to 2 percent or more, leading to a final error of 20-30 percent in our estimate of the object's distance.

Such a huge margin of error would render any prediction of the position of Ceres completely useless.

Back to Curvature

Reality has rejected the crudeness of our approach, in trying to ignore the discrepancies between the orbital sectors and the corresponding triangles. Those discrepancies are, in fact, the most crucial characteristics of the orbit itself "in the small"; they result from the curvature of the orbit, as reflected in the elementary fact, that the path of the planet between any two points, no matter how close together, is always "curving away from" a straight line.*

To come to grips with the problem, no less than *three levels* of the process must be taken into account:

(i) The curvature "in the infinitely small," which acts in any arbitrarily small interval, and continuously "shapes" the orbit at every moment of an ongoing process of generation.

(ii) The curvature of the orbit "in the large," considered as a "completed" totality "in the future," and which ironically pre-exists the orbital motion itself; this, of course as defined in the context of the solar system as a whole.

(iii) The geometrical intervals among discrete loci P_1, P_2, etc., of the orbit, as moments or events in the process, and whose relationships embody a kind of *tension* between the apparent cumulative or integrated effect of curvature "in the small," and the curvature "in the large"—acting, as it were, from the future.

Euler, Newton, and Laplace rejected this, linearizing both in the small and in the large. From the standpoint of Newton and Laplace, the orbit *as a whole*—history!—has no *efficient* existence. An orbit is only the accidental trace of a process which proceeds "blindly" from moment to moment under the impulse of momentary "forces"—like the "crisis management" policies of recent years! For the Newtonian, only "force", which you can "feel" in the "here and now," has the quality of reality. But Newtonian "blind force" is a purely linear construct, devoid of cognitive content. You can travel the entropic pathway of deriving the "force law" algebraically from Kepler's Laws; but, in spite of elaborate efforts of Laplace *et al.,* it is axiomatically impossible to derive the Keplerian ordering of the solar system as a whole, from Newton's physics.

In fact, the efforts of Burkhardt and others, to determine the orbit of Ceres using the elaborate mathematical apparatus set forth by Laplace in his famous *Méchanique Céleste,* proved a total failure. According to the report of Gauss's friend, von Zach, the elderly Laplace, who—from the lofty heights of Olympus, as it were—had been following the discussions and debates concerning Ceres, concluded that it was *impossible* to determine the orbit

---

* Industrious readers, who took the trouble to actually plot the position of *F*, using the ratios of elapsed times as described above, will have discovered, that *F* lies on the *straight line* between E_1 and E_3. One might also note the following:

(i) As long as we use the ratios of elapsed times as our coefficients, the sum of those coefficients will invariably be equal to 1.

(ii) If we have any two points *A* and *B*, divide the segments *OA* and *OB* according to coefficients whose sum is equal to 1, and generate the corresponding displacements along those two axes. The point resulting from the combination of those displacements, will always lie along the straight line joining *A* and *B*.

(iii) Consequently, insofar as P_2 does *not* lie on the segment P_1P_3, in virtue of the curvature of Ceres' orbit, the sum of the *true* values of *c* and *d*, will always be different from, and, in fact, greater than 1.

from Piazzi's limited data. Laplace recommended calling off the whole effort, waiting until some astronomer, by luck, might succeed in finding the planet again. When von Zach reported the results of Gauss's orbital calculation, and the extraordinary agreement between Gauss's proposed orbit and the entire array of Piazzi's observations, this was pooh-poohed by Laplace and his friends. But reality soon proved Gauss right.

Characteristic of the axiomatic superiority of Gauss's method, as of Kepler before him, is that Gauss treats the orbits as efficient entities. Accordingly, let us investigate the relationships among P_1, P_2, P_3, which necessarily ensue from the fact that they are subsumed as moments of a unique Keplerian orbit.

A Geometric Metaphor

For this purpose, construct the following representation of the manifold of all potential orbits (seen as "completed" totalities), having a common focus at the center of the sun, and lying in any given plane. **(Figure 12.6)** Represent that plane as a horizontal plane, passing through a point *O*, representing the center of the sun. Above the plane, generate a circular cone, whose vertex is at *O*, and whose axis is the perpendicular to the plane through *O*.

Cutting the cone by another, variable plane, we generate the entire array of conic sections. The perpendicular projection of each such conic section, down onto the horizontal plane, will also be a conic section; and the resulting conic sections in the horizontal plane will all have the point *O* as a common focus.* (SEE "The Ellipse as a Conical Projection," in the **Appendix**)

This construction can be "read" as a geometrical metaphor, juxtaposing two different "spaces" that are axiomatically incompatible. In this metaphor, the cone represents the invisible space of the process of creation (which Lyndon LaRouche sometimes calls the "continuous manifold"), while the horizontal plane represents the space of visible phenomena. The projected conic section is the visible, "projected" image of a singularity in the higher space.

Using this construction, examine the relationship among P_1, P_2, P_3, and the unique orbit upon which P_1, P_2, P_3 lie. We can determine that orbit by "inverse projection," as follows. **(Figure 12.7)**

At each of P_1, P_2, P_3, draw a perpendicular to the horizontal plane. Those three perpendiculars intersect the cone at corresponding points, U_1, U_2, U_3. The latter points, in turn, determine a unique plane, cutting the cone through those points and generating a conic section containing them. The projection of that conic section onto the "visible" horizontal plane, will be the unique orbit upon which P_1, P_2, P_3 lie. Note, that the heights h_1, h_2, h_3 of the points U_1, U_2, U_3 above the horizontal plane are proportional to the radial distances of P_1, P_2, P_3 from the origin *O*.

Note an additional singularity, generated in the process: The plane through U_1, U_2, U_3 intersects the axis of the cone at a certain point, *V*. The *height* of that point on the axis above *O*, is, in fact, closely related to the

* I first presented the basic idea of this construction in an unpublished April 1983 paper entitled "Development of Conical Functions as a Language for Relativistic Physics."

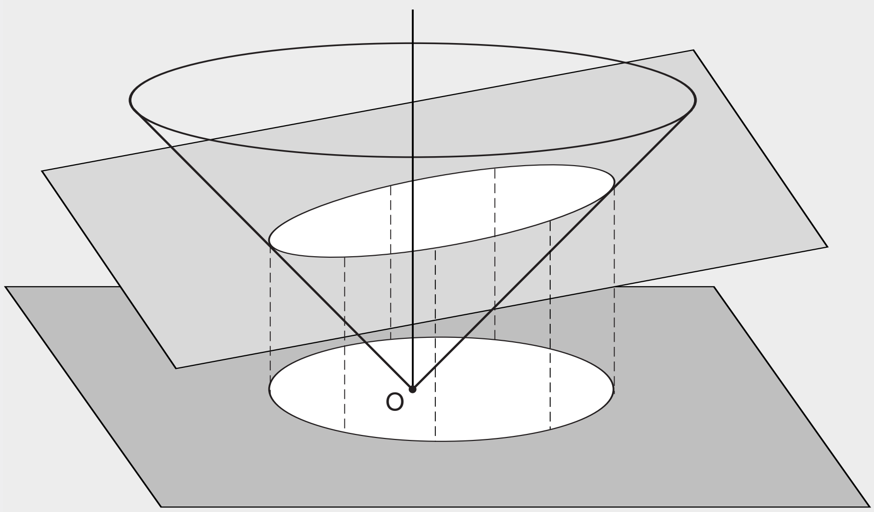


FIGURE 12.6. *Construct a circular cone with apex at point O, the position of the sun in a horizontal plane. By cutting the cone with a second plane, we generate an ellipse. When projected down onto the horizontal plane, this ellipse will generate a corresponding, second ellipse. We shall use this construction to investigate the relationships of the orbital sectors and triangular areas formed by the observed positions of Ceres.*

FIGURE 12.7. *Use our construction to relate positions P_1, P_2, P_3, radial distances r_1, r_2, r_3, heights h and h_1, h_2, h_3, and the orbital parameter.*

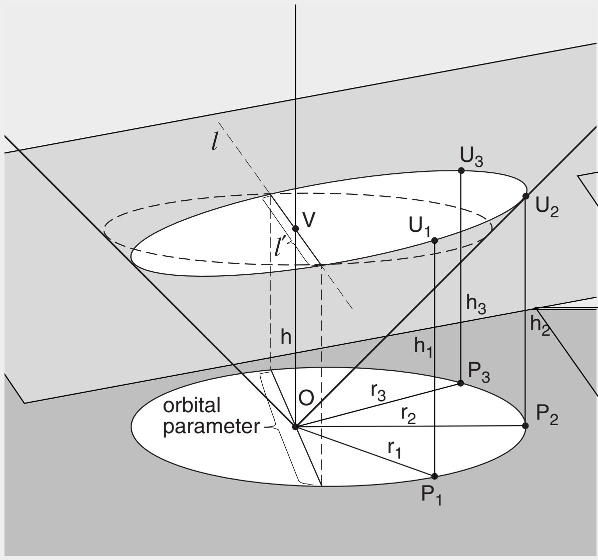
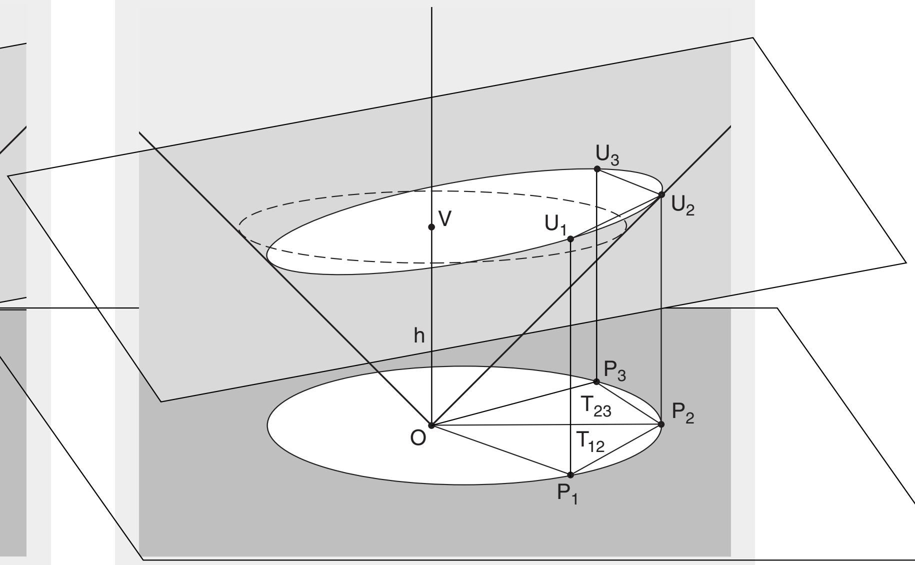


FIGURE 12.8. *What is the relationship between the triangular areas T_{12}, T_{23}, T_{13} and height h of the point V?*



"parameter" of the orbit, which played a key role in Gauss's formulation of Kepler's constraints. Gauss showed, that the area swept out by a planet in its motion in a given orbit over any interval of time, is proportional (by a universal constant of the solar system) to the duration of the time interval, multiplied by the square root of the "orbital parameter." Integrating this with the conical representation that we have just introduced, opens up a new pathway toward the solution of our problem.

In fact, if we cut the cone horizontally at the height of V, then the intersection of that horizontal with the plane of U_1, U_2, U_3, will be a line l, perpendicular to the main axis of the conic section. That line l intersects the conic section in two points, which lie symmetrically on opposite sides of V and at the same height. The segment l' of l (bounded by those points) defines the cross-width of the conic section at V. Line segment l' is also a diameter of the cone's circular cross-section at V, which in turn is proportional to the height h of V on the axis. Now, project down to the horizontal plane of P_1, P_2, P_3. The image of l', equivalent to l' in length, is the perpendicular diameter of the orbit at the focus O, exactly the length that Gauss called the "parameter" of the orbit.

All of this can be seen, nearly at a glance, from the diagram in Figure 12.6. The immediate upshot is, that Gauss's "orbital parameter," which governs the relationship between the elapsed time and the area swept out by the motion of a planet in its orbit, is proportional to the h of the point V on the axis of the cone.

On the other hand, our method of "inverse projection" allows us to determine *V directly* in terms of the three positions P_1, P_2, P_3, by constructing the plane through the corresponding points U_1, U_2, U_3. As a "spin-off" of these considerations, we obtain a simple way to determine Gauss's orbital parameter for any orbit, from nothing more than the positions of any three points on the orbit. We can say even more, however.

We found, earlier, a way to express the spatial relationship between P_1, P_2, P_3 (relative to O), in terms of the ratios of the triangular areas T_{12}, T_{23}, T_{13}. This points to the existence of a simple *functional relationship* between those triangular areas, and the value of the orbital parameter (or, equivalently, the height of V). The latter, in turn, is functionally related to the values of corresponding times and orbital sectors, by Gauss's constraint. **(Figure 12.8)**

Our conical construction has provided a missing link, in the necessary coherence of the orbital sectors with the corresponding triangles. This, in turn, will allow us to supersede the crude approximation, used so far, and to determine the Ceres distance with a precision which Laplace and his followers considered to be impossible.

The details will be worked out in the following chapter. But, it is already clear, that we have advanced by another, critical dimension, closer to victory. The key to our success, was a sortie into the "continuous manifold" underlying the planetary orbits.

—JT

CHAPTER 13

Grasping the Invisible Geometry Of Creation

In the previous chapter, we shifted our attention from the visible form of Ceres' orbit, to its *generation* in a higher domain. With the help of a simple geometrical metaphor, we represented the higher domain by a circular cone with its axis in the vertical direction, and the lower, "visible domain" by a horizontal plane. We made the plane intersect the cone at its vertex, at the location corresponding to the center of the sun, and likened the relationship of visible events to events in the higher, "conical space," to a projection from the cone, parallel to the conical axis, down to the plane.

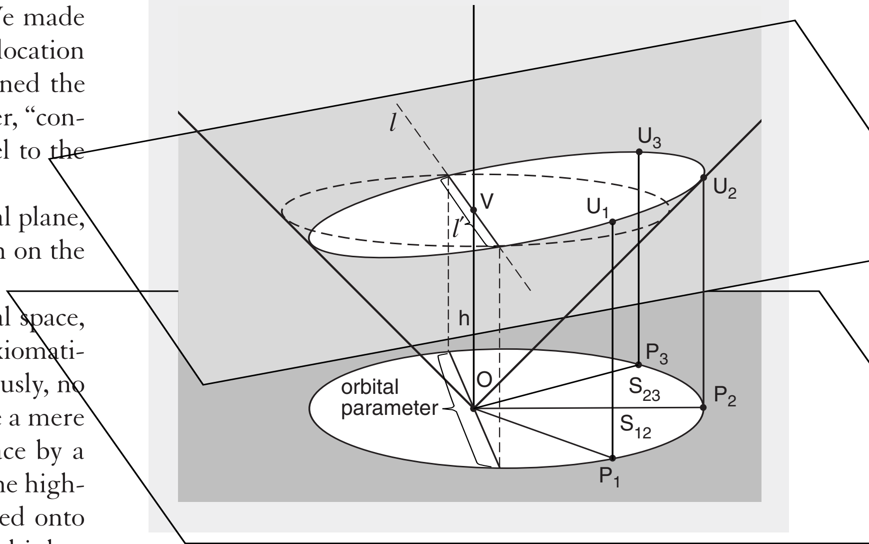
In fact, if we trace Ceres' orbit on the horizontal plane, that form is the projected image of a conic section on the cone.

How is it possible to use the geometry of visual space, to "map" relationships in a "higher space" of an axiomatically different character? Only as paradox. Obviously, no "literal" representation is possible, nor do we have a mere analogy in mind. When we represent visual space by a *two-dimensional* plane (inside visual space!), and the higher space as a cone in "three dimensions," projected onto the plane, we do not mean to suggest that the higher space is only "higher" by virtue of its having "more dimensions." Rather, we should "read" the axis of the cone in our representation, to signify a different *type* of ordering principle than that of visual space—one embodying features of the transfinite, "anti-entropic" ordering of the Universe as a whole.

Reflecting on the irony of applying constructions of elementary geometry to such a metaphorical mapping, the following idea suggests itself: The geometry of visible space has shown itself *appropriate* to a process of discovery of the reality lying outside visual space, when it is considered not as something fixed and static, but as constantly *redefined* and *developed* by our cognitive activity, just as we develop the well-tempered system of music through Classical thorough-composition. Should we not treat elementary geometry from the standpoint, that visual space is created and "shaped" *to the purpose* of providing reason with a pathway toward grasping the "invisible geometry" of Creation itself?

Keeping these ironies in mind, let us return to the challenge which last chapter's discussion placed in front of us. We developed a method for constructing an approximation of Ceres' position, which did not adequately take into account the space-time curvature in the small. As a result, we introduced a source of error which could lead to major discrepancies between our estimate of the Earth-Ceres distance, and the real distance. If Gauss had not corrected that fault, his attempt at forecasting the orbit of Ceres, would have been a failure.

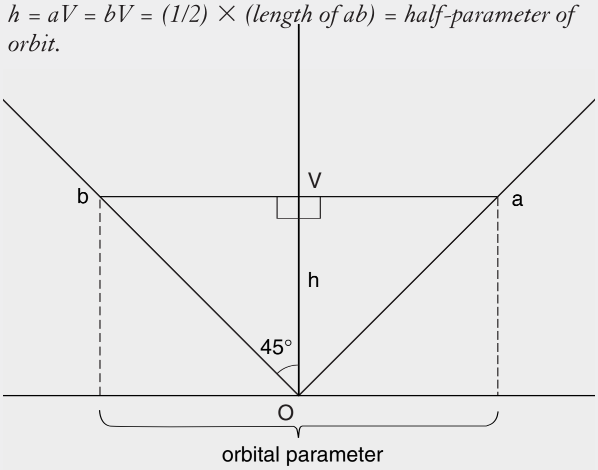
FIGURE 13.1. *The orbital parameter is the projection of diameter l' in the circular cross-section of the cone at height h of V. Diameter l' is generated by the intersection of the circular and elliptical cross-sections.*



We have no alternative, but to investigate the curvature in the small which characterizes the spatial relationship between any three positions P_1, P_2, P_3 of a planet, solely by virtue of the fact that they are "moments" of one and the same Keplerian orbit. And, to do that without any assumption concerning the particular form of the conic-section orbit.

We projected the three given positions up to the cone, to obtain points U_1, U_2, U_3. The latter three points determine a *unique* plane, which intersects the cone in a conic section, and whose projection onto the horizontal plane is the visible form of Ceres' orbit. The intersection of that same plane with the axis of the cone, at a point we called V, is an important singularity. The circular cross-section of the cone at the "height" of V, is cut by the $U_1U_2U_3$

FIGURE 13.2. *Relationship of height h to the orbital parameter. The diagram represents the cross-sectional "cut" of the cone, by the plane defined by the vertical axis and the segment l′ (represented here as the segment between points a and b). Since the apex angle of the cone is 90°, the triangles aVO and bVO are isosceles right triangles. Consequently, h = aV = bV = (1/2) × (length of ab) = half-parameter of orbit.*



plane at two points, which are the endpoints of a diameter l' through V. That diameter projects (without change of length) to the segment which represents the width of the Ceres' orbit, measured perpendicularly to the axis of the orbit at its focus O. That length is what Gauss calls the "orbital parameter." **(Figure 13.1)**

Thus, Gauss's parameter is equal to the cross-section diameter of the cone at V, which, in turn, is proportional to the height of V on the conical axis. The factor of proportionality depends upon the apex angle of the cone; that factor becomes equal to 1, if we choose the apex angle of the cone to be 90° (so that the surface of the cone makes an angle of 45° with the horizontal plane at O). Let us choose the apex angle so. In that case, *the height h of V above the axis is equal to half the orbital parameter.* **(Figure 13.2)**

Now recall, that according to Gauss's recasting of Kepler's constraints, the area swept out by the planet in any time interval, is proportional to the elapsed time, multiplied by the *square root of the half-parameter.* (SEE Chapter 8) Our analysis actually showed, that the constant of proportionality is π, when the elapsed time is measured in years, length in Astronomical Units (A.U.) (Earth-sun distance), and area in square A.U.

From these considerations, we can now express the areas of the orbital sectors of Ceres, in terms of the elapsed times and the height h of V on the cone. For example:

$S_{12} = \sqrt{h} \times \pi \times (t_2 - t_1)$, and

$S_{23} = \sqrt{h} \times \pi \times (t_3 - t_2)$.

At the close of the last chapter, we remarked that the value of h must somehow be expressible in terms of the triangular areas T_{12}, T_{23}, T_{13}; and, that the resulting link with S_{12} and S_{23}, via h, would finally provide us with a much more "fine-tuned" approximation to the crucial ratios $T_{12}:T_{13}$ and $T_{23}:T_{13}$ than was possible on the basis of our initial, crude approach. **(Figure 13.3)**

Not to lose your conceptual bearings at this point, before we launch into a crucial battle, remember the following: The significance of the orbital parameter, now represented by h, lies in the fact that it embodies the relationship between

(i) the Keplerian orbit *as a whole*;

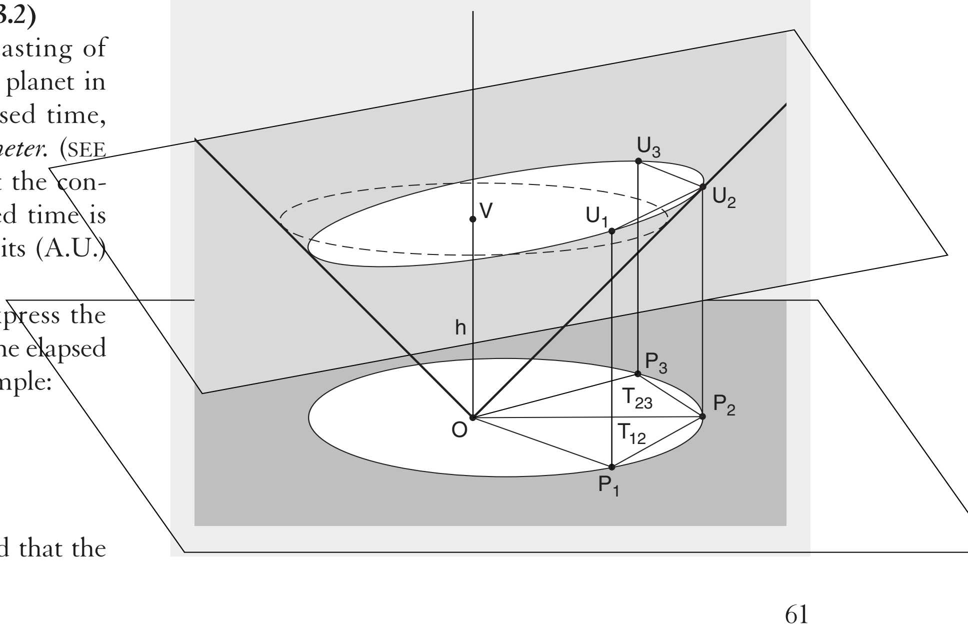
(ii) the array of "geometrical intervals" between any three positions P_1, P_2, P_3 on the orbit; and

(iii) the curvature of each arbitrarily small "moment of action" in the planet's motion, as expressed in the corresponding orbital sector, and above all in the relationship between the "curved" sectoral area and corresponding triangular area.

Gauss focussed his attention on the sector and triangle formed between the first and the third positions, S_{13} and T_{13}. Our experimental calculations, reviewed in the last chapter, indicated that the discrepancy between these two, is the main source of error in our method for calculating the Earth-Ceres distance. Hence, Gauss looked for a way to accurately estimate that area.

Gauss noted that *most* of the excess of S_{13} over T_{13}, i.e., the lune-shaped area between the orbital arc from P_1 to P_3 and the segment P_1P_3, is constituted by the triangular

FIGURE 13.3. *Our conical projection, which contains both the triangular areas and the elliptical sectors as well as the orbital parameter h, will help us to devise a "fine-tuned" approximation to the crucial coefficients required to determine the orbit of Ceres (cf. Figure 13.1).*



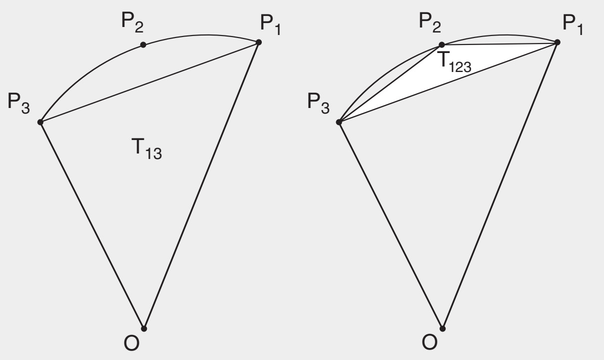


FIGURE 13.4. *Most of the excess of S_{13} over T_{13}, which is the lune-shaped area, is constituted by triangle T_{123}.*

area $P_1P_2P_3$. Denote this triangle—the triangle formed between all three positions of the planet—by "T_{123}." Gauss also observed, that T_{123} is the excess of T_{12} and T_{23} combined, minus T_{13}. **(Figure 13.4)**

How will our exploration of conical geometry help us to get a grip on that little "differential" T_{123}? We voiced the expectation, earlier, that "the height h of V on the cone must somehow be expressible in terms of the triangular areas T_{12}, T_{23}, T_{13}." The time has come, to make good on our promise.

An Elementary Proposition of Descriptive Geometry

Those brought up in the geometrical culture of Fermat, Desargues, Monge, Carnot, and Poncelet would experience no difficulty whatever at this point. But, most of us today, emerged from our education as geometrical illiterates.* With a bit of courage, however, this condition can be remedied.

Recall how we used the triangular areas T_{12}, T_{13}, and T_{23} to measure the relationship between the Ceres position P_2 and P_1, P_3, as a combination of displacements along the axes OP_1 and OP_3. Evidently, we touched upon a principle of geometry relevant to a much broader domain.

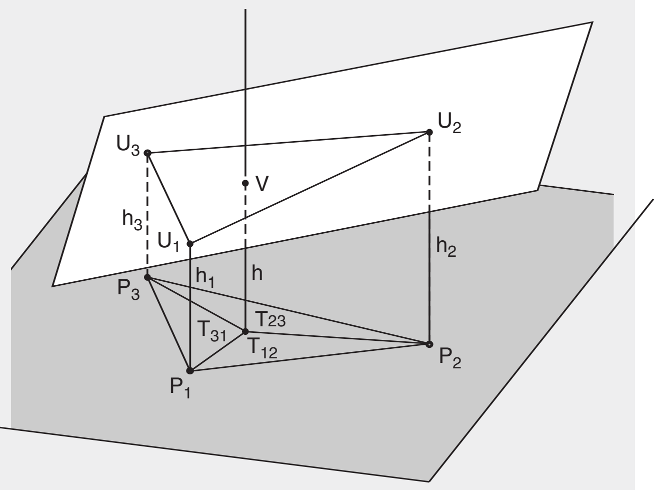
The nature of the relationship we are looking for now, becomes most clearly apparent, if we put Piazzi's observations aside for the moment, and examine, instead, the hypothetical case, where the P_1, P_2, P_3 are widely separated—say, at roughly equal angles (i.e., roughly 120° apart) around O. **(Figure 13.5)** In this case, we have a triangle $P_1P_2P_3$ in the horizontal plane, which contains the point O and is divided up by the radial lines OP_1, OP_2, OP_3 into the smaller triangles T_{12}, T_{23}, and T_{31}. Above the triangle $P_1P_2P_3$, and projecting exactly onto it, we have the triangle $U_1U_2U_3$. This latter triangle "sits on stilts," as it were, over the former. The "stilts" are the vertical line segments P_1U_1, P_2U_2, and P_3U_3, whose heights are h_1, h_2, and h_3. Point V is the place where the axis of the cone passes through triangle $U_1U_2U_3$. How does the height of V above the horizontal plane, depend on the heights h_1, h_2, and h_3?

This is an easy problem for anyone cultured in synthetic geometry, rather than the stutifying, Cartesian form of textbook "analytical geometry" commonly taught in schools and universities. The approach called for here, is exactly the opposite of "Cartesian coordinates." Don't treat the array of positions, and the organization of space in general, as a dead, static entity. Think, instead, in *physical terms;* think in terms of change, displacement, work. For example: What would happen to the height of V, if we were to *change* the height of one of the points U_1, U_2, U_3?

Suppose, for example, we keep U_2 and U_3 fixed, while raising the height of U_1 by an arbitrary amount "d," raising it in the vertical direction to a new position U_1'. **(Figure 13.6)** The new triangle $U_1'U_2U_3$ intersects the axis of the cone at a point V', higher than V. Our immediate task is to characterize the functional relationship between the parallel vertical segments VV' and U_1U_1'.

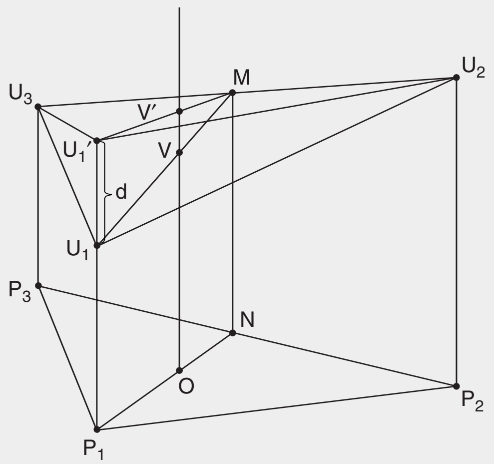
The two triangles $U_1U_2U_3$ and $U_1'U_2U_3$ share the common side U_2U_3, forming a wedge-like figure. Cut that figure by a vertical plane passing through the segments VV' and U_1U_1'. The intersection includes the segment U_1U_1', and the lines through U_1 and V, and

FIGURE 13.5. *How does the height h of V depend upon heights h_1,h_2,h_3, which are in turn a function of the position of the plane through U_1,U_2,U_3?*



* Including the present author, incidentally.

FIGURE 13.6. *Tilt the plane of the U's up from U_1 to U_1', to generate V'. What is the functional relationship between*



through U_1' and V', respectively, which meet each other at some point M on the segment U_2U_3. Two triangles are formed in the vertical plane from those vertices: U_1MU_1', and a sub-triangle VMV'. Given that VV' is parallel to U_1U_1', those two triangles will be similar to each other.

The ratio of similarity of these triangles, determines the relationship of immediate interest to us, namely, that between the change in height of V (i.e., the length of VV') and the change in the height of U_1 (i.e., the length of U_1U_1').

To determine the ratio of similarity of the triangles, we need only establish the proportionality between any pair of corresponding sides. So, look at the ratio $MV:MU_1$, i.e., the ratio by which V divides the segment MU_1. *That ratio is not changed* when we project the segment onto the plane of P_1, P_2, P_3. Under the projection, U_1 projects to P_1, V projects to O, and M projects to some point N on the line P_2P_3.

Our problem is reduced to determining the ratio by which O divides the line segment NP_1—that latter being the projected image of the segment MU_1. Very simple! Look at P_2P_3 as the base of the triangle $P_1P_2P_3$. **(Figure 13.7)** Draw the line parallel to P_2P_3 through P_1. The distance separating that line and P_2P_3 is called the *altitude* of the triangle $P_1P_2P_3$, whose product with the length of the base, P_2P_3, is equal to twice the area of the triangle T_{123}. Next, draw the parallel to P_2P_3 through the point O. The gap between that line and P_2P_3, is the altitude of the triangle OP_2P_3, whose product with the length of the base P_2P_3 is equal to twice the area of triangle T_{23}.

Thus, the ratio of the distances between the first and second, and the first and third—that is, of the distances between P_2P_3 and each of the two lines parallel to it—is equivalent to the ratio of T_{23} to T_{123}. But, the ratio of distances between those parallels is "reproduced" in the proportion of the segments, formed on any line which cuts across all three. Taking in particular the line through O and P_1 (which intersects P_2P_3 at N) we conclude that

$$NO:NP_1::T_{23}:T_{123}.$$

By "inverse projection," the same holds true for the ratio of MV and MU_1, and by similarity, also for the ratio between VV' and U_1U_1'.

Our job is essentially finished. We have found, that when the height of U_1 is changed by any amount "*d*," the height of V changes by an amount whose ratio to *d* is that of T_{23} to T_{123}. In other words, the change in height of V will be $d \times (T_{23}/T_{123})$; or, to put still another way,

$$T_{123} \times \text{change of height of } V$$
$$= T_{23} \times \text{change of height of } U_1.$$

What happens, then, if we start off with all the heights equal to zero, and raise the heights of the vertices, one at a time, to the given heights h_1, h_2, h_3, respectively? Raising U_1 from height zero to h_1, will increase the height of V, from zero to $h_1 \times (T_{23}/T_{123})$. Next (by the same reasoning, applied to U_2 instead of U_1), raising U_2 to the height h_2, will increase the height of V by an additional amount equal to $h_2 \times (T_{31}/T_{123})$.

Finally, raising U_3 to the height h_3, will raise V by an additional amount $h_3 \times (T_{12}/T_{123})$. The final height *h* of V, will therefore be equal to

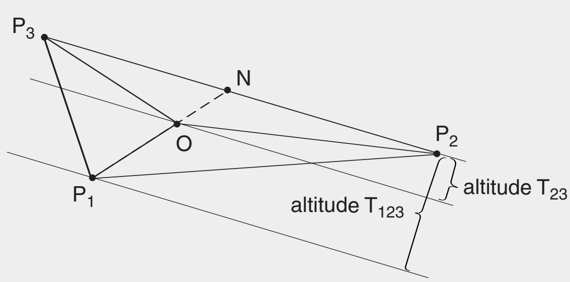
$$[h_1 \times (T_{23}/T_{123})] + [h_2 \times (T_{31}/T_{123})] + [h_3 \times (T_{12}/T_{123})],$$

or, in other words, $h \times T_{123}$ is equal to

$$(h_1 \times T_{23}) + (h_2 \times T_{31}) + (h_3 \times T_{12}).$$

All of this referred to the case where points P_1, P_2, P_3 are separated by such large angles, that O lies within triangle $P_1P_2P_3$ ($=T_{123}$). In the actual case before us, the

FIGURE 13.7. *The division of segment NP_1 by point O is proportional to the ratio of the areas of triangles T_{23} and T_{123}.*



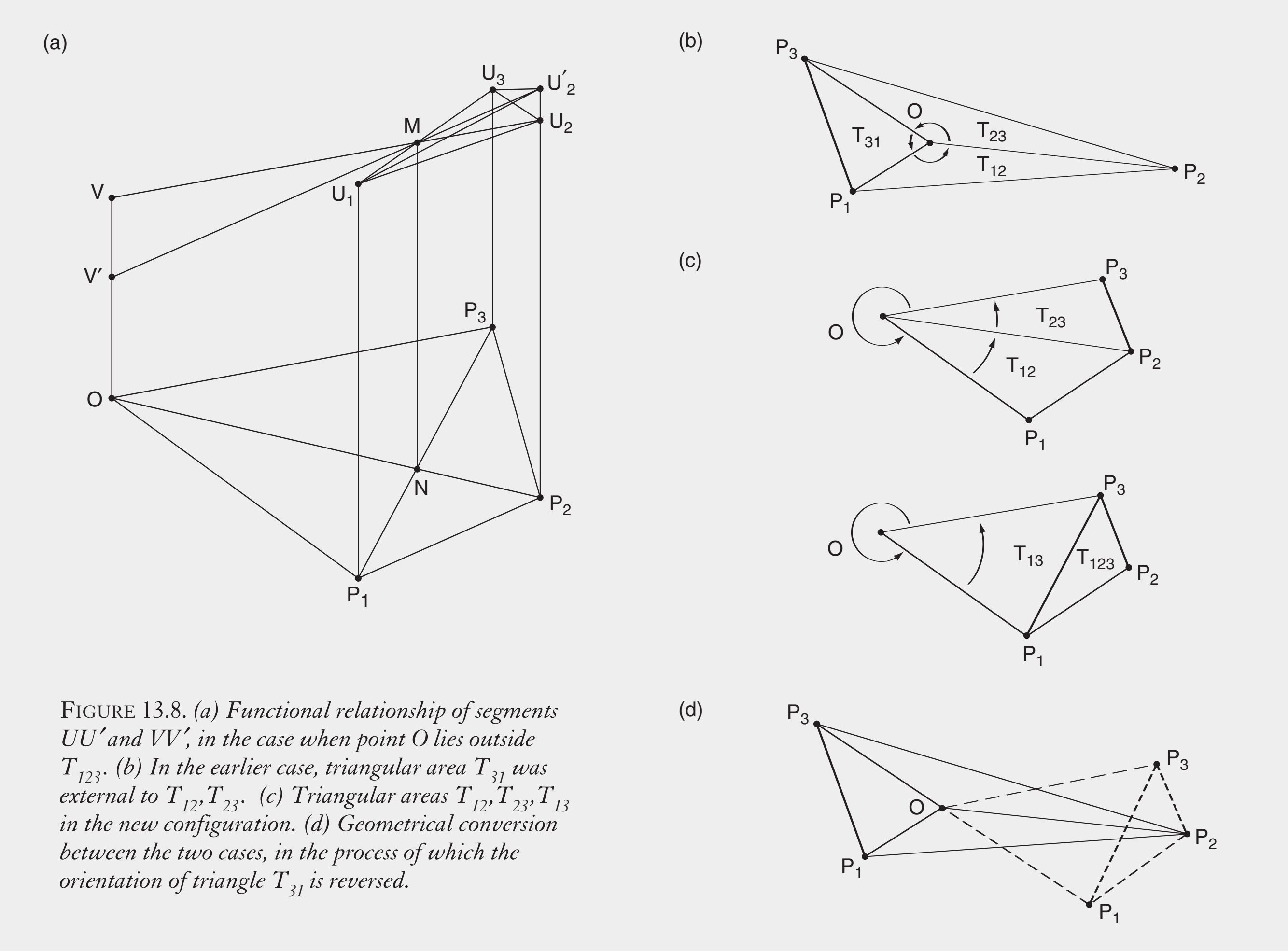


FIGURE 13.8. *(a) Functional relationship of segments UU′ and VV′, in the case when point O lies outside T_{123}. (b) In the earlier case, triangular area T_{31} was external to T_{12}, T_{23}. (c) Triangular areas T_{12}, T_{23}, T_{13} in the new configuration. (d) Geometrical conversion between the two cases, in the process of which the orientation of triangle T_{31} is reversed.*

triangle T_{123} is very small, and O lies outside it. **(Figure 13.8a)** Nevertheless, it is not difficult to see—and the reader should carry this out as an exercise—that nothing essential is changed in the fabric of relationships, except for one point of elementary *analysis situs*: We were careful to observe a consistent ordering in the vertices and the triangles, corresponding to rotation around O in the direction of motion of the planet. In keeping with this, "T_{31}" referred to the triangle whose angle at O is the angle swept out in a *continuing rotation,* from P_3 back to P_1. **(Figure 13.8b)** In our present case, where O lies outside triangle $P_1P_2P_3$ and the displacements from P_1 to P_2 and P_2 to P_3 are very small, the angle of that rotation is nearly 360°. **(Figure 13.8c)** In mere form, the resulting triangle OP_3P_1 is the same as OP_1P_3, and the areas T_{31} and T_{13} both refer to the same form; however, their *orientations* are different. **(Figure 13.8d)**

As Gauss emphasized in his discussions of the *analysis situs* of elementary geometry, our accounting for areas must take into account the differences in orientation, so the proper value to be ascribed to T_{31} must be the same magnitude as T_{13}, but with the *opposite sign*. In other words, $T_{31} = -T_{13}$. Examining the constructions defining the functional dependence of h on h_1, h_2, and h_3, for the case where the angle from P_3 to P_1 is more than 180°, we find that this *change of sign* is indeed necessary, to give the correct value for the contribution of the height of U to the height of V, namely, $h_2 \times -(T_{13}/T_{123})$. In fact, when we raise U_2, the height of V is *reduced*. For that reason the relationship of the areas and heights, in the case of the three positions of Ceres, takes the form

$$h \times T_{123} = (h_1 \times T_{23}) - (h_2 \times T_{13}) + (h_3 \times T_{12}),$$

or,

$$T_{123} = \frac{(h_1 \times T_{23}) - (h_2 \times T_{13}) + (h_3 \times T_{12})}{h}.$$

This is a starting point for evaluating the "triangular differential" T_{123}, which measures the effect of the space-time curvature in the small.

—JT

Chapter 14

On to the Summit

If our several-chapters' journey of rediscovery has often seemed like climbing a steep mountain, then this chapter will take us to the summit. From there, the rest of Gauss's solution will lie below us in a valley, easily surveyed from the work we have already done.

The crux of Gauss's approach, throughout, lies in his focussing on the relationship between what we have called the "triangular differential" formed between any three positions of a planet in a Keplerian orbit, and the physical characteristics of the orbit as a whole. (**Figure 14.1**)

That relationship is implicit in the Gauss-Kepler constraints, and particularly in the "area law," according to which the areas swept out by the planet's motion between any two positions, are proportional to the corresponding elapsed times.

Recall our first pathway of attack on the Ceres problem. It was based on the observation, that the area of the orbital sector between any two of the three given positions, is only slightly larger than the triangular area, formed between the same two positions (and the center of the sun). On the other hand, we found that the values of those same triangular areas—or, rather, the ratios between them—determined the spatial relationship between the three Ceres positions, as expressed in terms of the "parallelogram law" of displacements. (**Figure 14.2**) We discovered a method for determining the positions of Ceres (or at least one of them), given the values of the triangular ratios, by applying those values to the known positions of the Earth, adducing a discrepancy resulting from the difference in curvature

Figure 14.1. *Gauss has focussed on the relationship between the orbital sectors, the triangular areas, the orbital parameter (which is equal to the height of V), and the characteristics of the orbit as a whole.*

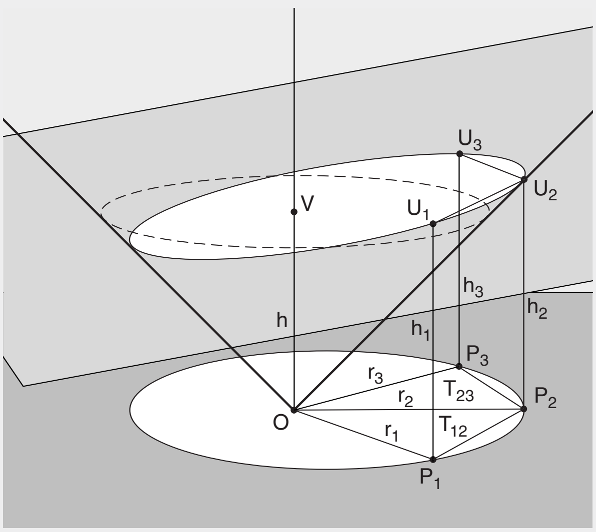
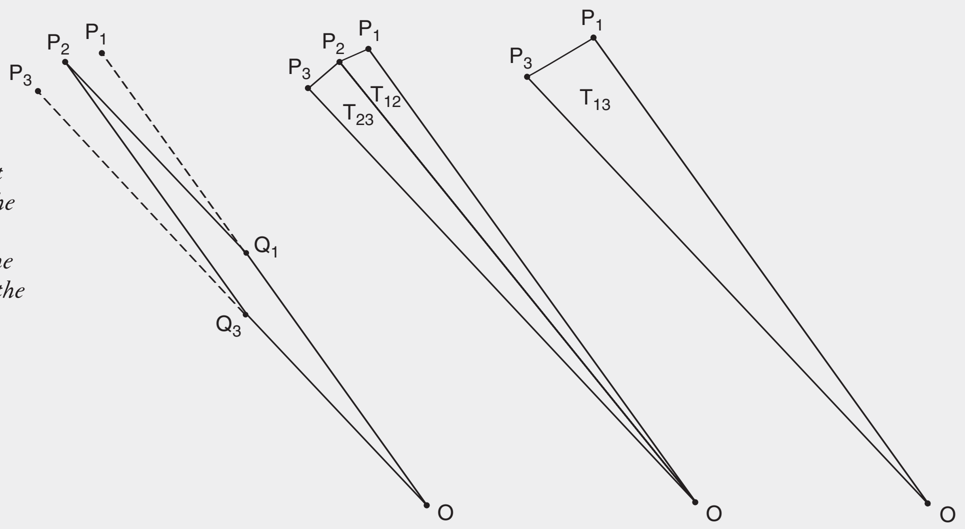


Figure 14.2. *In Chapter 10, we found that the intermediate position P_2 of Ceres can be related to the other two positions P_1,P_3 in the following way: P_2 is the resultant of a combination (according to the "parallelogram law") of two displacements OQ_1, OQ_2 along the axes OP_1 and OP_2, respectively, the positions of Q_1 and Q_3 being determined by the relationships*

$$\frac{OQ_1}{OP_1} = \frac{T_{23}}{T_{13}}, \text{ and}$$

$$\frac{OQ_3}{OP_3} = \frac{T_{12}}{T_{13}}.$$



between the Earth and Ceres orbits, and then reconstructing Ceres' position from that discrepancy by a kind of "inverse projection." (**Figure 14.3**)

The obvious difficulty with our method, lay in the circumstance, that we had no *a priori* knowledge of the exact ratios of triangular areas, required to carry out the construction. At that point, we could only say that the ratios must be "fairly close" to the ratios of the corresponding orbital sectors, whose values we know to be equal to the ratios of the elapsed times according to the "area law." Our first inclination was to try to ignore the difference between the triangular and sectoral areas, and to apply the known ratios of elapsed times to obtain an approximate position for the planet. Unfortunately, a closer analysis of the effect of any given error on the outcome of the construction, showed that the slight discrepancy between triangles and sectors can produce an unacceptable final error of 20 percent, or even more (depending on the actual dimensions of Ceres' orbit). This left us with no alternative, but to look for a new principle, allowing us to estimate the magnitude of the difference between the curvilinear sectors and their triangular counterparts.

We noted, as Gauss did, that the largest discrepancy occurs in the case between the first and third positions, P_1 and P_3, which are the farthest apart. Comparing sector S_{13} with triangle T_{13}, the difference between the two is the lune-shaped area between the orbital arc and the chord connecting P_1 and P_3. (**Figure 14.4**) *Most* of that area belongs to the triangle formed between P_1, P_3 and the intermediate position P_2, a triangle we designated T_{123}. Gauss realized, that the key to the whole Ceres problem, is to get a grip on the magnitude of that "triangular differential," which expresses the effect of the curvature of Ceres' orbit over the interval spanned by the three positions. This "local" curvature reflects, in turn, the characteristics of the entire orbit.

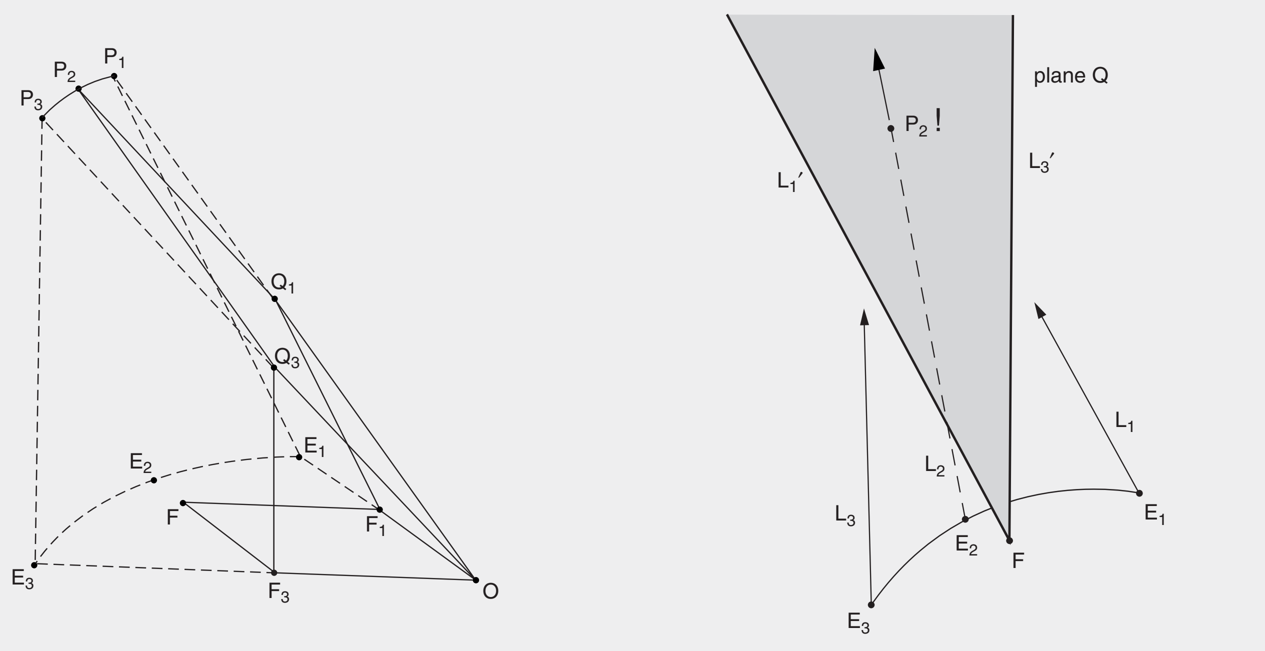
Given the multiple, interconnected variabilities embodied in the notion of an arbitrary conic-section orbit, we cannot expect a simple, linear pathway to the required estimate. We must be prepared to carry out a somewhat extended examination of the array of geometrical factors which combine to determine the magnitude of T_{123}. Our strategy will be to try to map the essential feature of that interconnectedness, in terms of a relationship of *angles* on a single circle.

In doing so, we are free to make use of simple special cases and numerical examples, as "navigational aids" to guide our search for a general solution.

Accordingly, look first at the simplified, hypothetical case of a circular orbit. In that case, the planet's motion is uniform; the angles swept out by the radial lines to the sun are proportional to the corresponding elapsed times, divided by the total period T of the orbit. According to Kepler's laws, $T^2 = r^3$, so T is equal to the three-halves power of the circle's radius ($r^{3/2}$).

At first glance the area T_{123} is a somewhat complicated

FIGURE 14.3. *In Chapter 11, we located Ceres' position P_2 on plane Q, using a construction pivoted on the discrepancy between the curvatures of the orbits of Earth ($E_1E_2E_3$) and Ceres ($P_1P_2P_3$) .*



function of the angles at the sun. But there is an underlying harmonic relationship expressed in a beautiful theorem of Classical Greek geometry, which says that *the area of a triangle inscribed in a circle, is equal to the product of the sides of the triangle, divided by four times the circle's radius.* (**Figure 14.5**) Applying this to our case, the area T_{123} is equal to the product of the *chords* P_1P_2, P_2P_3, and P_1P_3, divided by four times the orbital radius. **(Figure 14.6)**

Now, to a first approximation, when the planet's positions P_1, P_2, P_3 are not too far apart, the length of each such chord is very nearly equal to the corresponding arc on the circle. The latter, in turn, is equal in length to the total circumference of the circle, times the ratio of the elapsed time for the arc to the full period of the circular orbit [i.e., $2\pi r \times$ (elapsed time$/r^{3/2}$)]. Applying this, we can estimate T_{123} by routine calculation as follows:

$$T_{123} \simeq \frac{1}{4r}(P_1P_2 \times P_2P_3 \times P_1P_3)$$

$$= \frac{1}{4r} \times \left[2\pi r \times \left(\frac{t_2 - t_1}{r^{3/2}}\right)\right]$$

$$\times \left[2\pi r \times \left(\frac{t_3 - t_2}{r^{3/2}}\right)\right] \times \left[2\pi r \times \left(\frac{t_3 - t_1}{r^{3/2}}\right)\right]$$

$$= 2\pi^3 \times \frac{(t_2 - t_1) \times (t_3 - t_2) \times (t_3 - t_1)}{r^{5/2}}$$

(the $\simeq$ symbol means "approximately equal to").

What is of interest here, is not the details of the calculation, but only the general form of the result, which is to approximate T_{123} by a simple function of the elapsed times and one additional parameter (the radius). Can we develop a similar estimate for T_{123}, without making any assumption about the specific shape of the Keplerian orbit? It is a matter of evoking the higher, relatively constant curvature, which governs the variable curvatures of non-circular orbits. Gauss had reason to be confident, that, on the basis of his method of hypergeometrical and modular functions, and guided by numerical experiments on known orbits, he could develop the required estimate—one in which the role of the radius in a circular orbit, would be played by some combination of the sun-Ceres distances for P_1, P_2, P_3.

FIGURE 14.4. *The lune-shaped difference between S_{13} and T_{13} is largely constituted by triangle T_{123}.*

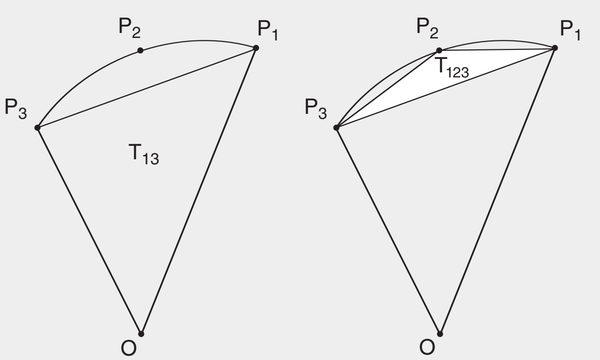


FIGURE 14.5. *Classical theorem of Greek geometry: The area of any triangle ABC inscribed in a circle, is equal to (AB × BC × CA)/4r, where AB,BC,CA are the chords forming the sides of the triangle, and r is the radius.*

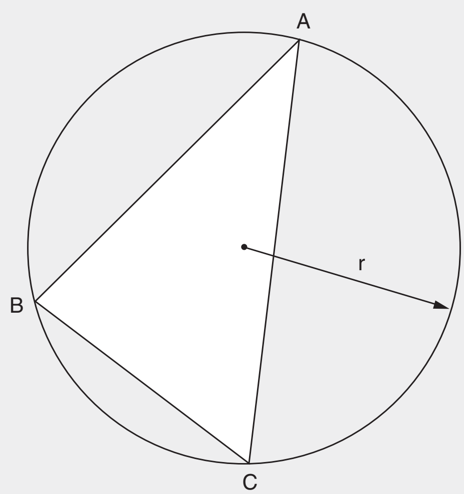
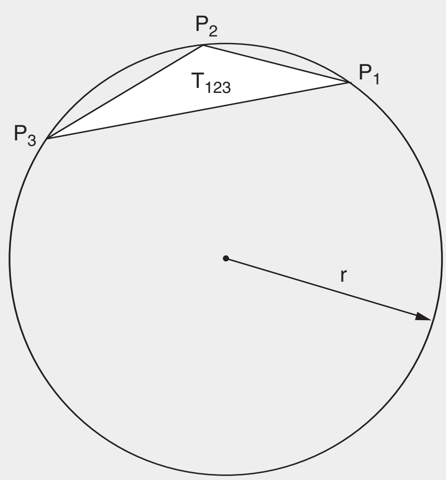


FIGURE 14.6. *Apply the Classical theorem to triangle T_{123}: area $T_{123} = (P_1P_2 \times P_2P_3 \times P_1P_3)/4r$.*



Nevertheless, a worrying thought occurs to us at this point: What use is a whole elaborate investigation concerning T_{123}, if the result ends up depending on an unknown, whose determination is the problem we set out to solve in the first place? The sun-Ceres distance, is no less an unknown than the Earth-Ceres distance; in fact, each can be determined from the other, by "solving" the triangle between the Earth, Ceres, and the sun, whose angle at the "Earth" vertex is known from Piazzi's measurements. **(Figure 14.7)** But, if neither of them are known, what use is the triangular relationship? And if, as it looks now, the necessary correction to our initial, crude approach to calculating the Earth-Ceres distance, turns out to depend upon a foreknowledge of that distance, then our whole strategy seems built on sand.

But, don't throw in the towel! Perhaps, by *combining* the various relationships and estimates, and using one to correct the other in turn, we can devise a way to rapidly "close in" on the precise values, by a "self-correcting" process of successive approximations. This, indeed, is exactly what Gauss did, in a most ingenious manner.

Before getting to that, let's dispense with the immediate task at hand: to develop an estimate for the "differential" T_{123}, independently of any *a priori* hypothesis concerning the shape of the orbit.

As already mentioned, the task in front of us involves a multitude of interconnected variabilities, which we must keep track of in some way. Although these variabilities are in reality nothing but facets of a single, organic unity, a certain amount of mathematical "bookkeeping" appears unavoidable in the following analysis, on account of the relative linearity of the medium of communication we are forced to use. Contrary to widespread prejudices, there is nothing sophisticated at all in the bookkeeping, nor does it have any content whatsoever, apart from keeping track of an array of geometrical relationships of the most elementary sort. The sophisticated aspect is implicit, "between the lines," in the Gauss-Kepler hypergeometric ordering which shapes the entire pathway of solution.

The essential elements are already on the table, thanks to last chapter's work on the conical geometry underlying the orbit of Ceres. Our investigation of the relationship between the triangular areas T_{12}, T_{23}, T_{13}, and T_{123}, the heights of points on the cone corresponding to P_1, P_2, P_3, and Gauss's orbital parameter h, yielded a conclusion which we summarized in the formula

$$T_{123} = \frac{(h_1 \times T_{23}) - (h_2 \times T_{13}) + (h_3 \times T_{12})}{h} \qquad \textbf{(1)}$$

(shown in Figure 14.1).

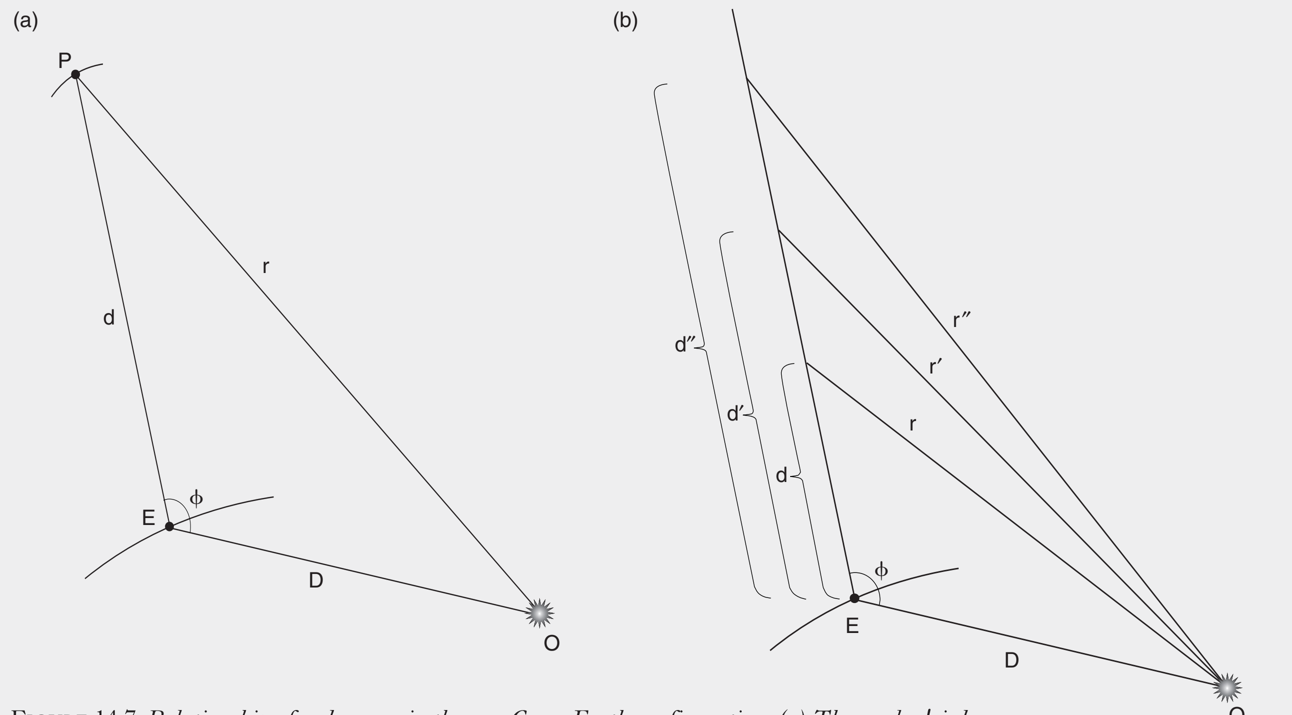


FIGURE 14.7. *Relationship of unknowns in the sun-Ceres-Earth configuration. (a) The angle ϕ is known from Piazzi's observations, and the Earth-sun distance D is also known. This defines a functional relationship between the unknown Earth-Ceres distance d and the unknown sun-Ceres distance r, as shown in (b). (b) To each hypothetical value of r, there corresponds a unique value of d, consistent wth the known values of ϕ and D.*

Two immediate observations on this account: First, recall our choice of 90º for the apex angle of the cone. Under that condition, the heights h_1, h_2, h_3 will be the same as the radial distances of P_1, P_2, P_3 from the sun. We shall denote the latter r_1, r_2, r_3.

Secondly: According to the Kepler-Gauss constraints, the *square root* of the half-parameter is proportional to the ratio of the sectoral areas swept out to the elapsed times. (SEE Chapter 8) We also determined the constant of proportionality, which amounts to multiplying the elapsed time by a factor of π. The *half-parameter itself* will then be equal to the quotient of the *product* of the areas swept out in any given *pair* of time intervals, divided by π^2 times the product of the corresponding elapsed times. So, for example, we can combine the relationships

$$\sqrt{h} = \frac{S_{12}}{(t_2 - t_1) \times \pi} \quad ,$$

$$\sqrt{h} = \frac{S_{23}}{(t_3 - t_2) \times \pi}$$

(by multiplying), to get

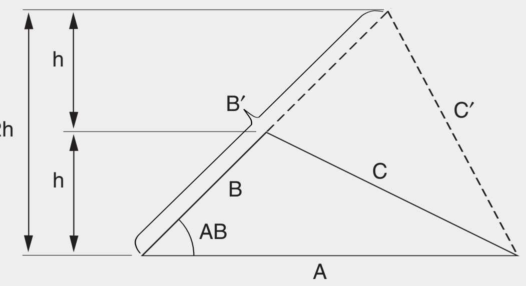
$$h = \frac{S_{12} \times S_{23}}{(t_2 - t_1) \times (t_3 - t_2) \times \pi^2} \,. \tag{2}$$

This, according to **Equation (1)** above, is the magnitude by which we must divide $(r_1 \times T_{23}) - (r_2 \times T_{13}) + (r_3 \times T_{12})$, to obtain the value of the "triangular differential" T_{123}.

With that established, take a careful look at the combination of the radii r_1, r_2, r_3 and the triangular areas T_{23}, T_{13}, and T_{12}, entering into the value of T_{123}. Those triangular areas are determined by the array of vertex angles at the sun, i.e., the angles formed by the radial sides OP_1, OP_2, OP_3, together with the values of r_1, r_2, r_3 which measure the lengths of the sides. These are all interconnected, by virtue of the fact that P_1, P_2, P_3 lie on one and the same conic section. Let us try to "crystallize out" the kernel of the relationship, by focussing on the angles and attempting to "project" the entire array in terms of relationships within a single *circle*.

There is a simple relationship between area and sides of a triangle, which can help us here. If we multiply one side of a triangle by any factor, while keeping an adjacent side and the angle between them unchanged, then the area of the triangle will be multiplied by the same factor. So, for example, if we double the length of the side *B* in a triangle with sides *A, B, C,* while keeping the length of *A* and the angle *AB* constant, then the resulting triangle of sides *A, 2B,* and some length *C′*, will have an area equal to twice that of the original triangle. (**Figure 14.8**) The reason is clear: Taking *A* as the base, doubling *B* increases the altitude of the original triangle by the same factor, while the base remains the same. Hence the area—which is equivalent to half the base times the altitude—will also be doubled. Similarly for multiplying or dividing by any other proportion.

FIGURE 14.8. *Doubling a side of a triangle, while keeping the adjacent side and angle constant, doubles the area of the triangle.*



Applying this to T_{23}, for example, notice that its longer sides are radial segments from the sun, having lengths r_2 and r_3. (**Figure 14.9a**) If we divide the first side by r_2 and the second side by r_3, then we get a triangular area T_{23}', whose corresponding sides are now of unit length, and whose area is T_{23} divided by the product of r_2 and r_3. Turning that around, the area T_{23} is equal to $r_2 \times r_3 \times T_{23}'$. The product $r_1 \times T_{23}$, which enters into our calculation of the "triangular differential," is therefore equal to $r_1 \times r_2 \times r_3 \times T_{23}'$.

The same approach, applied to T_{13}, yields the result that

$$T_{13} = r_1 \times r_3 \times T_{13}' \,,$$

and

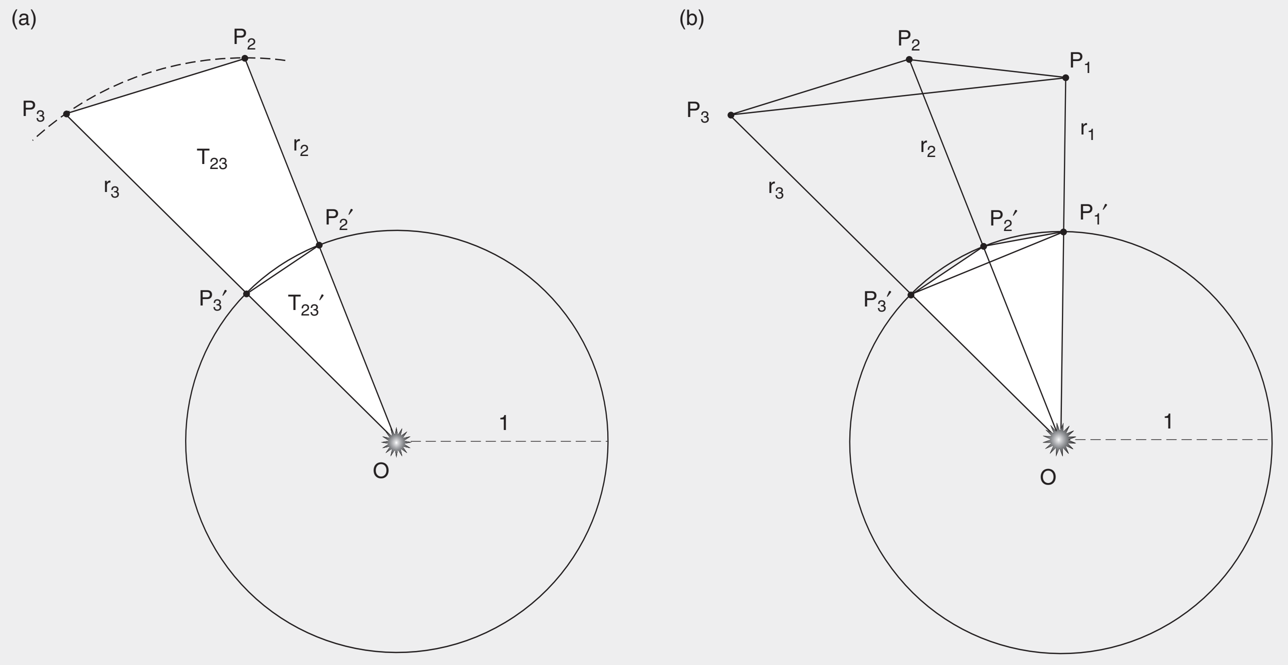
$$r_2 \times T_{13} = r_1 \times r_2 \times r_3 \times T_{13}' \,.$$

Similarly for T_{12}. In each case, the product of all three radii is a *common factor.* Taking that common factor into account, we can now "translate" **Equation (1)** in terms of the smaller triangles, into

$$T_{123} = \frac{(r_1 \times r_2 \times r_3) \times (T_{23}' - T_{13}' + T_{12}')}{h} \,. \tag{3}$$

Note that the new triangles, entering into this "distilled" relationship, have the *same apex angles* at the sun, as the original triangles, but the lengths of the radial sides have all been reduced to 1. **(Figure 14.9b)**

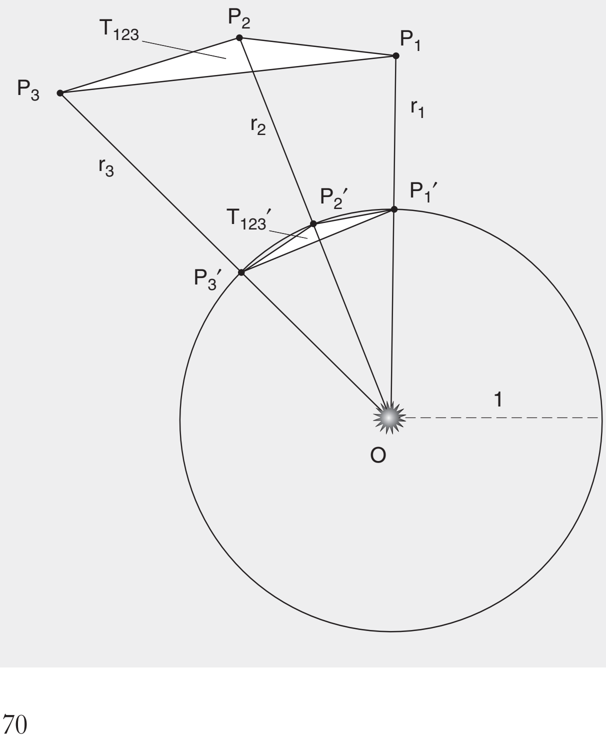
FIGURE 14.9. *"Reduction" of relationships on non-circular orbit to relationships in a circle. (a) The area of triangle* $T_{23}{}'$*, obtained by projecting* P_2 *and* P_3 *onto the circle of unit radius, is equal to* $T_{23}/(r_2 \times r_3)$*. (b) Similarly for triangles* $T_{12}{}'$ *and* $T_{13}{}'$*. The original apex angles at the sun are preserved, but the lengths are all reduced to 1.*



To put it in another way: We have "projected" the Ceres orbit onto the unit circle in Figure 14.9, by central projection relative to O; the triangles $T_{23}{}'$, $T_{13}{}'$, $T_{12}{}'$ are formed in the same way as the old ones, but using instead the points $P_1{}'$, $P_2{}'$, $P_3{}'$ on the unit circle, which are the images of Ceres' positions P_1, P_2, P_3 under that projection. The magnitude expressed as $T_{23}{}' - T_{13}{}' + T'_{12}$, is just the triangle between $P_1{}'$, $P_2{}'$, $P_3{}'$ on the unit circle. Using $T_{123}{}'$ to denote that new "triangular differential" inscribed in the unit circle, our latest result is

$$T_{123} = \frac{(r_1 \times r_2 \times r_3) \times T_{123}{}'}{h}. \qquad \textbf{(4)}$$

FIGURE 14.10. *Triangular area* $T_{123}{}'$*, inscribed in the unit circle, depends only on the angles subtended at the sun (O).*



Keep in mind our earlier conclusion [**Equation (2)**], that h is the product of the sectors S_{12} and S_{23}, divided by π^2 and the product of the elapsed times.

What we have accomplished by this analysis is, in effect, to reduce the geometry of an arbitrary conic-section orbit, to that of a simple circular orbit. Indeed, the vertices of the triangular area $T_{123}{}'$, the positions $P_1{}'$, $P_2{}'$, $P_3{}'$, all lie on the unit circle, and the area $T_{123}{}'$ depends only on the *angles* subtended by Ceres' positions at the sun. **(Figure 14.10)**

Now, we can apply the same theorem of Classical Greek geometry, as we earlier evoked for the case of a circular orbit. The area of the triangle is equal to the product of the sides, divided by four times the radius of the circle upon which the vertices lie (in this case, the unit circle). In this case the result is

$$T_{123}' = \frac{(\text{length } P_1'P_2' \times \text{length } P_2'P_3' \times \text{length } P_3'P_1')}{4} . \quad \textbf{(5)}$$

So far, we have employed rigorous geometrical relationships throughout. To the extent the orbital motion of Ceres is governed by the Kepler-Gauss constraints, and to the extent the theorems of Classical Greek geometry are valid for elementary spatial relationships on the scale of our solar system, our calculation of T_{123}' and T_{123} is precisely correct.

At this point, Gauss evokes some apparently rather crude estimates for the factors which go into the product for T_{123}'. In fact, they are the same sort of crude approximations, which we attempted in our original attempt to calculate the Earth-Ceres distance. If that sort of approximation introduced an unacceptable degree of error *then,* how dare we to do the same thing, *now?*

Remember, we had determined that the "differential" T_{123}, whose magnitude we now wish to estimate, accounts for nearly all of the percentual error, which our earlier approach would have introduced into our calculation of the Earth-Ceres distance, by ignoring the discrepancy between the orbital sectors and the triangular areas. Gauss remarked, in fact, that the discrepancies corresponding to pairs of *adjacent* positions, namely between S_{12} and T_{12} and between S_{23} and T_{23}, are practically an order of magnitude smaller than the discrepancy between S_{13} and T_{13}, i.e., the one corresponding to the extreme pair of positions, which span the relatively largest arc on the orbit. (Figures 12.2 and 14.4) On the other hand, the difference between S_{13} and T_{13}, consists of T_{123} together with the small differences $S_{12}–T_{12}$ and $S_{23}–T_{23}$. As a result, T_{123} supplies the *approximate size of the "error"* in our earlier approach, up to quantities an order of magnitude smaller.

An "error" introduced in an approximate value for T_{123}, thus has the significance of a "differential of a differential." In numerical terms, it will be at least one order of magnitude smaller—and the final result of our calculation of Ceres at least an order of magnitude more precise—than the error in our original approach, which ignored the "differential" altogether.

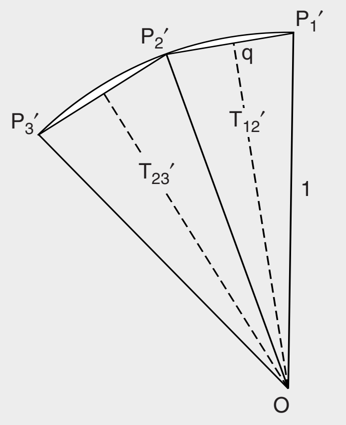
Also remember the following: As a geometrical magnitude, T_{123} measures the effect of curvature of the planetary orbit over the interval from P_1 to P_3. The *relative* crudeness of the approximations we shall introduce now, concern the order of magnitude of the *change in local curvature* over that interval. But once these "second-order" approximations have served their purpose, permitting us to obtain a *tolerable first approximation* for the Earth-Ceres distance, we shall immediately turn around, and use the *coherence* of a first-approximation Keplerian orbit, to eliminate nearly the entire error introduced thereby.

Finishing Up the Job

Turn now to the final estimation of the "differential" T_{123}. Our immediate goal is to eliminate all but the *most essential factors* entering into the function for T_{123}, developed above, and relate everything as far as possible to the known, elapsed times.

First of all, remember that P_1', P_2', P_3' lie on the unit circle; the segments $P_2'P_1'$, $P_3'P_2'$, $P_3'P_1'$ are thus chords of arcs on the unit circle, at the same time form the *bases* of the rather thin isosceles triangles, with common apex at O, whose areas we have designated T_{12}', T_{23}', and T_{13}'. **(Figure 14.11)** The altitudes of those triangles are the radial lines connecting O with the midpoints of the respective chords. Now, if the apex angles at O are relatively small, the gap between the chords and the circular arcs will be very small, and the radial lines to the midpoints of the chords will be only very slightly shorter than the radius of the circle (unity). Let us, by way of approximation, take the altitudes of the triangles to be equal to unity. In that case, the areas of the triangles will be half the lengths of their bases, or, conversely,

FIGURE 14.11. *Estimating the areas of triangles T_{12}', T_{23}', T_{13}'. The area of a triangle is equal to (half the base) × (the altitude). Taking $P_1'P_2'$ as the base of triangle T_{12}', the corresponding altitude is the length of the dashed line Oq. When P_1' and P_2' are close together, Oq will be only very slightly smaller than the radius of the circle, which is 1. Hence, the area of T_{12}' will be very nearly (1/2) × ($P_1'P_2'$). Similarly, area $T_{23}' \simeq$ (1/2) × ($P_2'P_3'$), and area $T_{13}' \simeq$ (1/2) × ($P_1'P_3'$).*



$P_2'P_1'$ = (very nearly) $2 \times T_{12}'$,

$P_3'P_2'$ = (very nearly) $2 \times T_{23}'$,

$P_3'P_1'$ = (very nearly) $2 \times T_{13}'$.

Applying these approximations to **Equation (5)**, we find that T_{123}' is approximately equal to

$$\frac{(2 \times T_{12}') \times (2 \times T_{23}') \times (2 \times T_{13}')}{4}, \qquad (6)$$

or twice the product of T_{12}', T_{23}', and T_{13}'.

This is a very elegant result. But, what does it tell us about the relationship of T_{123} to T_{12}, T_{23}, and T_{13} on the original, non-circular orbit? Remember how we obtained the triangular areas entering into the above product. In numerical values, T_{12}', T_{23}', and T_{13}' are equal to the quotients of $T_{12}/(r_1 \times r_2)$, $T_{23}/(r_2 \times r_3)$, $T_{13}/(r_1 \times r_3)$, respectively. Expressed in terms of those original triangles, our approximate value for T_{123}' becomes

$$2 \times \frac{T_{12} \times T_{23} \times T_{13}}{(r_1 \times r_2) \times (r_2 \times r_3) \times (r_1 \times r_3)}. \qquad (7)$$

Note, that each of r_1, r_2, r_3 enters into the long product exactly twice.

Finally, use this approximate value for T_{123}', to compute T_{123}, according to relationship **(4)** above, noting that half of the radii factors cancel out in the process:

$$T_{123} = \frac{(r_1 \times r_2 \times r_3) \times T_{123}'}{h} \qquad \text{[by **Equation (4)**]}$$

= [very nearly, by **Equation (7)**]

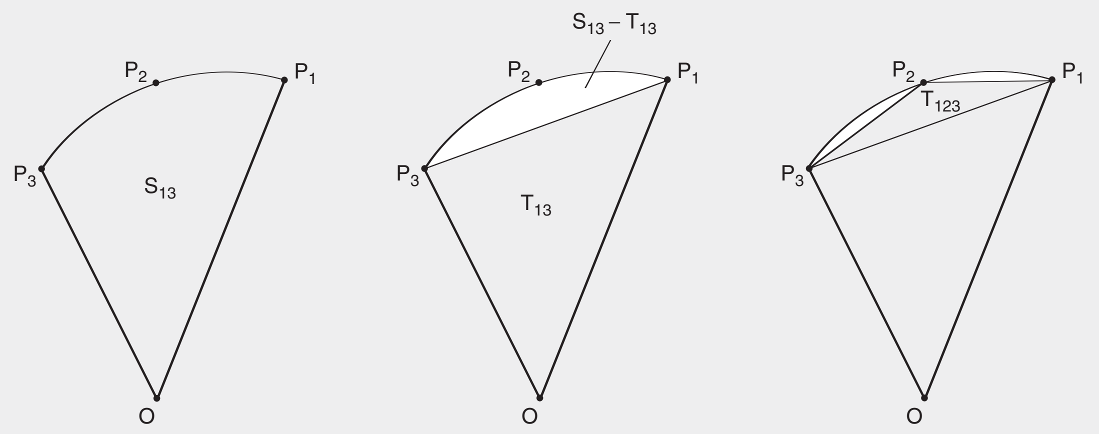
$$2 \times \frac{(T_{12} \times T_{23} \times T_{13}) / (r_1 \times r_2 \times r_3)}{h}. \qquad (8)$$

A bit of bookkeeping is required, as we take into account our calculation of h, as the quotient of the product of S_{12} and S_{23}, divided by π^2 times the product of the corresponding elapsed times. [**Equation (2)**] The result of *dividing* by h, is to *multiply* by π^2 and the elapsed times, and *divide* by the product of the sectors. Assembling all these various factors together, with **Equation (8)**, our approximate value for T_{123} becomes

$$2 \times \frac{\pi^2 \times (t_2 - t_1) \times (t_3 - t_2) \times T_{12} \times T_{23} \times T_{13}}{S_{12} \times S_{23} \times r_1 \times r_2 \times r_3}. \qquad (9)$$

For reasons already discussed above, we can permit ourselves simplifying approximations at this point, as follows. For a relatively short interval of motion, the sun-Ceres distance does not change "too much." Thus, we can approximate the product $r_1 \times r_2 \times r_3$ by the cube of the second distance r_2, i.e., by the product $r_2 \times r_2 \times r_2$, without introducing a large error *in percentual terms.* Next, observe that T_{12} and T_{23} appear in the numerator, and S_{12} and S_{23} in the denominator, of the quotient we are now estimating. If we simply *equate* the corresponding triangular and sectoral areas—whose discrepancies are practically an order of magnitude less than that between S_{13} and T_{13}—we introduce an additional, but tolerable percentual error into the value of T_{123}. Applying these considerations to **Equation (9)**, we obtain, as our final approximation, the value

FIGURE 14.12. *S_{13} is (to a first order of approximation) very nearly equal to $T_{13} + T_{123}$.*



$$T_{123} \simeq 2 \times \frac{\pi^2 \times (t_2 - t_1) \times (t_3 - t_2)}{r_2^{\,3}} \times T_{13} \cdot \qquad \textbf{(10)}$$

Recall the original motive for this investigation, which was to "get a grip" on the relationship between the sectoral area S_{13} and the triangle T_{13}. What we can say now, by way of a crucially useful approximation, is the following. Since T_{123} makes up nearly the whole difference between the triangle T_{13} and the orbital sector S_{13} **(Figure 14.12)**,

S_{13} = (to a first order of approximation) $T_{13} + T_{123}$,

or, stating this in terms of a ratio,

$$\frac{S_{13}}{T_{13}} = \text{(very nearly) } 1 + \frac{T_{123}}{T_{13}} \cdot$$

On the other hand, we just arrived in **Equation (10)** at an approximation for T_{123}, in which T_{13} is a factor. Applying that estimate, we conclude that

$$\frac{S_{13}}{T_{13}} \simeq 1 + \left(2 \times \frac{\pi^2 \times (t_2 - t_1) \times (t_3 - t_2)}{r_2^{\,3}} \right) .$$

The hard work is over. We have arrived at the crucial "correction factor," which Gauss supplied to complete his first-approximation determination of Ceres' position. For some one hundred fifty years, following the publication of Gauss's *Theory of the Motion of the Heavenly Bodies Moving about the Sun in Conic Sections,* astronomers around the world have used it to calculate the orbits of planets and comets. All that remains to be done, we shall accomplish in the next chapter.

—*JT*

Chapter 15

Another Battle Won

My dear friend, you have done me a great favor by your explanations and remarks concerning your method. My little doubts, objections, and worries have now been removed, and I think I have broken through to grasp the spirit of the method. Once again I must repeat, the more I become acquainted with the entire course of your analysis, the more I admire you. What great things we will have from you in the future, if only you take care of your health!

—Letter from Wilhelm Olbers to Gauss,
Oct. 10, 1802

We now have the essential elements, out of which Gauss elaborated his method for determining the orbit of Ceres. Up to this point, the pathway of discovery has been relatively narrow; from now on it widens, and many alternative approaches are possible. Gauss explored many of them himself, in the course of perfecting his method and cutting down on the mass of computations required to actually calculate the elements of the orbit. The final result was Gauss's book, *Theory of the Motion of the Heavenly Bodies Moving about the Sun in Conic Sections,* which he completed in 1808, seven years after his successful forecast for Ceres. As Gauss himself remarked, the exterior form of the method had evolved so much, that it barely resembled the original. Nevertheless, the essential core remained the same.

We have tried to follow Gauss's original pathway as much as possible. That pathway is sketched in an early manuscript entitled, *Summary Overview of the Method Used To Determine the Orbits of the Two New Planets* (the title refers to the asteroids Ceres and Pallas). The *Summary Overview* was published in 1809, but is probably close to, or even identical with, a summary that Gauss prepared for Olbers in the Fall of 1802. The latter document was the subject of several exchanges of letters back and forth between the two astronomers, where Olbers raised various questions and criticisms, and challenged Gauss to explain certain features of the method. Fortunately, that correspondence, which provides valuable insights into Gauss's thinking on the subject, has been published. We shall quote from it in the last chapter, the *stretto*.

Our goal now is to complete Gauss's method for constructing a first approximation to the orbit of Ceres from three observations.

In earlier discussions, we discovered a method for reconstructing the second of the three positions of the planet, P_2, from the values of two crucial "coefficients"—namely, the ratios of triangular areas $T_{12}:T_{13}$ and $T_{23}:T_{13}$—together with the data of the three observations and the known motion of the Earth. The difficulty with our method lay in the circumstance, that the values of required coefficients cannot be adduced from the data in any direct way.

Our initial response was to use, instead of the triangular areas, the corresponding orbital sectors whose ratios $S_{12}:S_{13}$ and $S_{23}:S_{13}$ are known from Kepler's "area law" to be equal to the ratios of the elapsed times, $t_2-t_1:t_3-t_1$ and $t_3-t_2:t_3-t_1$. Unfortunately, the magnitude of error introduced by using such a crude approximation for the coefficients, renders the construction nearly useless. Accordingly, we spent that last three chapters working to develop a method for correcting those values, to at least an additional degree or order of magnitude of precision.

The immediate fruit of that endeavor, was an estimate for the value of the ratio $S_{13}:T_{13}$. As it turned out, S_{13} is larger than T_{13} by a factor approximately equal to

$$1 + \left(2 \times \frac{\pi^2 \times (t_2-t_1) \times (t_3-t_2)}{r_2^{\,3}} \right).$$

Let us call that magnitude, slightly larger than one, "G" (for Gauss's correction). So, $S_{13} \simeq G \times T_{13}$. What follows concerning the ratios $T_{12}:T_{13}$ and $T_{23}:T_{13}$?

We already determined, that the main source of error in replacing $T_{12}:T_{13}$ (for example) by the corresponding ratio of orbital sectors, $S_{12}:S_{13}$, comes from the discrepancy between the *denominators*. The percentage error arising from the discrepancy between the *numerators* is an order of magnitude smaller. We can now correct the discrepancy in the denominators, at least to a large extent. S_{13} being larger than T_{13} by a factor of about G, means that the *quotient* of any magnitude by T_{13}, will be larger, by that same factor, than the corresponding quotient of the same magnitude by S_{13}. In particular,

$$\frac{T_{12}}{T_{13}} \simeq G \times \frac{T_{12}}{S_{13}}.$$

If, at this point, we were to replace T_{12} by S_{12} in the numerator, we would thereby introduce an error, an order of magnitude smaller than that which we have just "corrected" using G. Granting that smaller margin of error, and carrying out the mentioned substitution, we arrive at the estimate

$$\frac{T_{12}}{T_{13}} \simeq G \times \frac{S_{12}}{S_{13}} = G \times \frac{t_2-t_1}{t_3-t_1}.$$

For similar reasons,

$$\frac{T_{23}}{T_{13}} \simeq G \times \frac{t_3-t_2}{t_3-t_1}.$$

Recall, that the ratios of the elapsed times constituted our original choice of coefficients for the construction of Ceres' position P_2. Our new values are nothing but the same ratios of elapsed times, multiplied by Gauss's "correction factor" G. If our reasoning is valid, this simple correction should be enough to yield at least an order-of-magnitude improvement over the original values. By applying the new, corrected coefficients in our geometrical method for reconstructing the Ceres position P_2 from the three observations, we should obtain an order-of-magnitude better approximation to the actual position. *Gauss verified that this is indeed the case.*

The story is not yet over, of course. We still have the successive tasks:

(i) To determine the other two positions of Ceres, P_1 and P_3;

(ii) To calculate at least an approximate orbit for Ceres; and

(iii) To successively correct the effect of various errors and discrepancies, until we obtain an orbit fully consistent with the observations and other boundary conditions, taking possible errors of observation into account.

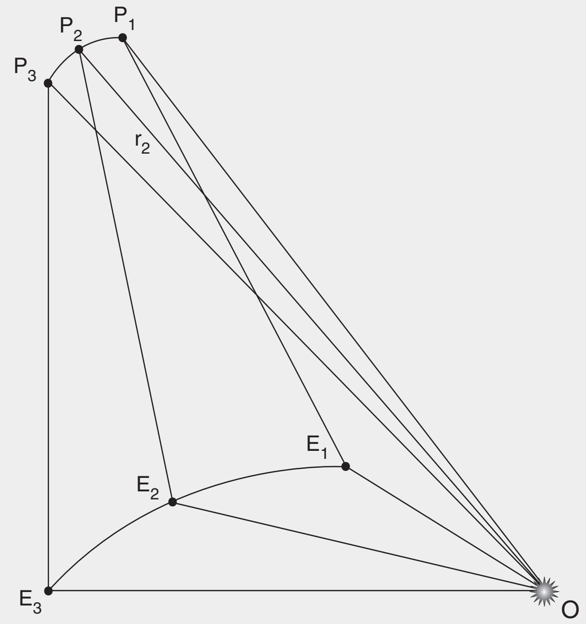
We Face a Paradox

But before proceeding, haven't we forgotten something? Gauss's factor G is not a fixed, *a priori* value, but depends on the *unknown* sun-Ceres distance r_2. We seem to face an unsolvable problem: we need r_2 to compute G, but we need G to compute the Ceres position, from which alone r_2 can be determined. **(Figure 15.1)**

As a matter of fact, *this kind of self-reflexivity is typical for Gauss's hypergeometrical domain.* Far from constituting the awesome barrier it might seem to be at first glance, the self-reflexive character of hypergeometric and related functions, is key to the extraordinary *simplification* which the *analysis situs*-based methods of Gauss, Riemann, and Cantor brought to the entire non-algebraic domain. These functions cannot be constructed "from the bottom up," but have to be handled "from the top down," in terms of the characteristic singularities of a self-reflexive, self-elaborating complex domain. A "secret" of much of Gauss's work, is how that higher domain efficiently determines all phenomena in the lower domains, including in the realm of arithmetic and visual-space geometry.

It was from this superior standpoint, that Gauss devel-

FIGURE 15.1. *A self-reflexive paradox. We need r_2 to compute Gauss's "correction factor" G, but we need G to compute P_2, from which r_2 is derived.*



oped a variety of rapidly convergent numerical series for practical calculations in astronomy, geodesy, and other fields. Using those series, we can compute the values of hypergeometric and related functions to a high degree of precision. However, the numerical properties of the series coefficients, their rates of convergence, their interrelationships, and so on, are all dictated "from above," by the *analysis situs* of the complex domain—the same principle which is otherwise exemplified by Gauss's work on biquadratic residues. Although an explicit formal development of hypergeometric functions is not necessary for Gauss's original solution, the higher domain is always present "between the lines."

In the present case, Gauss's practical solution amounts to "unfolding the circle" of the reflexive relationship between r_2 and G, into a self-similar process of successive approximations to the required orbit, analogous to a Fibonacci series.

The first step, is to select a suitable initial term, as a first approximation. For the case of Ceres we might conjecture, as von Zach, Olbers, and others did at the time, that the orbit lies in a region approximately midway between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter. That means taking an r_2 close to 2.8 A.U. The corresponding value of G, computed with the help of this value and elapsed times of about 21 days between the three observations, comes out to about 1.003.

Another option, independent of any specific conjecture concerning the position of the orbit, would be to carry through our construction for P_2 *without Gauss's correction,* and to compute the Ceres-sun distance r_2 from the rough approximation for the Ceres position.

Having selected an initial value for r_2, the next step is to check, whether it is consistent with the self-reflexive relationship described above. Starting from the proposed value of r_2 and the elapsed times, calculate the corrective factor G from the formula stated above; then, use that G to determine a set of "corrected" coefficients, and construct from those a new estimate for Ceres' position P_2.

Now, compare the distance between that position and the sun, with the original value of r_2. If the two values *coincide* to within a tolerable error, then we can regard the entire set of r_2, P_2, G, together with the associated coefficients, as consistent and coherent, and proceed to determine an orbit from them. If the two values of r_2 differ significantly, then we know the posited value of r_2 cannot be correct, and we must modify it accordingly. A mere trial-and-error approach, although feasible, is extremely laborious. Much better, is to "close in" on the required value, by successive approximations which take into account the *functional dependence* of the initial and calculated values, and in particular the *rate of change* of that dependence. By this sort of analysis, which we shall not go into here, Gauss could obtain the desired coincidence (or very near coincidence) after only a very few steps.

How To Find the Other Two Positions of Ceres

Let us move on to the next essential task. Suppose we have succeeded in obtaining a position P_2 and corresponding distance r_2 which are self-consistent with our geometrical construction process, in the sense indicated above. How can we determine the other two positions of Ceres, P_1 and P_3?

As we might expect, the necessary relationships are already subsumed by our original construction. Readers should review the essentials of that construction, with the help of the relevant diagrams. Recall, that P_2 was obtained as the intersection of a certain plane Q with the "line of sight" L_2—the line running from the Earth's second position E_2 in the direction defined by the second observation. The plane Q was determined as follows. First, we constructed point F, in the plane of the Earth's orbit, according to the requirement, that F has the same relationship to the Earth's positions E_1 and E_3, in terms of the "parallelogram law" of decomposition of displacements, as P_2 has to P_1 and P_3. **(Figure 15.2a)** For that purpose, we chose points F_1 and F_3, located on the lines OE_1 and OE_3, respectively, such that

$$\frac{OF_1}{OE_1} = \text{the estimated value of } \frac{T_{23}}{T_{13}},$$

and

$$\frac{OF_3}{OE_3} = \text{the estimated value of } \frac{T_{12}}{T_{13}}.$$

We then constructed the point F as the endpoint of the combination of the displacements OF_1 and OF_3—i.e., the fourth vertex of the parallelogram whose other vertices are O, F_1, and F_3.

Next, we drew the parallels through F, to the other two "lines-of-sight" L_1 and L_3. (**Figure 15.2b**) Q is the plane "spanned" by those parallels through F, and the intersection of plane Q with L_2 is our adduced position for P_2. We showed, that this reconstruction of the position of Ceres would actually coincide with the real one, were it not for a margin of error introduced in estimating the coefficients T_{12}/T_{13} and T_{23}/T_{13}, as well as in Piazzi's observations themselves. We also found a way to reduce the former error, using Gauss's correction.

Now, to find P_1 and P_3, look more closely at the relationships in the plane Q. Call the parallels to the lines L_1 and L_3, drawn through F, L_1' and L_3', respectively. (**Figure 15.3**) On each of the latter lines, mark off points P_1' and P_3', such that the distance FP_1' is equal to the Earth-Ceres distance E_1P_1, and similarly FP_3' is equal to E_3P_3. To put it another way: transfer the segments E_1P_1 and E_3P_3 from the base-points E_1 and E_3, to F, without altering their directions.

What is the relationship of P_2, to the points F_1, P_1', and P_3'? From the "hereditary" character of the entire construction, we would certainly expect the *same coefficients* to arise here, as we adduced for the relationship of P_2 to O, P_1, and P_3, and used in the construction of F. A bit of effort, working through the combinations of dis-

FIGURE 15.2. *(a) We constructed point F using the "parallelogram law" of displacements. (b) Once constructed, plane Q at F must contain P_2 as the point of intersection with line L_2.*

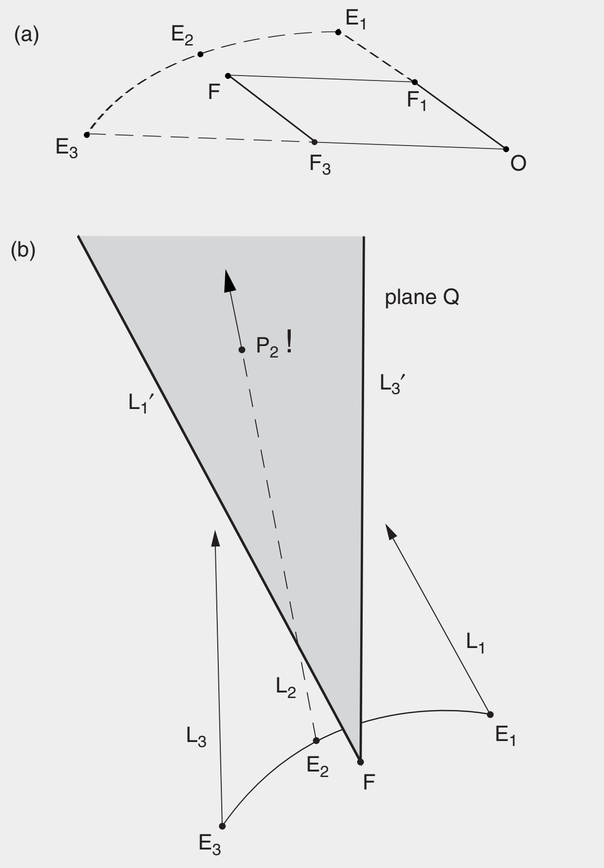
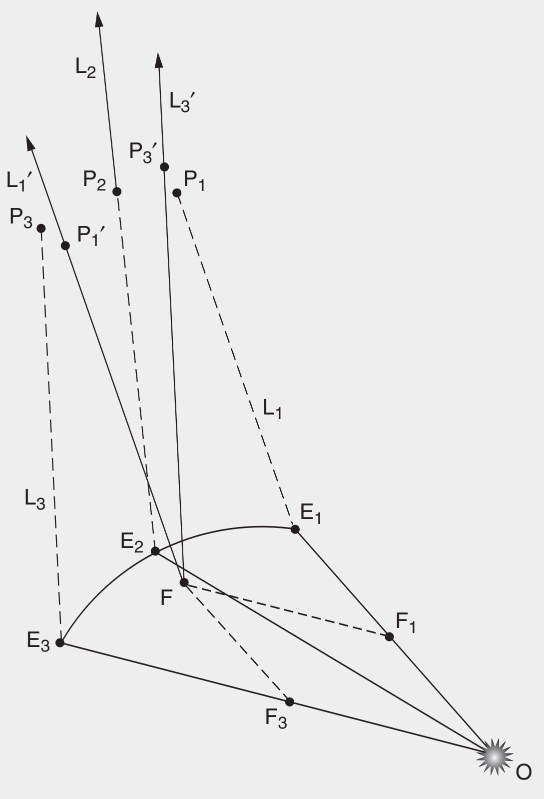


FIGURE 15.3. *Having determined the position of P_2, we now set out to locate P_1 and P_3, by determining P_1' and P_3' in plane Q at F.*



placements involved, confirms that expectation.

This leads us to a very simple construction for P_1 and P_3. All we must do, is to decompose the displacement FP_2—a known entity, thanks to our construction—into a combination of displacements along L_1' and L_3'. In other words, construct points Q_1' and Q_3', along those lines, such that FP_2 is the sum of the displacements FQ_1' and FQ_3', in the sense of the parallelogram law. (**Figure 15.4**) (Q_1' and Q_3' are the "projections" of P_2 onto L_1' and L_3', respectively.) Now, P_1' and P_3' are not yet known at this point, but the "hereditary" character of the construction tells us, as we remarked above, that the values of the ratios

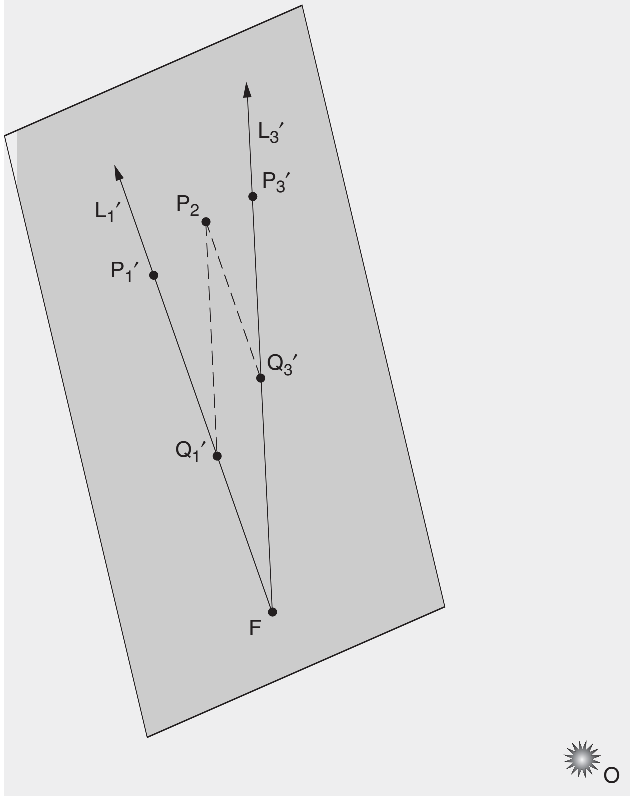
$$\frac{FQ_1'}{FP_1'} \text{ and } \frac{FQ_3'}{FP_3'},$$

are the same as the coefficients used in the construction of P_2, i.e., the estimated values of T_{23}/T_{13} and T_{12}/T_{13}. *Aha!* Using those ratios, we can now determine the distances FP_1' and FP_3'. We have only to divide FQ_1' by the first coefficient, to get FP_1', and divide FQ_3' by the second coefficient, to get FP_3'. That finishes the job, since the lengths we wanted to determine—namely E_1P_1 and E_3P_3—are the same as FP_1' and FP_3' respectively, by construction.

Finally, by marking off these Earth-Ceres distances along the "lines of sight" defined by Piazzi's observations, we construct the positions P_1 and P_3, themselves. Another battle has been won!

—*JT*

FIGURE 15.4. *Work "backwards" from P_2 to the positions of P_1' and P_3'. "Project" P_2 onto the axes L_1',L_2', and use the fact, that P_1',Q_1' and P_3',Q_3' are related by the same coefficient as P_1,Q_1 and P_3,Q_3.*



CHAPTER 16

Our Journey Comes to an End

In the last chapter, we succeeded in constructing at least to a first approximation, all three of the Ceres positions. Given the three positions P_1, P_2, P_3 what could be easier than to construct a unique conic-section orbit around the sun, passing through those positions? We can immediately determine the location of the plane of Ceres' orbit, and its inclination relative to the ecliptic plane, by just passing a plane through the sun and any two of the positions.

To determine the shape of the conic-section orbit, apply our conical projection, taking the horizontal plane to represent the plane of Ceres' orbit. The three points U_1, U_2, U_3 on the cone, which project P_1, P_2, P_3, determine a unique plane passing through all three in the conical space. The intersection of that plane with the cone is a conic section through U_1, U_2, U_3; and the projection of that curve onto the horizontal plane, is the unique conic section through P_1, P_2, P_3, with focus at the sun. **(Figure 16.1)**

As simple as this latter method appears, Gauss rejected it. Why? In the case of Ceres, P_1, P_2, P_3 lie close together. Small errors in the determination of those three positions, can lead to very large errors in the inclination of the plane passing through the corresponding points U_1, U_2, U_3 on the cone. The result would be so unreliable as to be useless as the basis for forecasting the planet's motion.

To resolve this problem, Gauss chooses a different tactic. He leaves P_2 aside for the moment, and proceeds to determine the orbit *from P_1 and P_3 and the elapsed time between them.* Gauss developed a variety of methods for accomplishing this. The simplest pathway goes via Gauss's orbital parameter, using the "area law." Remember, the value of the half-parameter corresponds to the "height" of the point V on the axis of the cone, where the axis is intersected by the plane defining the orbit. If we know the half-parameter, then that gives us a third point V, in addition to U_1 and U_3, with which to determine the position of the intersecting plane. Unlike P_2, the point O lies far from P_1, and P_3; the corresponding points V, U_1, U_3 on the cone are also well-separated. As a result, the position of the plane passing through those three points is much less sensitive to errors in the determination of their positions, than in the earlier case.

How do we get the value of the half-parameter from two positions and the elapsed time between them? According to the Gauss-Kepler "area law," the area of the orbital sector between P_1 and P_3, i.e., S_{13}, is equal to the product of (the elapsed time t_3–t_1) × (the square root of the half-parameter) × (the constant π). The elapsed time is already known; if in addition we knew the area of the sector S_{13}, we could easily derive the value of the orbital parameter.

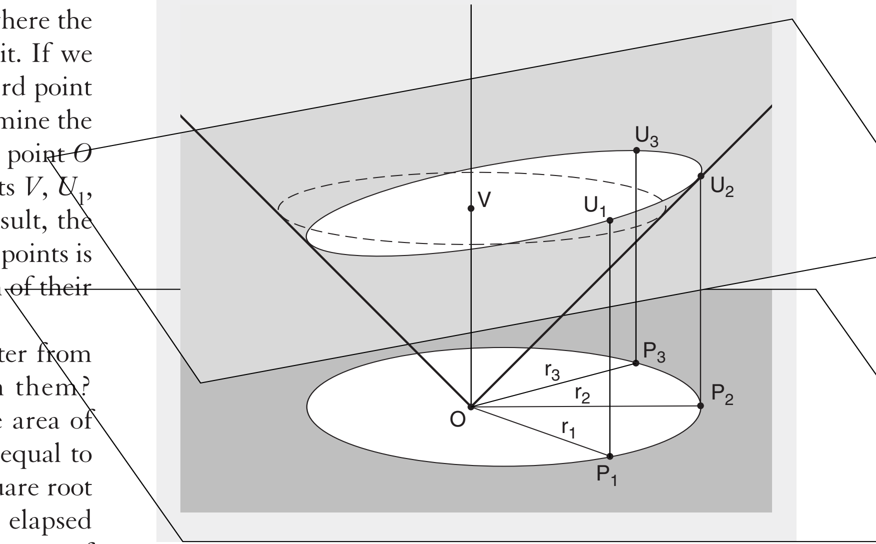
Another self-reflexive relationship! The exact value of S_{13} depends on the shape of the orbital arc between P_1 and P_3; but to know that arc, we must know the orbit. To construct the orbit, on the other hand, we need to know the orbital parameter, which in turn is a function of S_{13}.

Again, we can solve the problem using Gauss's method of successive approximations. The triangular area T_{13}, which we can compute directly from the positions P_1 and P_3, already provides a first rough approximation to S_{13}. Better, we use $G \times T_{13}$, where G is Gauss's correction factor, calculated above. From such an estimated value for S_{13}, calculate the corresponding value of the orbital parameter. Next, apply our conical representation to constructing an orbit, using an approximation of the half-parameter, namely, the value corresponding to that estimated value of S_{13}.

Finally, with the help of Kepler's method of the "eccentric anomaly," or other suitable means, calculate the exact area of the sector S_{13} for that orbit. If this value coincides with the value we started with, our job is done. Otherwise, we must modify our initial estimate, until coincidence occurs. Gauss, who abhorred "dead mechanical calculation," developed a number of ingenious shortcuts, which drastically reduce the number of successive approximations, and the mass of computations required.

At the end of the process, we not only have the value of the orbital parameter, but also the orbit itself.

FIGURE 16.1. *The elliptical orbit is easily determined from P_1,P_2,P_3, by drawing the plane through the corresponding points U_1,U_2,U_3 (whose heights are the distances r_1,r_2,r_3 now known). However, Gauss rejected that direct method as being too prone to error when P_1,P_2,P_3 are close together.*



How To Perfect the Orbit

This completes, in broad essentials, Gauss's construction of a first approximation to the orbit of Ceres, using only three observations. Gauss did not base his forecast for Ceres on that first approximation, however. Remember, everything was based on our approximation to the Ceres position P_2; our construction of P_1 and P_3, and the orbit itself, is only as good as P_2.

Gauss devised an array of methods for successively improving the initially constructed orbit, up to an astonishing precision of mere minutes or even seconds of arc in his forecasts. Again, the key is the coherence and self-reflexivity of the relationships underlying the entire method.

The gist of Gauss's approach, as reported in the "Summary Overview," is as follows. How can we detect a discrepancy between the real orbit and the orbit we have constructed? By the very nature of our construction, *the first and third observations will agree precisely with the calculated orbit*: P_1 and P_3 lie on the calculated orbit as well as the lines of sight from E_1 and E_3, and the elapsed time between them on our calculated orbit will coincide with the actual elapsed time between the first and third observations.

The situation is different for the intermediate position P_2. If we calculate the position P_2 based on the proposed orbit—i.e., the position forecast at time t_2—we will generally find that it disagrees by a more or less significant amount, from the "P_2" we originally constructed. This "dissonance" tells us that the orbit is not yet correct. In that case, we should gradually modify our estimate for P_2, until the two positions coincide. Since P_2 must lie on the line-of-sight L_2, the Earth-Ceres distance is the only variable involved.

Again, trial-and-error is feasible in principle, but Gauss elaborated an array of ingenious methods for successive approximation. Once he had arrived at an orbit which matched the three selected observations in a satisfactory manner, Gauss compared the orbit with the other observations of Piazzi, taking into account the various possible sources of error. Finally, Gauss could deliver his forecast of Ceres' motion with solid confidence that the new planet would indeed be found in the orbit he specified.

Here our journey comes to an end—or nearly. For those readers who have taken the trouble to work through Gauss's solution with us, congratulations! Next chapter, we conclude with a *stretto,* on the issue of "nonlinearity in the small."

—*JT*

CHAPTER 17

In Lieu of a *Stretto*

In this closing discussion, we want to take on a famous bogeyman, called "college differential calculus." Much more can and should be said on this, but the following should be useful for starters, and fun, too.

Readers may have noticed that Gauss made no use at all of "the calculus," nor of anything else normally regarded as "advanced mathematics," in the formal sense. Everything we did, we could express in terms of Classical synthetic geometry, the favorite language of Plato's Academy. Yet Gauss's solution for Ceres embodied something startlingly new, something far more advanced *in substance,* than any of his predecessors had developed. Laplace, famed for his vast analytical apparatus and technical virtuosity, was caught with his pants down.

Gauss's method is completely elementary, and yet highly "advanced," at the same time. How is that possible?

Far from being a geometry of fixed axioms, such as Euclid's, Platonic synthetic geometry is a medium of metaphor—a medium akin to, and inseparable from the well-tempered system of musical composition. So, Gauss uses Classical synthetic geometry to elaborate a concept of physical geometry, which is axiomatically "anti-Euclidean." A contradiction? Not if we read geometry in the same way we ought to listen to music: the axioms and theorems do not lie in the notes, but in the thinking process "*behind the notes.*"

Through a gross failure of our culture and educational system, it has become commonplace practice to impose upon the domain of synthetic geometry, the false, groundless assumption of *simple continuity.* It were hard to imagine any proposition, that is so massively refuted by the scientific evidence! And yet, if we probe into the minds of most people—including, if we are honest, among ourselves—we shall nearly always discover an area of fanatically irrational belief in simple continuity and, what is essentially the same thing, linearity in the small. Here we confront a characteristic manifestation of oligarchical ideology.

Take, for example, the commonplace notion of circle, generated by "perfectly continuous" motion. Our imagination tells us that a small portion of the circle's circumference, if we were to magnify it greatly, would look more flat, or have less curvature, than any larger portion of the circumference. In other words: the smaller the arc, the smaller the net *change of direction* over that portion of the circumference.

Similarly, the standpoint of "college differential calculus" regarding any arbitrary, irregularly shaped curve, is to expect that the irregularity will decrease, and the curve will become simpler and increasingly "smooth," as we proceed to examine smaller and smaller portions of it. This is indeed the case for the imaginary world of college calculus and analytical geometry, where curves are described by algebraic equations and the like. But what about the real world? *Is it true, that the adducible, net change in direction of a physical process over any given interval of space-time, becomes smaller and smaller, as we go from macroscopic scale lengths, down to ever smaller intervals of action?*

Well, in fact, *exactly* the opposite is true! As we pursue the investigation of any physical process into smaller and smaller scale-lengths, we invariably encounter an increasing density and frequency of abrupt changes in the direction and character of the motion associated with the process. Rather than becoming simpler in the small, the process appears ever more complicated, and its discontinuous character becomes ever more pronounced. Our Universe seems to be a very hairy creature indeed: a "discontinuum," in which—so it appears—the part is more complex than the whole.

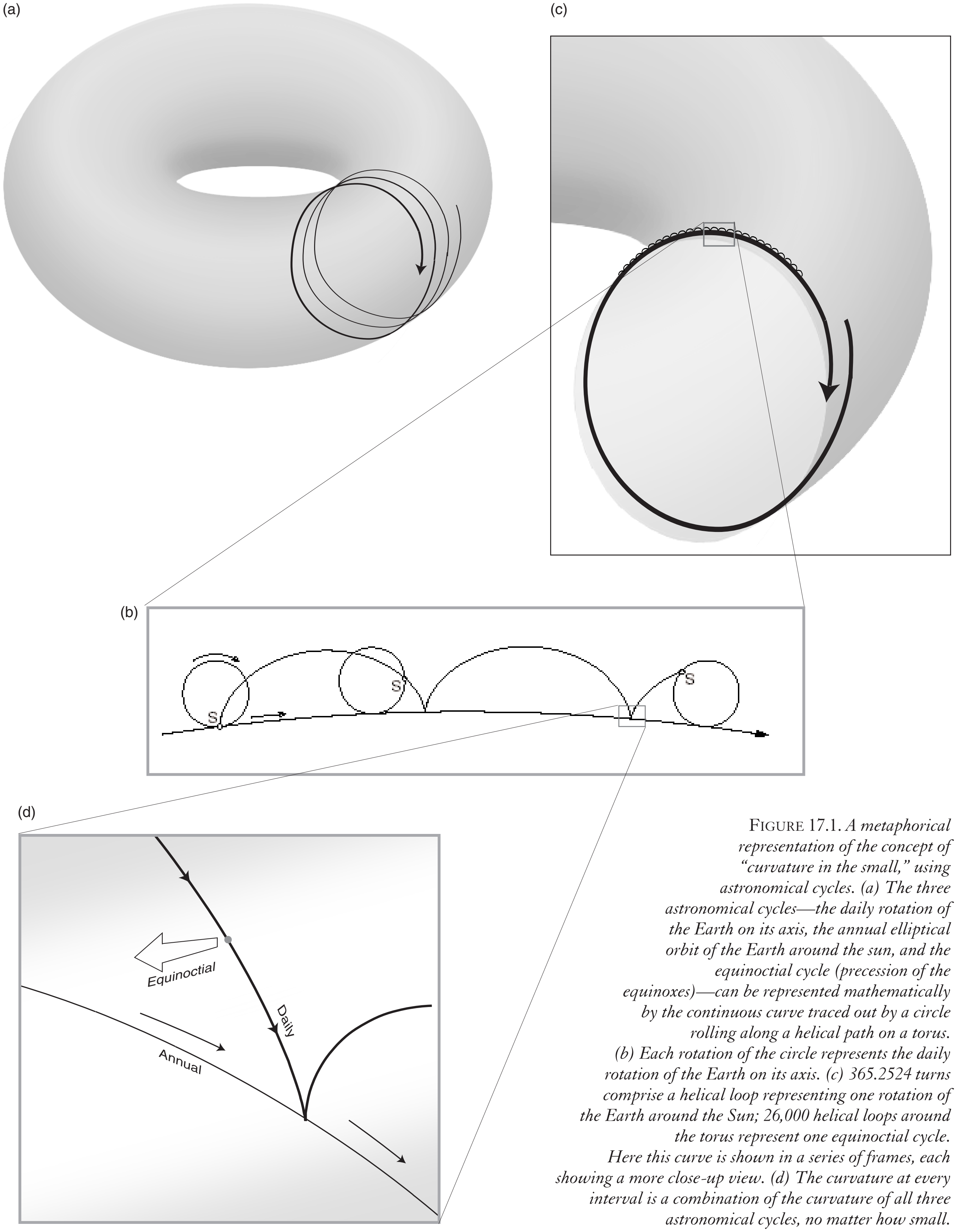


FIGURE 17.1. *A metaphorical representation of the concept of "curvature in the small," using astronomical cycles. (a) The three astronomical cycles—the daily rotation of the Earth on its axis, the annual elliptical orbit of the Earth around the sun, and the equinoctial cycle (precession of the equinoxes)—can be represented mathematically by the continuous curve traced out by a circle rolling along a helical path on a torus. (b) Each rotation of the circle represents the daily rotation of the Earth on its axis. (c) 365.2524 turns comprise a helical loop representing one rotation of the Earth around the Sun; 26,000 helical loops around the torus represent one equinoctial cycle. Here this curve is shown in a series of frames, each showing a more close-up view. (d) The curvature at every interval is a combination of the curvature of all three astronomical cycles, no matter how small.*

'Turbulence in the Small'

The existence of this discontinuum, this "turbulence in the small" of any real physical process, confronts us with several notable paradoxes and problems.

Firstly, what is the *meaning* of that "turbulence"? Why does our Universe behave that way? How does that characteristic—reflecting an increasing density of singularities in the "infinitesimally small"—cohere with the nature of human Reason? Why is a "discontinuum" of that sort, a *necessary* feature of the relationship of the human mind, as microcosm, to the Universe as a whole?

Another paradox arises, which may shed some light on the first one: When we carry our experimental study of a process down to the *microscopic level,* we find it more and more difficult to identify those features, which correspond to the *macroscopic* ordering that was the original object of our investigation.

The analogy of astronomic cycles, which we have learned something about through the course of our investigation, might help us to think about the problem in a more rigorous way. Instead of "macroscopic ordering," let us say: a (relatively) long cycle. By the nature of the Universe, no single cycle exists in and of itself. All cycles interact, at least potentially; and the existence of any given cycle, is functionally dependent on a plenitude of shorter cycles, as well as longer cycles. Now we are asking the question: how does a given long cycle *manifest* itself on the level of much shorter cycles? At first glance, the action associated with the long cycle becomes more and more indistinct, and finally "infinitesimal," as we descend to the length-scales characteristic of shorter and shorter cycles.

(More precisely—to anticipate a key point—we reach critical scale-lengths, below which it becomes *impossible* to follow the trace of the "long cycle" within the "short cycles," unless we change our own axiomatic assumptions.)

We encounter this sort of thing all the time in astronomy. On the time-scale of the Earth's daily rotation, the yearly motion of the sun appears as a very small deviation from a circular pathway. To the ancient observer, the effect of that deviation becomes evident only after many day-cycles. Similarly, recall the provocative illustration commissioned by Lyndon LaRouche, for the seemingly "infinitesimal" action of the approximately 25,700-year-long equinoctial cycle (precession of the equinoxes) within a one-second interval. **(Figure 17.1)**

The simplest sort of geometrical representation of such infinitesimal long-cycle action, tends to understate the problem: Suppose we did not know the existence or identity of a given long cycle. How could we uncover it by means of measurements made only on a much smaller scale? Won't the infinitesimally faint "signal" of the longer cycle, be hopelessly lost amidst the turbulent "noise" of the shorter cycles? Already in the case of Piazzi's observations, the true motion of Ceres was completely distorted by the effect of the Earth's motion. What would we do, if the cycle we were looking for were mixed together with not one, but a huge array of other cycles?

Here an unbridgeable chasm separates the method of Gauss, from that of Laplace and his latter-day followers. Just as Laplace ridiculed Gauss's attempt to calculate the orbit of Ceres from Piazzi's observations, calling it a waste of time, so Laplace's successors, John Von Neumann, Norbert Wiener, and John Shannon, denied the *efficient* existence of long cycles, and sought to degrade them into mere "statistical correlations."

The point is, we cannot solve the problem, as long as we avoid the issue of axiomatic change, and tacitly assume a simple commensurability between cycles which is tantamount to "linearity in the small."

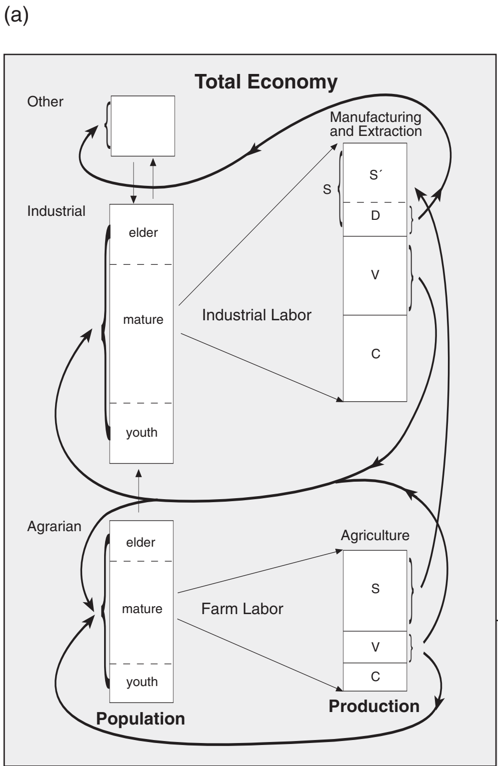
The Issue of Method

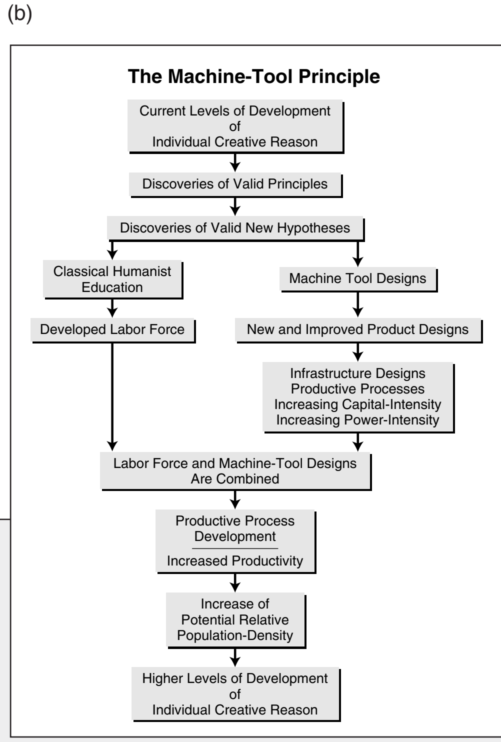
Let's glance at some examples, where this issue of method arises in unavoidable fashion.

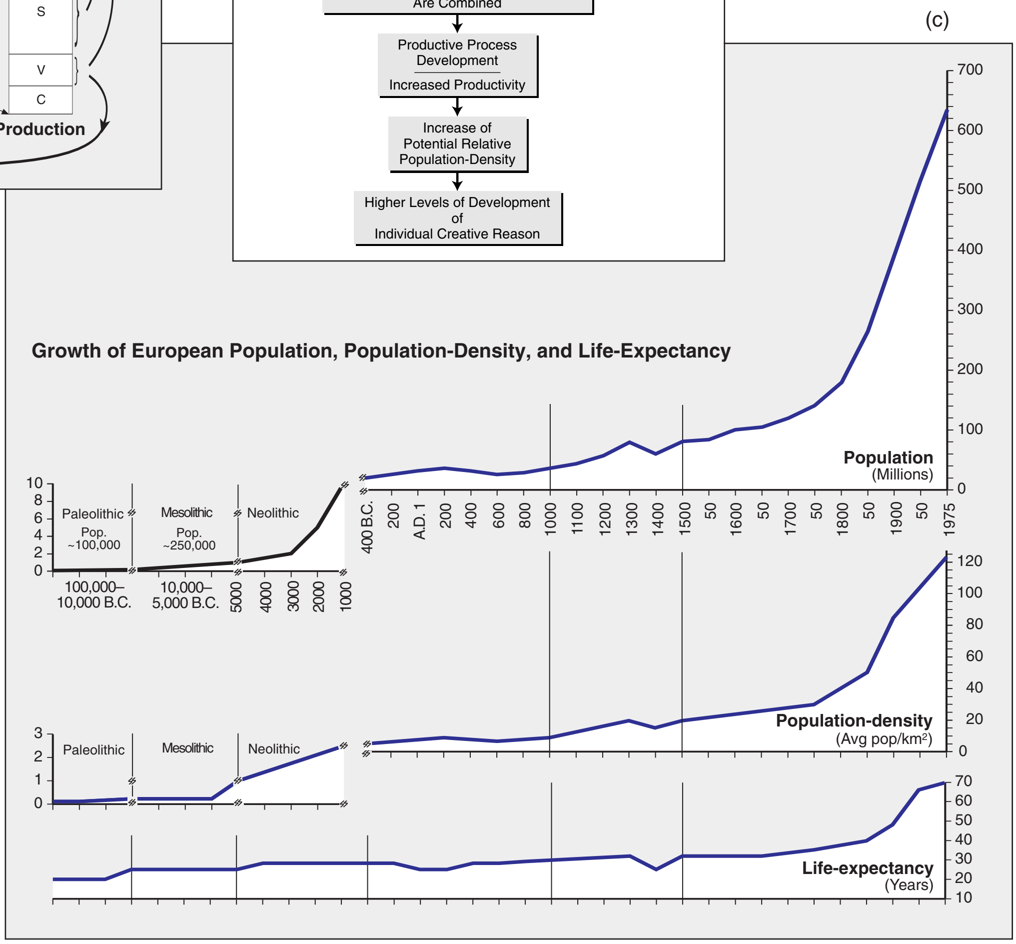
1. The paradoxes of any mechanistic theory of sound. "Standard theory," going back to Descartes, Euler, Cauchy, *et al.,* treats air as a homogenous, "elastic medium," within which sound propagates as longitudinal waves of alternate compression and decompression of the medium. Descartes' "homogeneous elastic medium" is a fairy tale, of course. We know that the behavior of air depends on the existence of certain electromagnetic micro-singularities, called molecules. We can also be certain, that whatever sound *is* exactly, its propagation depends in some way on the functional activity of those molecules. At this point Boltzmann introduced the baseless assumption, only superficially different from that of Descartes and Euler, that the molecules are inert "simple bodies"—interacting only by elastic collisions in the manner of idealized tennis balls.

Experimental investigations leave little doubt, that the molecules in air are constantly in a state of a very rapid, turbulent motion at hypersonic speeds, and that events of rapid change of direction of motion take place among them, which one might broadly qualify with the term "collisions." A single molecule will typically participate in hundreds of millions or more such events each second. On the other hand, those "collisions" are anything but simple; they are vastly complicated electromagnetic processes, whose nature Boltzmann conveniently chose to ignore.

Push the resulting, simplistic picture to the limits of absurdity. Imagine observing a microscopic volume of the air, one inhabited by only a few molecules, on a time scale of billionths of a second. Where is the sound wave? According to statistical method, the energy of the sound wave passing through any tiny portion of air is thousands, perhaps millions of times smaller than that of the turbulent "thermal" motion in a corresponding, undisturbed portion of air. What, then, *is* the sound wave for an individual air molecule, travelling at hypersonic speed, in the short time interval between







(a) Cycles of production and consumption change the internal composition of the labor force and captial. (b) Scientific discovery, technological innovation, and their assimilation into the productive economy. (c) Long-term cycle of demographic development.

FIGURE 17.2. *Schematic representations used by Lyndon LaRouche to describe several crucial economic cycles. Like the astronomical cycles shown previously, these are embedded in one another, contributing simultaneously to the "action" of the productive economy at any given instant.*

successive collisions? Does the sound wave exist at all, on that scale? According to Boltzmann, it does not: a sound wave is nothing but a statistical correlation—a mathematical ghost!

2. As implied, for example, by so-called photon effects, light is not a simple wave. Its propagation (even in a supposed "vacuum") surely involves vast arrays of individual events on a subatomic scale. But standard quantum physics denies there is a strictly lawful relationship between the propagation of a light "wave" and the behavior of individual photons. Is "light" nothing but a statistical correlation?

3. The characteristic of living processes is self-similar conical-spiral action. But the *functional activity* of the electromagnetic singularities, upon which all known forms of life depend, is anything but simple and "smooth" in the way naive imagination would tend to misread the term, conical-spiral action. Going down to the microscopic level of intense, abrupt "pulses" of electromagnetic activity and millions of individual chemical events each second, how do we locate that which corresponds to the "long wave" characteristic, we call "living"?

4. A competent physical economist must keep track of a large array of cycles, subsumed within the overall social-reproductive cycle and the long cycle of anti-entropic growth of the *per-capita* potential population-density of the human species: demographic cycles, biological and geophysical cycles of agricultural and related production, production and consumption cycles of consumer and capital goods market-baskets, industrial and infrastructural investment/depreciation cycles interacting with the cycles of technological attrition, and so forth. **(Figure 17.2)** Where, within those cycles, is the causal agent of real economic growth?

5. Look at this from a slightly different standpoint: In the broad sweep of human history, we recognize a continuity of cultural development, reflected in orders-of-magnitude increases in the population potential of the human species. But that development is by definition a "discontinuum": its very measure and focus is the individual human life, the quantum of the historical process. Nothing occurs "collectively," as a "social phenomenon" excreted by some "*Zeitgeist.*" Nothing happens which is not the product of specific actions of individual human beings (including "non-actions"), actions bound up with the functions of the individual personality. Yet on the scale of historical "long cycles," a human life is a short moment, with an abrupt beginning and an abrupt end. If we would take a microscope to history, so to speak, and examine the hectic bustling and rushing around of an individual during his brief, pulse-like interval of existence, would we see the function which is responsible for the "long wave" of human development? Were it not as an "infinitesimal," compared to the incessant hustling and bustling of existence? And yet, it is that "infinitesimal" which represents the most powerful force in the Universe!

A Well-Tempered 'Discontinuum'

What lesson can we draw from these examples? The case of human society is the clincher: The efficient existence of the long cycle within the shorter cycles, is located uniquely in the *axiomatic characteristics of action in the small.*

Thus, the relationship between short and long cycles does not exist in the domain of naive sense-certainty; nor is it capable of literal representation in formal mathematics. To adduce axiomatic characteristics and shifts in such characteristics, is the exclusive province of human cognition! What characteristics necessarily apply to the short cycles, by virtue of their participation in the coming-into-being of a given long cycle? In this context, recognize the unique potential of the self-consciously creative individual, by deliberately changing the axioms of his or her action, to shift the entire "orbit" of history for hundreds or thousands of years to come! To command the forces of the Universe, we need not know all the details and instrumentalities of a given process; we have only to address its essential axiomatic features.

Gauss's solution for Ceres is coherent with this point of view. His is not a simple construction, in the sense of classroom Euclidean geometry. To solve the problem, we had to focus on the significance of the fact, that there is no simple commensurability or linear-deductive relationship between

(i) the angular intervals formed by Piazzi's observations from the Earth;

(ii) the corresponding three positions of Ceres in space;

(iii) the orbital process generating the motion of Ceres, and the "elements" of the orbit, taken as a completed entity;

(iv) the Keplerian harmonic ordering of the solar system as a whole, subsuming a multitude of astronomical cycles of incommensurable curvature.

We had to ask ourselves the question: What *harmonic relationship* must underlie the array of intervals among the observed positions of Ceres, by virtue of the fact, that those apparent positions were generated by the combined action of the Earth and Ceres (and, implicitly, the rest of the solar system)? As Kepler emphasized, it is in the harmonic, geometrical relationships—and not in nominal scalar magnitudes *per se,* whether small or large—that the axiomatic features of physical action are reflected into visual space.

The crucial feature, emerging ever more forcefully in the course of our investigation, was expressed by the coherence and at the same time the incommensurable discrepancy, between the triangular areas of the discrete observations on the one hand, and the orbital sectors on the other. This is the same motif addressed by Gauss's earliest work on the arithmetic-geometric mean. What shall we call it? A "well-tempered discontinuum"!

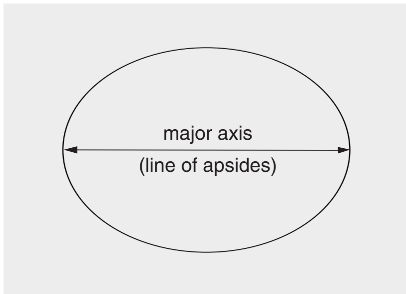
As an exercise, we invite the reader to apply the essence of Gauss's method concerning the relationship of the various levels of becoming, to the completed conception of a Classical musical composition. For, you see, there is yet another mountaintop!

—*JT*

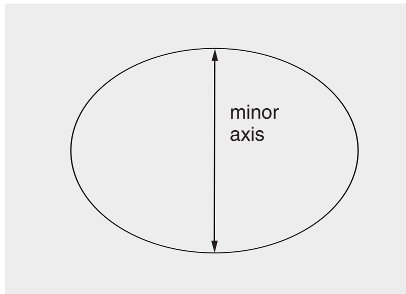
APPENDIX

Harmonic Relationships In an Ellipse

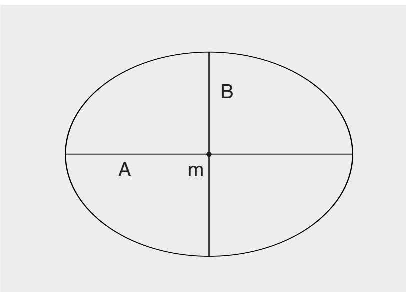
(a)



(b)

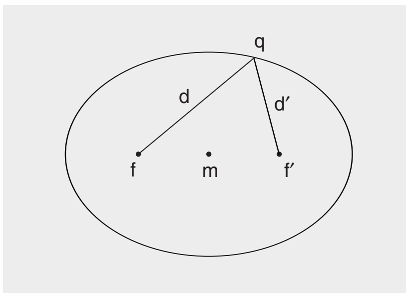


(c)



A and *B* are the semi-major and semi-minor axes, and *m* is the midpoint, or center, of the ellipse

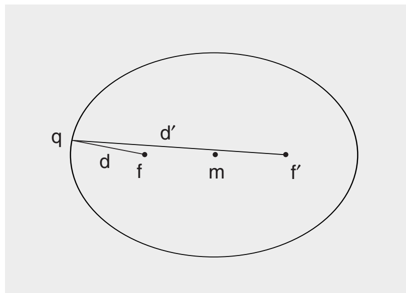
(d)



The characteristic property of the ellipse: The sum of the distance from an arbitrary point *q* on the perimeter, to the two foci *f*, *f′*, is a constant:

$d + d' =$ constant.

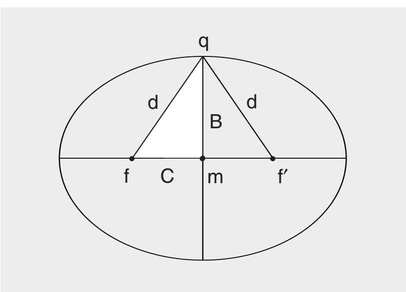
(e)



To determine the value of the sum of distances, consider the case, where *q* approaches the point on the major axis opposite *f*. At that point, we can see that the total length $d + d'$ will be equal to the major axis of the ellipse:

$d + d' = 2A$.

(f)



Applying the Pythagorean Theorem to the right triangle *mfq*, we find, that $d^2 = B^2 + C^2$. Since length *d* from focus *f* to *q* is equal to the semi-major axis *A*, and the total length $d + d = 2A$, we have the relationship between the semi-major axis *A*, the semi-minor axis *B*, and the distance *C* from the focus to the midpoint *m*:

$$A^2 = B^2 + C^2,$$

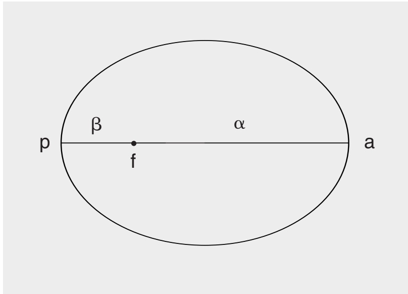
or

$$C^2 = A^2 - B^2$$

$$C = \sqrt{A^2 - B^2}.$$

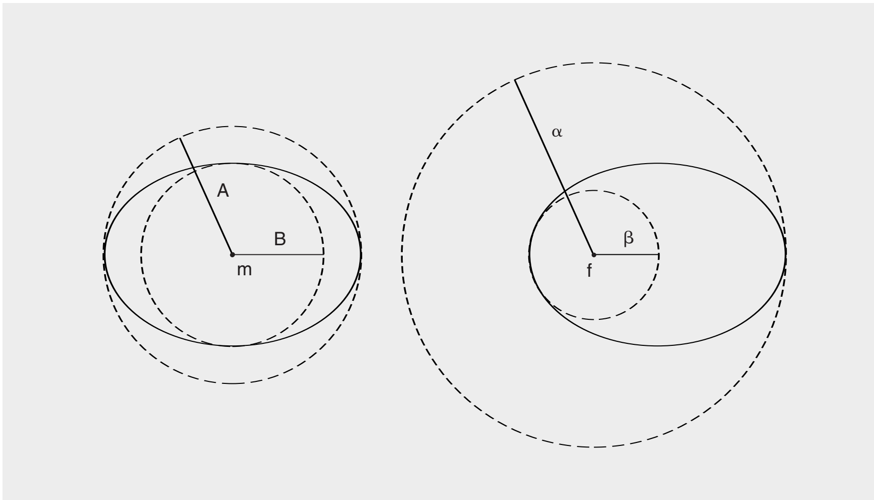
(g)

Another set of characteristic singularities: a point moving on the ellipse, reaches its maximum distance (α) from the focus *f*, at point *a* (called the "aphelion"), and its minimum distance (β) at the point *p* (called the "perihelion").

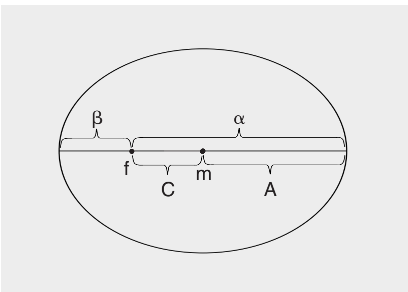


(h)

The ellipse spans the intervals between two characteristic sets of circles: the circles of radii *A,B* around the mid-point of the ellipse, and the circles of radii α,β around the focus *f.* What is the relationship between *A,B* and α, β?



(i)



$$\alpha + \beta = \text{major axis of ellipse}$$

$$= 2A$$

$$A = \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}\ .$$

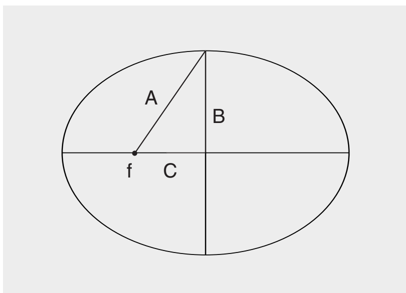
Also, from the diagram,

$$C = \alpha - A$$

$$= \alpha - \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}$$

$$= \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}\ .$$

(j)



From figure (f), we have the relationship

$$A^2 = B^2 + C^2\ .$$

From this, it follows that

$$B^2 = A^2 - C^2$$

$$= \left(\frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}\right)^2$$

$$= \left(\frac{\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + 2\alpha\beta}{4}\right)$$

$$- \left(\frac{\alpha^2 + \beta^2 - 2\alpha\beta}{4}\right)$$

$$= \alpha\beta\ \ !$$

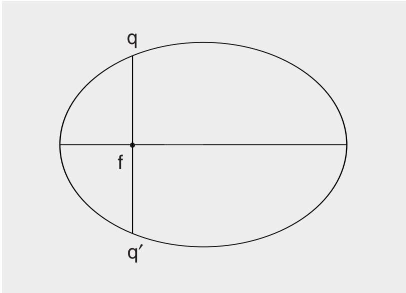
$$B = \sqrt{\alpha\beta}\ .$$

`A` **= $(\alpha+\beta)/2$ and** `B` **= $\sqrt{\alpha\beta}$ are known as the** `arithmetic` **and** `geometric means` **of lengths α and β. The combination of the two, inherent in the geometry of the ellipse, plays a key role in Gauss's founding of a theory of elliptic and hypergeometric functions, based on his concept of what is called the "arithmetic-geometric mean."**

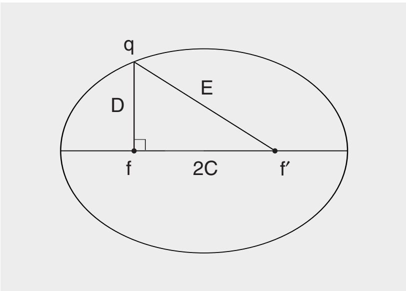
The Orbital Parameter

(k)

Still another key singularity, already presented in the text, is the "orbital parameter," which is the length of the perpendicular *qq′* to the major axis at the focus *f*. The value Gauss most frequently works with in his calculations, is the "half-parameter" *qf*, corresponding to the radius in the case of a circular orbit.



(l)



To calculate the relationship between the half-parameter (labelled "*D*") and the semi-axes *A,B*, one way to proceed is as follows: From the characteristic of generation of the ellipse,

$$E + D = 2A \text{ (major axis).} \quad \textbf{(A1)}$$

Apply the Pythagorean Theorem to the right triangle *fqf′*:

$$E^2 - D^2 = (2C)^2, \text{ or}$$

$$E^2 - D^2 = 4C^2. \quad \textbf{(A2)}$$

On the other hand, by factoring, we have

$$E^2 - D^2 = (E - D)\,(E + D)$$

$$= (E - D) \cdot 2A \quad \textbf{(A3)}$$

[by **Equation (A1)**].

From **Equations (A2) and (A3)**, we have

$$E - D = \frac{4C^2}{2A} = \frac{2C^2}{A}. \quad \textbf{(A4)}$$

Subtracting **Equation (A4)** from **Equation (A1)**, we find

$$2D = 2A - \frac{2C^2}{A}$$

$$D = \frac{A^2 - C^2}{A} = \frac{B^2}{A}.$$

This result becomes much more intelligible in terms of conical projections.

Expressed in terms of the aphelion and perihelion distances, we have

$$D = \frac{B^2}{A} = \frac{\alpha\beta}{(\alpha + \beta)/2}$$

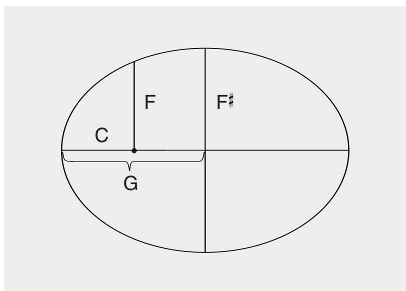
$$= \frac{2\alpha\beta}{\alpha + \beta} = \frac{2}{(1/\alpha) + (1/\beta)}.$$

The latter value is known as the *harmonic mean* of α and β.

In summary, the semi-major axis, semi-minor axis, and half-parameter of an orbit, correspond to the `arithmetic, geometric,` **and** `harmonic means` **of the aphelion and perihelion distances. These three means played a central role in the geometry, music, architecture, art, and natural science of Classical Greece**

(m)

The intimate relationship to the musical system can be seen, for example, if we interpret *lengths* as signifying frequencies (or pitches), and consider the case, where $\alpha = 2\beta$ (length α corresponds to a pitch one octave higher than β). If β is "middle C," then the pitches corresponding to the various elliptical singularities will be as labelled in the figure.



The interval F-F♯ is the key singularity of the musical system.

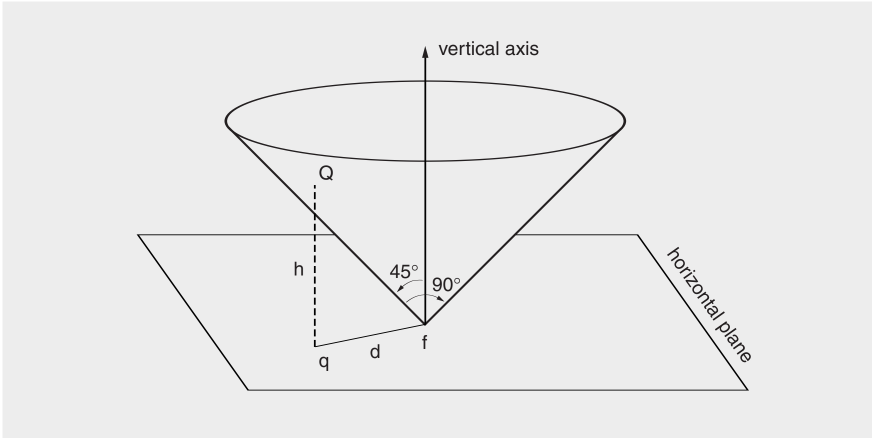
The Ellipse as a Conical Projection

The underlying harmonic relationships in an ellipse become more intelligible, when we conceive the ellipse as a kind of "shadow" or projection from a higher, conical geometry. The implications of this are discussed in Chapter 12; here, we explore only the "bare bones" of the relevant geometrical construction.

(n)

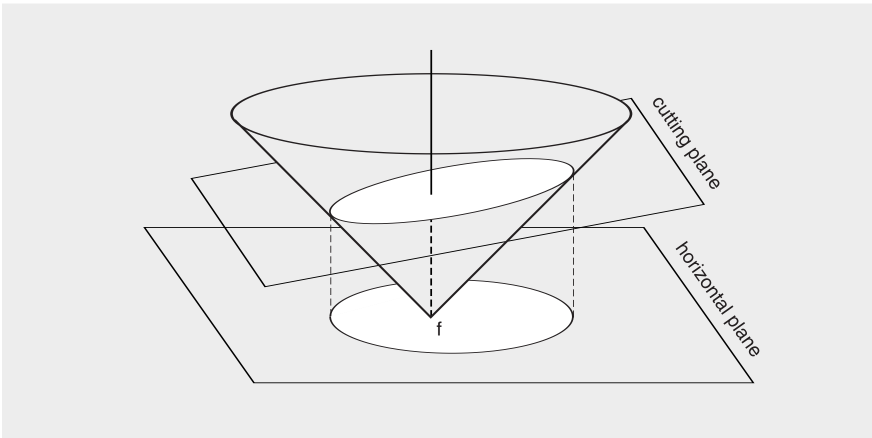
Given a horizontal plane and a point *f* on that plane, erect a vertical axis at *f* and construct a vertical-axis cone having its apex at *f* and its apex angle equal to 90°.

Note a crucial feature of the relationship between cone and horizontal plane: for any point *q* in the plane, the distance *d* from *f* to *q*, is equal to the "height" *h* of the point *Q* lying perpendicularly above *q* on the cone.



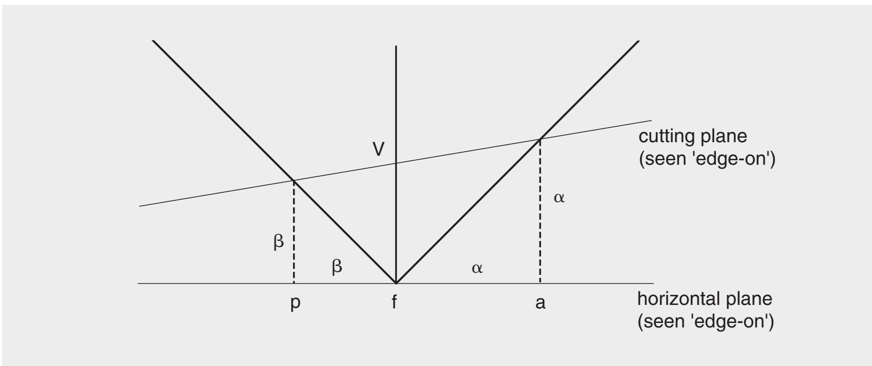
(o)

Now, cut the cone with a plane, generating a conic section. For the present discussion, consider the case, where the cutting plane makes an angle of more than 45° with the vertical axis. In this case, the conic section will be an ellipse. Now, project that curve vertically downward to the horizontal plane. The result, as we shall verify in a moment, is an ellipse having *f* as a focus.



(p)

To explore the relationship so generated, examine the above figure as projected onto a plane passing though the vertical axis and the major axes of the two ellipses. (That plane makes right angles with both the cutting plane and the horizontal plane.)

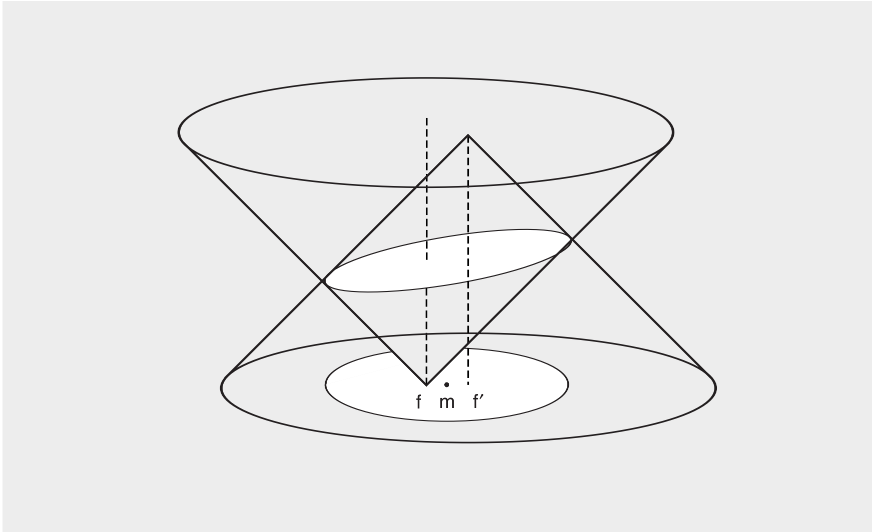


With a bit of thought, we can see that the segment *fV* is equal to the segment *D* [in figure (l)], which defines the half-parameter of the projected ellipse. (Indeed, the endpoint *q* of the segment *D* on the ellipse, coincides with the position of *f* when the ellipse is viewed "edge-on" perpendicular to its major axis; the point *Q*, on the cone above *q*, coincides with *V* in the projection, and its height, which is equal to *D*, coincides with *fV*.) Those skillful in geometry can easily determine the length *fV* in terms of α and β from the diagram.

The result is $fV = 2\alpha\beta / (\alpha + \beta)$, confirming the expression for the half-parameter which we found by another method above in (l).

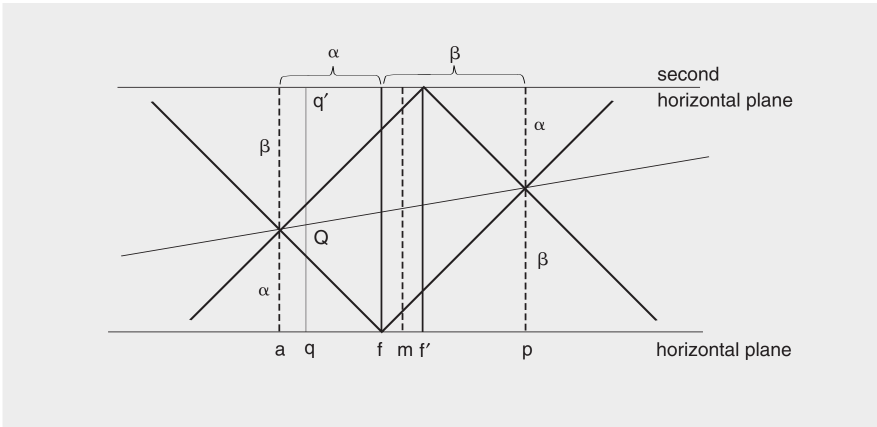
(q)

Double-conical projection. The ellipse formed by the original plane-cut of the cone, can also be realized as the intersection of that cone with a second cone, congruent to the first, but with the opposite orientation, and whose axis is a vertical line passing through the point *f′* lying symmetrically across the midpoint *m* of the projected ellipse from *f*.



(r)

Looking at the double-conical construction in the "edge-on" view as before, we can now see why the points *f,f′*, corresponding to the apex-points of the cones, coincide with the foci of the ellipse. Let *q* represent an arbitrary point on the perimeter of the projected ellipse, let *Q* represent the corresponding point on the conical section. Then, by virtue of the symmetry of the construction and the relationship between "heights" and distances to the points *f* and *f′*, *Qq* and *Qq′* are equivalent, respectively, to the true distances from *q* to *f* and *f′* (i.e., the real distance in the plane of the projected ellipse, not those in the "edge-on" view). Since the distance between the two horizontal planes in the diagram is constant, *Qq* + *Qq′* is constant, and therefore so is the sum of the distance *qf* and *qf′*.



—*Jonathan Tennenbaum*

For Further Reading

Nicolaus of Cusa "On the Quadrature of the Circle," trans. by William F. Wertz, Jr., *Fidelio (*Spring 1994).*

William Gilbert *De Magnete (On the Magnet),* trans. by P. Fleury Mottelay (New York: Dover Publications, 1958; reprint).*

Johannes Kepler *New Astronomy,* trans. by William Donahue (London: Cambridge University Press, 1992).

Epitome of Copernican Astronomy (Books 4 and 5) *and Harmonies of the World* (Book 5), trans. by Charles Glenn Wallis (Amherst: Prometheus Press, 1995; reprint).*

The Harmony of the World, trans by E.J. Aiton, A.M. Duncan, and J.V. Field (Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society, 1997).*

G.W. Leibniz "On Copernicus and the Relativity of Motion," "Preface to the *Dynamics,*" and "A Specimen of Dynamics," in *G.W. Leibniz: Philosophical Essays,* trans. by Roger Ariew and Daniel Garber (Indianapolis: Hackett Publishing Company, 1985).*

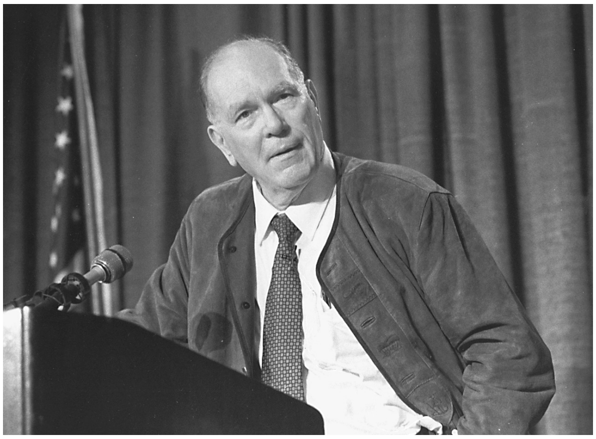
Carl F. Gauss *Theory of the Motion of the Heavenly Bodies Moving about the Sun in Conic Sections,* trans. by Charles Henry Davis (New York: Dover Publications, 1963; reprint).*

Bernhard Riemann "On the Hypotheses Which Lie at the Foundation of Geometry," in *A Source Book in Mathematics,* ed. by David Eugene Smith (New York: Dover Publications, 1959; reprint).*

Lyndon H. LaRouche, Jr. The key methodological features of the works of Kepler, Leibniz, and Gauss, in opposition to the corruptions introduced by Sarpi, Galileo, Newton, and Euler, are a central theme in all the writings of Lyndon H. LaRouche, Jr. Among articles of immediate relevance to the matters presented here, are the following works which have appeared in recent issues of *Fidelio*: "The Fraud of Algebraic Causality" (Winter 1994); "Leibniz From Riemann's Standpoint" (Fall 1996); "Behind the Notes" *(*Summer 1997); "Spaceless-Timeless Boundaries in Leibniz" (Fall 1997). See also LaRouche's book-length "Cold Fusion: Challenge to U.S. Science Policy" (Schiller Institute Science Policy Memo, August 1992).*

LaRouche Assesses ‘New Bretton Woods’ at D.C. Meet

Representatives from twenty nations, including significant Asian media outlets, plus policy makers and political activists from the United States, jammed into a meeting room in Washington, D.C. March 18, for a major presentation by economist and statesman Lyndon H. LaRouche, Jr., on the prospects for implementing a New Bretton Woods System. LaRouche led the audience through a two-hour lesson in history, economics, and politics, which concluded with the following assessment.



EIRNS/Stuart Lewis

Lyndon H. LaRouche, Jr.

New Dark Age, or 21st-Century Renaissance?

We have two alternatives before us. If we stick with the current I.M.F. policy, we are headed toward a New Dark Age. If we cooperate with Asia to build a new just world economic order based on development, and bring justice to Africa, the Twenty-first century can be the realization of the universal principle of building a society based on man’s being made in the image of God. The decision is up to us in 1998—whether we take the leadership to do what appears unthinkable under current conditions, or, by minimizing risks, maximize the misery of the human race for generations to come.

EIRNS/Stuart Lewis

Schiller Institute campaigns for a “New Bretton Woods System” at G-22 Finance Ministers meeting, Washington, D.C., April 16, 1998.

LaRouche began with a discussion of the financial crisis, as it is beginning to spread from Asia to Europe, and then, inevitably, on to the United States. What is being implemented is a Versailles-style policy that is literally destroying the nations of Asia.

Under these conditions, LaRouche urged the then-upcoming meeting of the Group of 22 nations, convened by U.S. Treasury Secretary Rubin on April 16, to agree to deal with three crucial topics:

First, the nations, led by the U.S., must acknowledge the global and systemic nature of the crisis, and realize that the abandonment of Bretton Woods measures of stability actually caused the crisis.

Second, the nations must agree on a radical reorganization of the monetary system, effectively carrying out a bankruptcy reorganization, and re-imposing fixed exchange rates, forms of capital controls, necessary protectionist measures, and the outlawing of markets that speculate against currencies.

Third, the representatives must understand that the world economy is currently operating at *negative* growth levels, below the *per capita* physical output levels required to support the world’s population, and thus they must agree that a forced-draft physical economic recovery, analogous to that carried out by President Franklin D. Roosevelt in the U.S., must be carried out on a global scale.

The Question of Leadership

LaRouche moved to the question of leadership, contrasting that of FDR, to the political norm today, and locating FDR’s genius in the tradition of the United States’s unique commitment to a constitutional principle of governing according to man’s being made in the image of God.

The obvious objection to doing what needs to be done, LaRouche said, is the argument that a sudden change in policy is impossible. If that argument is right, we’re headed toward a New Dark Age. LaRouche described the models of leadership given by the German General von Schlieffen, and the French scientist-general Lazare Carnot. These men knew that you had to take risks (although they were well thought-out) to win, but President Clinton’s plan of minimizing risk, to achieve consensus, will maximize defeat.

There is already a shift away from

the post-industrial I.M.F. paradigm, LaRouche pointed out, and if President Clinton showed leadership, he could get support. We see the shift in the Asian nations' rejection of the I.M.F., and in a turn by the U.S. population toward bread-and-butter issues (i.e., performance orientation). The I.M.F. is murdering the nations of South Asia, and this truth must be faced.

LaRouche then pointed to two examples of the institutional approach to dealing with this crisis. He cited Roosevelt's Economic Stabilization Act policy, and the example of the Listian Wilhelm Lautenbach, who outlined the principles of a recovery program for Germany which could have stopped Hitler. Above all, Lautenbach said, you can not cut production, and credit must be mobilized selectively to save the productive economy, not the private financial system.

The problem, LaRouche emphasized, is that Americans have lost their institutional memory of what the U.S. represents. This he returned to later, in elaborating the model which Abraham Lincoln and his economist Henry Carey established in the 1861-1876 period, and which was copied by Japan, Germany, and many other nations.

It is important to understand the difference between previous cyclical economic crises, and the current systemic crisis, LaRouche said. The cyclical crises were the result of the conflict between social forces of national economy, who support industrial progress, and the parasitical financial oligarchy. When the parasite wreaked too much damage, depressions would result. But, in the post-1962 period, we have had the concerted destruction of the national economy forces, as the utopians moved to destroy the nation-state. Unless we destroy the post-industrial paradigm, there is no way to reassert policies of national growth.

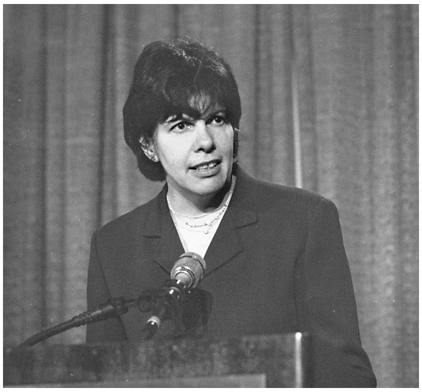
LaRouche presented ten colorful animated graphics showing the physical-economic concomitants of the post-industrial paradigm, which contrasted developments of 1946-1966, to those of 1966 to the present. What was made clear, is that the decline in physical-goods production has created the problems in increased taxation, and budget deficits. He concluded this section by illustrating the unpayable derivatives bubble, and elaborating how such obligations, estimated at $140 trillion, will have to be written off, in a financial reorganization.

The touchstone of policy, he emphasized, is to use credit to keep people alive, and, while so doing, build a recovery.

The Machine-Tool Principle

LaRouche concluded his speech with a discussion of the "machine-tool principle," which is indispensable to a recovery program. The machine-tool principle makes scientific and technological progress possible, he stressed, and such progress is the secret of a modern economy.

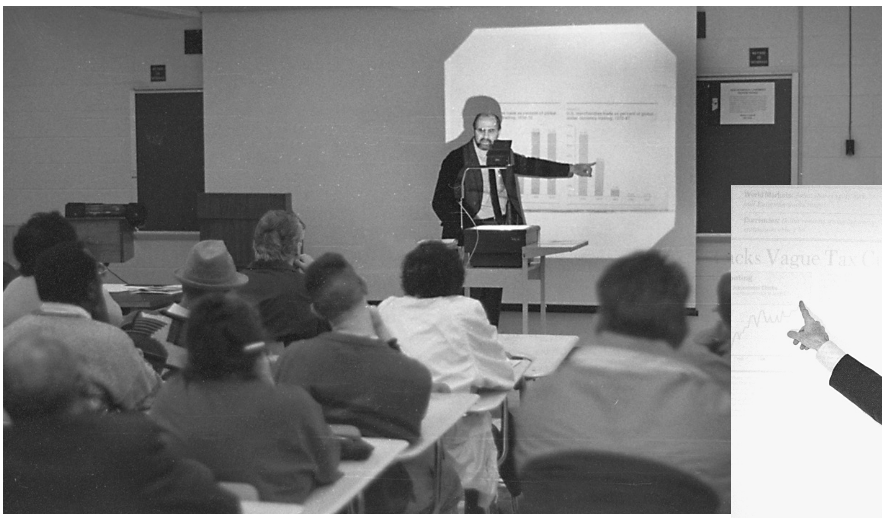
The development of the machine-tool design industry, however, requires government intervention, both to fund the industry, and then to make sure it gets into the production process. LaRouche concretely described how it was in the strategic economic interest of the U.S. and Japan to provide access to the



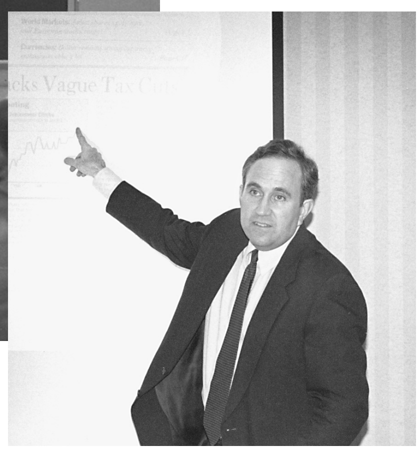
EIRNS/Stuart Lewis

EIR U.S. editor Debra Freeman (left) and New Federalist editor-in-chief Nancy Spannaus (below) give introductory remarks at the March 18 seminar.

EIRNS/Stuart Lewis



EIRNS/Chris Schmidt



EIRNS/Debra Jambor

U.S. regional conferences organize for 'New Bretton Woods System.' *Schiller Institute spokesmen Lawrence Freeman (above) and Harley Schlanger (right) address meetings in Norfolk, Va. and Houston, Tx.*

machine-tool industry (including the ability to develop their own), to China, India, and the rest of the South Asia. We need a global partnership, including Germany and Russia, and others, to develop the machine-tool capacity in this most populous, Asian region of the world.

LaRouche then described how the Eurasian Land-Bridge, a concept he helped develop, would provide the projects that would revolutionize the economies of Asia and Africa, and create projects equivalent to a mobilization for general warfare, but for development instead.

LaRouches Mobilize in Italy For a 'New Bretton Woods'

On April 2, Lyndon LaRouche and Helga Zepp LaRouche addressed a meeting held at Rome's Hotel Nazionale, a few steps from the Italian Parliament. Their presentations were attended by Members of Parliament from both houses, economists, journalists, and diplomats.

Introducing the speakers, Paolo Raimondi, President of the Italian Solidarity Movement, reminded the audience that one year ago, at a conference in Rome, the LaRouches had warned of the financial crisis, and had presented the alternative to it, in the shape of the Eurasian Land-Bridge program for massive infrastructure development.

As LaRouche explained at the outset of his remarks, "Some years ago, I presented to various places, including the government of the United States, a proposal for a plan of action in response to a crisis of the type we experienced first since last October, and now we will experience with much greater force during the second quarter of 1998.

"I propose," LaRouche continued, "that we base our actions on an historical precedent, that we take the 1950's as a period in which the postwar reconstruction efforts had demonstrated that they were going to be successful, which is under the Bretton Woods arrangement. It wasn't the Bretton Woods formula that did it alone; it was that the Bretton Woods formula was adapted, to provide a climate favorable to plans for successful physical reconstruction of war-torn and other economies."

Which was more successful—the postwar Bretton Woods system, or what


EIRNS/Christopher Lewis

European organizing for a 'New Bretton Woods System.' *Helga Zepp LaRouche addresses seminar in Stuttgart, Germany, March 20, 1998.*

'New Bretton Woods' Seminars Held in Warsaw

Only a few days after the April 16 monetary conference of the Group of 22 in Washington—at which conference the moral and policy bankruptcy of the I.M.F. was widely acknowledged, but decisive action was not taken—the Schiller Institute organized seminars in Warsaw, to bring to the Polish capital and Polish government the discussion of a "New Bretton Woods" reorganization of the world financial system.

On April 21, some one hundred people attended the New Bretton Woods seminar in the Polytechnicum Warschawski. Present were representatives of four of Poland's Ministries: the Ministries of Economic Affairs; Transportion; Agriculture; and Education, Science, and Research. Also attending were representatives from Polish academic institutions and media, and diplomats from several Eastern European and Asian nations.

Elisabeth Hellenbroich of the German Schiller Institute outlined the strategic world situation and elaborated Lyndon LaRouche's proposal for scrapping the I.M.F., and reorganizing the global financial system in a fashion modelled on the best aspects of the postwar Bretton Woods system. The next day, the Schiller Institute representatives addressed ninety students at the Warsaw Catholic Academy. A meeting also took place April 22, in the Polish Parliament, the Sejm, attended by nine members of the Parliament, along with other financial/economic experts.

we have today? "Take the system of the 1950's, and the system of the 1970's and 1980's," LaRouche suggested. "If these were automobiles, which would you buy?"

A Moral System

The most fundamental fact about the proposed new monetary system is that it is a *moral* system, LaRouche emphasized. "In other words, the new monetary system is not simply a set of rules to play football by, but actually has to be a mission-oriented system, which has an implicit purpose. The purpose is to bring a system of justice to this planet, especially economic and social justice, through the mobilization of the machine-tool-capable nations, to assist in the development, the internal development of the nations of Asia and Africa."

Helga Zepp LaRouche, chairman of the Schiller Institute, addressed the meeting after her husband. She explained that internationally in the last year, some five hundred Members of Parliament, three former Presidents, and thousands of Civil Rights leaders have endorsed the call to President Clinton to convene a New Bretton Woods conference, which was launched by Zepp LaRouche and Ukrainian economist and Member of Parliament Dr. Natalya Vitrenko.

Many of these endorsements came from Europe, including many members of the Italian Parliament, Zepp LaRouche noted. The increasing support in Europe for LaRouche's proposals is due to the fact that since last November, the "Asia crisis" has increasingly been seen, not as an "Asian," but as a global, financial crisis, and its effects, in terms of decreased exports and increased unemployment, have led to social unrest in most European countries. This is leading to "new political realignments," including in Italy.

The LaRouches' visit in Rome concluded with more meetings, including one on Africa, with priests and students from the Great Lakes region of Africa (including Burundi, Rwanda, and Congo-Zaire), and another on scientific method, with ten Italian scientists who are engaged in work on cold fusion.

EIRNS/Christopher Lewis

Conductor Anno Hellenbroich directs a rehearsal at St. Margaretha Catholic Church, Ampfing, Germany.

Schiller Institute Performs Bach's 'St. John Passion'

During Holy Week, prior to Easter, the chorus and orchestra of the Schiller Institute in Germany performed excerpts from J.S. Bach's "St. John Passion" at the St. Margaretha Catholic Church in Ampfing, a small town in Bavaria. Approximately three hundred people attended.

Father Haimerl welcomed the musicians and the audience, and stressed that, with Bach's music, the Holy Week, a time of reflection about the death of Christ, and man's role in the succession of Christ, is most appropriately opened.

The performance started with the magnificent opening chorus "Herr unser Herrscher (Lord, our Master)." Next was performed the choral "Dein Will gescheh (Thy will must all Creation do)." This was followed by the "Von den Stricken meiner Sünden (From the shackles of my vices)," the aria "Ich folge Dir gleichfalls (I follow Thee also)," and the choral "Petrus, der nicht denkt zurück (Peter, while his conscience slept)."

The music continued, with the chorales, "Christus, der uns selig macht (Christ, who knew no sin or wrong)" and "Ach grosser Koenig (Ah, mighty King)." These were followed by the Arioso, "Betrachte, meine Seel (Bethink thee, o my soul)." A smaller chorus of twenty-five singers then sang two polyphonic settings: "Kreuzige! (Crucify!)" and "Lasset uns den nicht zerteilen (Let us rend not nor divide it)." Between these two, the full chorus sang the choral, "In meines Herzens Grunde (Within my heart's recesses)." Next came the aria "Mein teurer Heiland (O Thou my Saviour)." Then, the concluding pieces, which represent the final resolution to the ideas outlined in the opening chorus, were performed, again by the full chorus: "Ruht wohl, ihr heiligen Gebeine (Rest well, beloved, sweetly sleeping)" and the choral "Ach Herr, lass dein lieb Engelein (Ah Lord, when comes that final day)." These two parts express both the mourning for the death of Christ, and the triumph over death through eternal life.

At the end of the performance, Father Haimerl thanked the musicians for having "lighted a lamp, that will burn for some time" in those who attended this performance.

The new crisis whose onset now grips Russia, and, soon, much of the rest of the planet, must be welcomed, gratefully, as the needed crisis which prompts us to do the good we were unlikely to attempt otherwise. We see this crisis as the opportunity to defeat, to free us from that religious quality of monetarist fervor which is presently the greatest threat to civilization.

Russia: A Coup from Above

by Lyndon H. LaRouche, Jr.

March 24, 1998

On the morning of March 23, 1998, international news dispatches from Moscow featured the announcement of an ongoing purge of the Russian government of Prime Minister Viktor Chernomyrdin, ordered by President Boris Yeltsin. The principal details of the changes, including names of those key figures who, thus far, were dumped, or remain, or have been newly promoted, are documented in the accompanying report ["The Ides of March: Russia Crisis Breaks," *EIR,* April 3, 1998]. Our task here, is to provide the reader an appropriate insight into the strategic circumstances in which this coup from above has occurred.

The timing of the coup was obvious. The facts had been summarized by Russia's prominent leading younger economist, Dr. Sergei Glazyev, in a piece written at the beginning of this year.[1] At the time, last Autumn, the global systemic financial-monetary crisis was targetting Korea, Japan, and Indonesia, Russia had postponed a similar collapse by an hysterically inflationary bail-out, through short-term international financing at loan-shark interest-rates. Come March, as the end of the first quarter of calendar year 1998 approached, the financial, economic, and social pressures of this bail-out financing terrified Russia's leading political circles. In such circumstances, whatever might be likely to occur under such circumstances, were likely to begin building up now, echoing the scenario which began during October of 1997.

As in the case of the man who came down suddenly with a severe case of influenza, the infection with such potential developments as this coup from above, was present. However, the patient's disposition to come down with a severe attack of this infection, was a result of his general circumstances of stress, and the weakened condition of his immune system.

Historical Precedents

Coup in Russia? The historically literate mind recalls images of the famous 1905 and 1917 revolutions. The first of these was triggered by the combination of a London-orchestrated, international financial crisis of 1905-1907, and the impact of the Russo-Japanese War. The second, was the reflection of economic disaster, combined with large, useless losses of peasant soldiers in the foolish continuation of Russia's hopeless war against Germany. In both cases, the confluence of a social and economic crisis, intersected a general loss of confidence in the potential usefulness of a discredited government. Given, a spectrum of previously established nuclei of revolutionary political institutions, and a seemingly endless worsening of combined social, economic, and political crises under the existing government, mass-based revolutionary ferment was likely.

There are analogous leading features in Russia's situation now.

That historically literate mind, if it had studied the discussions which occupied the minds of both the various revolutionary organizations, and their national and foreign opponents, from those periods, would see those Russian revolutions somewhat as the leading European revolutionaries of 1917-1923 saw them, as echoes of the revolutionary developments in the France of 1789-1794. This was the view of revolution which had been popularized by Karl Marx and others during the middle decades of the Nineteenth century. This was the view commonplace among the collaborators and opponents of Karl Kautsky within the leading social-democratic and Bolshevik circles of the pre-1914 debates. These are more or less

1. Sergei Glazyev, "Key Measures for a Transition to Economic Growth in Russia," *Executive Intelligence Review,* March 27, 1998 (Vol. 25, No. 13).

This article first appeared in Executive Intelligence Review (EIR), April 3, 1998 (Vol. 25, No. 14).

the terms of reference which automatically come to the minds of historically literate circles among Russia policy-shapers since the successive upheavals of 1989-1993.

We shall therefore turn, briefly, but necessarily, to identifying those presently crucial historical issues of the 1789-1794 French Revolution, which are indispensable for an effective political-strategic understanding of the revolutionary crisis presently gripping not only Russia, but the world as a whole, throughout the remainder of 1998.

The legacies of the earlier Russian revolutions, and of the institutions to which they led, are prominent, and more or less dominant, among the cultural influences from the past, which shape the actions and reactions of the principal players on the Russian stage today.

Those sundry revolutionaries of those past periods, from Marx through the social-democrats and Bolsheviks of 1917-1923, were victims of fundamental errors of assumption respecting the nature of man, history, and society. Those are not minor errors, but axiomatic errors, errors otherwise described as "crucial," or fundamental. Nonetheless, despite those errors, as Rosa Luxemburg described her old factional opponents from Russia, Lenin and Trotsky, "they dared." Although each of them erred greatly in identifying the underlying principles of those historical transformations, they are not to be regarded as anything less than highly qualified professional revolutionaries, professional makers of history. From the evidence of their deeds, only an idiot would deny that these revolutionary leaders obviously understood something. The crucial errors in their understanding, we must reject; but they were not half as misguided, or ignorant, as those foolish statesmen, who approach the present global situation with the delusion that the immediate weeks and months ahead are not a revolutionary interval of history, in the strictest sense of that term.

This is most clearly relevant in face of the presently onrushing revolutionary crisis in Russia today. It is crucial, that President Clinton and his policy advisers (among others) recognize, that whatever comes out of the months immediately before us, it will be a revolutionary change of some kind. At this moment, the prospect of a revolutionary change—of one sort, or another—inside Russia, is an agenda-item of high priority.

May 1919: Vladimir Lenin, Red Square.

Novosti/Corbis-Bettmann

Russia's Legacy from the French Revolution

The fact which makes the present global revolutionary situation so extraordinarily dangerous, is that the majority of the leading circles of government and finance, around the world, are presently, clinically insane. As one leading banker described the situation, the majority among those circles which will decide the outcome of the mid-April monetary conferences in Washington, D.C., is gripped by a devotion to the lunacy of their existing financial and related policies of "globalization" and "liberalization," which can be fairly described only as a passion of extreme, blind religious fervor, an obsessive quality of religious delusion: in this case, the pagan worship of *Fortuna*. The currently prevailing insanity among the neo-conservatives of finance and politics, is an inquisitional quality of lunatic religious fervor, brimming with bloody-handed bigotry.

Unless the unlikely occurs, and the U.S.A. pushes through the kind of radical "new Bretton Woods" reforms I have identified, the way in which the bankers and governments of the world will react to the global financial and monetary crises of 1998's second quarter, will be the worst disaster yet. Already, the financial markets of Tokyo and New York City, are propped up only by the most lunatic form of hyperinflationary printing-press-money outflow since the Weimar hyperinflation of 1921-1923. The result will come much quicker, and with far greater force than during 1921-1923. If my proposals are not adopted during the relevant April meetings, the second half of 1998 will experience the end of the present international financial, monetary, and banking system, the worst crisis of this planet in modern history.

After such an orgy of futile, but axiomatically hyperinflationary attempts at global "bail-out" of banks, during the second quarter of 1998, the game ends. After the immediate results of that orgy of "religious fervor" during the second

The revolutionaries from Marx through the Bolsheviks, were victims of fundamental errors of assumption respecting the nature of man, history, and society. Nonetheless, although Lenin and Trotsky erred greatly, they are not to be regarded as anything less than highly qualified professional revolutionaries, professional makers of history. They were not half as misguided, or ignorant, as those foolish statesmen, who approach the present global situation with the delusion that the immediate weeks and months ahead are not a revolutionary interval of history, in the strictest sense of that term.

quarter of this year, the next change will be a "thermonuclear" chain-reaction of reversed financial leverage within the world's system of casino side-bets, what John Hoefle of *EIR's* economics desk has described as a "three-hundred-pound flea" sucking upon a "forty-pound dog," what is otherwise known as the looniest financial bubble in history, the hot-air bubble of "hedge funds" and financial "derivatives."

The present, if temporary hegemony of the religious fervor among most of such lunatic "religious" bigots controlling international financial and related policies today, is the crucial factor which makes the present situation, inside and outside Russia, a revolutionary situation today.

That setting for oncoming short-term, global developments, is the context in which Russia's recent coup from above must be situated. Therefore, a summary of the relevant features of the French Revolution's legacy of myths, is indispensable for understanding both the internal situation, and international setting of Russia-in-crisis now. Look at the most crucial French events of 1789-1794 from this vantage-point. There are crucial features of that history which should remind us of the recent history of Russia in particular, and most of this planet in general.

Despite France's earlier loss of the power to independently challenge the British monarchy's growing maritime power, pre-1789 France was the most advanced nation of the world in science and technology, and the nation with the most powerful economy. Then, toward the close of the U.S. War of Independence, the clouds darkened over continental Europe. The opening scene in the ensuing tragedy of King Louis XVI's France, began during the 1783 phase of negotiations of the peace between the United States and its ally France, on the one side, and the British monarchy, on the other. The seeds of France's destruction were sown in the setting provided by wily Lord Shelburne's brief occupation of the post of Britain's Prime Minister.

Out of these peace negotiations, came a curious cohabitation between the Physiocrats associated with A.-R. Turgot, on the one side, and the British East India Company's Shelburne and Jeremy Bentham, on the other. The harpoon, designed by Shelburne, which destroyed the French whale, was France's submission to the British demand for a "free trade" agreement.[2]

To enforce that agreement, France was guided by its Finance Minister, Jacques Necker, a notorious asset of British intelligence, a Swiss banker from Lausanne, otherwise known as the father of the infamous Madame de Staël, she a bimbo fit to strut on Kenneth Starr's chorus line.[3] Necker was very successful; within several years, he had bankrupted France! The superimposition of "free trade" was used, by Necker *et al.,* to turn the French war-debt into an instrument of destruction of France's public finance. The network of agents built up by Venice's Paris-based super-spy, Abbé Antonio Conti, was already awaiting the opportunity to strike France from within. The French Revolution was soon on.

Inside France, Necker had interesting allies. Turgot aside, the most prominent was a British agent, a perennial enemy of Benjamin Franklin among freemasonic circles, the Duke of Orléans otherwise known as "Philippe Egalité." It was Orléans who organized and directed the mob which led the assault on that then-virtually emptied prison known as the Bastille; this assault was staged by Orléans as an election-campaign stunt on behalf of Orléans' demand, that King Louis XVI appoint Jacques Necker as France's Prime Minister, the same Necker who, as Finance Minister, had just previously bankrupted France, a lunacy comparable to appointing Kenneth Starr, or Speaker Newt Gingrich, White House Chief of

2. Lord Shelburne, the key figure of the British East India Company and of Barings Bank, had engaged Adam Smith, beginning 1763, to devise a scheme for destroying both the economy of France and the independence of the young enemy then growing up in the English colonies in North America. Smith's 1776 anti-American tract, his *Wealth of Nations,* largely a plagiaristic copying of the work of Turgot, was the most notable consequence of his engagement by Shelburne. Banker Shelburne is the principal author of the notions of "free trade" popularized by his protégés Adam Smith and Jeremy Bentham. His role, as Prime Minister, in negotiating the November 1782 secret treaty of peace with the United States, was to further Necker's use of "free trade" as the ruse for bankrupting France. That lesson from history applies to the situation in Russia and numerous other economies ruined by "liberal economics" today.
3. The relations between the family of Necker and British intelligence is among the more disgusting footnotes of French and Swiss history from the late Eighteenth century.

Staff for President Bill Clinton. The same Orléans, a short time later, organized and armed a mob which he led to the Palace of Versailles, to capture and imprison his cousin the King.

As a result of such developments, the friends of the United States were purged, sent to prison, or even guillotined.[4] British agents among the leaders of the Jacobin Terror, such as Maximilien Robespierre, Georges Danton, and the London-trained Swiss mass-murderer, Jean-Paul Marat, took charge. Soon, the fanatical romantic Paul Barras grabbed power, and brought his protégé, Napoleon Bonaparte, into the latter's role in misshaping the law and other institutions of France, transforming France into a caricature of that "whore of Babylon" known as the Roman Empire, replete with "Sun King" Emperor Bonaparte consecrating himself as "Pontifex Maximus" of the state religion.

There are two most crucial, distinct, but interdependent follies of Marx and the socialists generally, errors which were crucial in misshaping the outcome of the Russian revolutions of 1905 and 1917. It is urgent, given the presently acute, revolutionary and pre-revolutionary situations now developing rapidly inside Russia and many other parts of world, that those errors not be committed yet once again.

The first error, is the assumption of "proletarianism," itself a romantic conception traced to a wild misrepresentation of the nature of the social structure of the Roman Empire. That is the assumption, typified by the pro-satanic doctrine of Bernard Mandeville's *Fable of the Bees,* that the anarchic, intrinsically entropic expression of individual lust, is both the "natural" driving-force of social processes, and that this kinematic random walk among anarchically contending, irrational impulses, functions as a kind of secretion, whose outcome is presumed to be appropriate ruling ideas.[5] This error underlies that kind of deluded faith in the non-existent, but supposed cure-all properties of "democracy." This is the same notion of "democracy," as presently advocated by the U.S. National Endowment for Democracy, which had tended, in each relevant, known case since ancient Greece, to transform gravely troubled "democratic" societies into the most awful tyrannies.

The second error, is the cult of empiricism. This is largely the combined outgrowth of Venice's Sixteenth-century reintroduction of Byzantine Aristoteleanism into the western Europe of the Latin Rite, and the subsequent introduction of Paolo Sarpi's Ockhamite dogma of empiricism. This is the same cult of materialism which pervades every variety of political-economy widely taught in universities today.

As the relevant evidence and argument is presented in earlier editions of *EIR,* and in other locations, the errors just identified have the following practical implication both for the way in which Marxists and empiricists generally misperceive history, and also in causing the worst among those follies of shaping of economic policy and practice, which commonly cause the worst economic and related crises. The needed corrections are, summarily, the following.

First, the possibility of "more," relies absolutely upon the specific, cognitive ability, existing only among individuals of the human species, to generate, assimilate, and employ those discoveries of physical principle, and related types of ideas, by means of which the human species' *per-capita* power over the physical universe, is increased.

The ability to transmit validated discoveries of physical and other principle,

4. Exemplary are the case of Tom Paine and the Marquis de Lafayette. Lafayette's case was dramatized by Ludwig van Beethoven's opera *Fidelio,* in which the villain *Pizzaro* (Lord Shelburne's puppet, English Prime Minister William Pitt the Younger) imprisons *Florestan* Lafayette in a dungeon (actually, the Austrian imperial dungeon at Olmütz). Lafayette was imprisoned, in 1792, on orders from London, by the ultra-reactionary predecessor of Metternich, suspect in the death of Wolfgang Mozart, Chancellor Wenzel von Kaunitz, and remained endungeoned until he was freed, in 1797, largely through the intercessions of his wife, *Leonore* (Adrienne Lafayette).

5. *The Fable of the Bees: Private Vices, Public Virtues* (1734) (London: Reprint, 1934). This work is, according to the late Friedrich von Hayek, the "Bible" of the Mont Pelerin Society. It is also the kernel of Adam Smith's argument in his 1759 *The Theory of the Moral Sentiments,* and the argument Smith uses, in his 1776 *Wealth of Nations,* for the adoption of François Quesnay's *laissez-faire* as Smith's notion that "free trade" is the art of the "Invisible Hand."

There are two crucial follies, which were crucial in misshaping the outcome of the Russian revolutions of 1905 and 1917. The first error, is the assumption of 'proletarianism,' the assumption that the anarchic, intrinsically entropic expression of individual lust, is both the 'natural' driving-force of social processes, and that this random walk among irrational impulses, functions as a kind of secretion, whose outcome is presumed to be appropriate ruling ideas. The second error is the cult of empiricism, the same cult of materialism which pervades every variety of political-economy widely taught in universities today.

from one mind to another, requires the development of culture, in the same sense that we require progress in increasing the number of validated known physical principles and their technological derivatives. Hence, the relationship between the human individual and economy is total. For example, "economic man" does not exist, nor is there any purely "economic" doctrine which accounts for the direction of developments within actual economies. Every aspect of human activity, bearing upon the generation, transmission, and assimilation of validatable kinds of ideas of physical principle, social relations, and the nature of the human cognitive functions of discovery of such principles, acts to determine the outcome of economic relations between the society and nature in general.

Second, we have the matter of that great conflict which has always dominated mankind's struggle to bring to an end forms of society, in which large rations of the total population are reduced to the relative status of "human cattle": slavery, serfdom, and so forth. In Christianity, this distinction is presented as the policy, that it is equally true of each individual man or woman, with no allowance for any ethnic or racial distinction among persons, that each person is made in the image of the Creator. This signifies a power of cognition unique to the human individual among living species, a quality sometimes identified as "the divine spark of reason." This is a quality typified by the processes of the individual mind, by means of which that mind generates a validated discovery of a physical principle.

This latter conception of the human individual is inseparable from the notions of truth and justice, as those notions are addressed in the dialogues of Plato. The principle is, that each individual is efficiently accountable for truthfulness and for a sense of justice, accountable in the sense, that the measure of truthfulness and justice does not depend upon manifest coincidence with the expressed opinion of a majority, or even a large minority. Indeed, all progress in the human condition, economically or otherwise, occurs in no other way, than a validatable rejection of "mainstream opinion."

"Majority rule" has no intrinsic merit. Most of the time, on most issues, the majority has been wrong; that will always be true, by the very nature of progress. The progress of society, its capacity for truthfulness and justice, depends absolutely upon the willingness of the majority to submit to the contrary opinion of even a single person, when that person is able to show, by no other means than reason itself, that the majority must change its belief, if truth and justice are to be served. The object of good society, is not rule by majority opinion, but rather rule by good conscience.

That means, that reason, and reason alone, is the efficient political means by which governments themselves must be governed. That means, that to have such a society, it is essential that every child be developed in the ability to be ruled, to rule, and to be self-ruled by such commitment to service of truth and universal justice; that that society has no different purpose, in effect, than to establish agreement in practice in this way. The good society is not one in which existing opinions are merely counted, with authority given to the majority of votes; the good society, is one in which no person will force an opinion upon another, except by processes of open deliberation, in which the rule of accountability to reason is allowed the freest play.

On this account, the greatest statesmen, such as Benjamin Franklin or Friedrich Schiller and Wilhelm von Humboldt, have laid the stress on a Classical humanist mode of primary and secondary education, to develop thus those intellectual and moral capabilities of the individual human mind, upon which a society's ability to be self-ruled by reason, chiefly depends.

The latter point made, we might ask ourselves, how, since virtually no society has ever consented, in actual practice, to rule by reasonable deliberation, did societies ever progress? Generally, great progress occurs only in circumstances of threat of terrifying crises, in which frightening crisis, or prospect of crisis, shows much of the population the manifest failure of previously prevailing opin-

Corbis-Bettmann

June 20, 1791: Jacobin mob invades the French Assembly, demanding death to the aristocracy.

ions. Wars and revolutions, have been not the exclusive circumstances for progress, but, in history to date, the most likely ones. The fearful prospect of the consequences of heteronomy, impels a population to rally around those leaders who speak with a clear voice of reason. At other times, heteronomy is more likely to prevail. Therefore, the new crisis whose onset now grips Russia, and, soon, much of the rest of the planet, must be welcomed, gratefully, as the needed crisis which prompts us to do the good we were unlikely to attempt otherwise. We see this crisis as the opportunity to defeat, to free us from that religious quality of monetarist fervor which is presently the greatest threat to civilization.

Prints and Photographs Division, Library of Congress

July 4, 1776: The Declaration of Independence is presented to the Continental Congress. Included in the drafting committee are Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Jefferson, and John Adams.

The practical question is, how to develop a society to such a degree, that crisis is no longer the only strict teacher of truth to governments and popular majorities.

Consider the French Revolution in this light.

The Actual Conflict

The problem has been, that European civilization has never fully freed itself from the legacy of that Whore of Babylon known variously as the Roman and Byzantine Empires. European feudalism was a continuation of that degeneracy. This evil of feudalism was chiefly expressed in two social formations. The one, was the feudal landed aristocracy; the second, was a financier oligarchy, whose roots can be readily traced to the time of ancient Akkadian dynasties.

There is a crucial, additional feature of the feudal tradition: its brutish notion of law. Since ancient empires and feudalism were based upon the reduction of more than ninety percent of humanity to the "human cattle" serving the interests of a relatively tiny oligarchy, a true natural law could not be tolerated by any empire, or by any society which harbors an oligarchy.

The characteristic function of every oligarchical model of society, is to serve the perceived interest of oligarchism. The function of the empire, was to select a chief magistrate, such as a hereditary or other tyrant, who would serve as a surrogate for the entirety of the oligarchy in matters of law. The law became, thus, the expressed will of that surrogate for the collective will of the oligarchy as a whole.

This tyrannical essence of pre-modern society was often slightly tempered by the notion of customs, notably including the legally authorized customs, in religion, or otherwise, of subject peoples. Otherwise, there was no universal principle of individual human nature, which bound the oligarchy to any principle of truth or justice founded upon a universal agency of reason. Thus, the characteristic of the law of oligarchical societies, is its intolerance toward such notions of a natural law.

There is a derived feature of oligarchical society which played a dominant role in the French Revolution, under the Jacobins and under Napoleon Bonaparte. Since the original, Mesopotamian, Whore of Babylon, the administration of society by the oligarchy itself, has depended upon a more numerous body of oligarchical lackeys, constituting a permanent bureaucracy in the government of the society's affairs. In the case of both the Jacobin tyranny and the tyranny of Napoleon, and also in the cooperation of Britain with von Kaunitz and Metternich, the common motive underlying the process, from 1789 through 1848, and beyond, was the common desire to exterminate the young United States, to crush it, as it were an unwanted infant, in the cradle. The earliest objective, was to prevent that American model of republic from spreading successfully into Europe; once France had been integrated into a Europe jointly ruled by Britain and the Holy Alliance, the common object was to isolate and destroy the United States itself.

So, from 1814 through 1848, all of Europe was the mortal enemy of the United States. In this process, both the

In the case of both the Jacobin tyranny and the tyranny of Napoleon, and also in the cooperation of Britain with von Kaunitz and Metternich, the common motive underlying the process from 1789 through 1848, and beyond, was the common desire to exterminate the young United States, to crush it, as it were an unwanted infant, in the cradle. The earliest objective, was to prevent that American model of republic from spreading successfully into Europe; once France had been integrated into a Europe jointly ruled by Britain and the Holy Alliance, the common object was to isolate and destroy the United States itself.

Jacobin tyrants and the Napoleonic state bureaucracy of France, were merely lackey-instruments, in service to European oligarchical interest.

Thus, for reasons supplied in earlier locations, the form of modern European society, in Europe and in the Americas, as this developed during the Seventeenth through Twentieth centuries, had two sets of determining features. To the degree that the influence of the republican forces either established a republic, as in the case of the U.S.A., or forced approximations of nation-state republic conditions upon reluctant oligarchical potencies, all modern European society acquired a dual character. On the one side, there was the oligarchy, represented by its two leading types, landed aristocracy and financier oligarchy. On the opposing side, the combined classes of productive entrepreneurs, professionals, and others, who constituted the social forces of national economy. In this process, the frictional conflict between financier oligarch and landed aristocrat was typified by Britain's use of its Mazzinian agents, to weaken and ultimately wreck the political power of continental landed aristocracy. In this way, more and more, the conflict in society became essentially the relationship between the parasite, the financier oligarchy, and host-victim, the social forces of national economy.

Russia's Intellectual Crisis

This issue of the truth about the French Revolution, is an essential part of the key to solving Russia's most crippling intellectual crisis: the fact, that it has yet to undertake the needed scope and depth of rational review of the roots for what is popularly identified by many as "the failure of Soviet Communism." Under Gorbachev, Russia leaped, blindly, out of the ship of Soviet Communism, into the most radically decadent slum of so-called "western" economy, and that with the combined zeal and awkwardness of a drunken sailor storming the bed of a common prostitute. One should not be astonished by the relevant result.

On the other side, we have national economies, such as those of the United States and Germany, which had previously accomplished virtual "economic miracles," until the late 1960's, through investment in development of infrastructure, and in energy- and capital-intense scientific and technological progress. Now, both are destroying themselves with the same monetarist carpetbagging tricks of "mergers and acquisitions" which have looted the remains of former Soviet national resources and capital improvements of Russia. At present, this has gone almost to the point that national extinction of Germany and the U.S.A. is now already visible, on the horizon a few years ahead.

If Russia does not change suddenly, it is doomed, and that very soon. If it attempts to change, without participation in early agreement to the appropriate, revolutionary "New Bretton Woods" system, Russia might survive as a national identity in the long run, but at the price of a terrible sacrifice in the medium-term.

Thus, we see the religious fervor of the lunatic majorities: among policy-shapers in the U.S.A. and western Europe, and in the failure of the majority of Russia's leaders to settle intellectual accounts with the fatal flaws of the legacies adopted by Soviet Communism. For both cases, the common solution ought to be clear; we must, at last, rid this planet of the vestiges of that feudal relic which is financier oligarchy. The solution is clear; we need but rally the institutions of national economy, freed of the encumbrance of financier-oligarchy. Then, we might embark on the kinds of international cooperation in national development, which have proven themselves repeatedly, as in responses to crisis, in many nations, during recent centuries.

The coup from above will not succeed in even the relatively short-term. Symptomatic responses will not still the mounting disquiet. The actual source of energy for the political instability, must be addressed, directly. The heart of the solution is to recognize the real enemy. Since he is bankrupt, in fact, we have but to put him through the obvious, sensible, liquidation in bankruptcy, by means of which we may rid ourselves of that cause of our affliction, that parasite, once, and, hopefully, for all.

Those changes are the choice of revolution which must be made. If we fail to take that option, then we are doomed to other kinds of revolutions none of our nations were likely to survive. What we are seeing in the circumstances behind Russia's recent coup from above, is the shudder of leaves at the edge of the oncoming storm. That storm will devastate us all, unless we quench, very, very soon, the religious fervor of that present lunatic majority among the policy-shaping set.

A Dream of Alexander the Great, at the Crossroads of East and West

The Alexandria Library Will Be Reborn

The news released by the Egyptian government, that the international project to rebuild the old library of Alexandria was nearing completion, must be classed not merely as an item of specialist interest, but as an event of world historical importance. For, the Alexandria library was not merely one among many ancient institutions, to be commemorated for the sake of antiquity: it was a model of the educational institutions required to create geniuses, today as then.

Throughout history, mankind has created institutions of culture which prove to be the crucibles for scientific advance, among them, the Academy at Athens, the great Madrasas of the Islamic Renaissance, the cathedral schools of medieval Europe, Groote's Brethren of the Common Life, the Humboldt education system, the *Ecole Polytechnique* of Gaspard Monge, to name only a few. And, from earliest times, the greatest advances in social progress have been associated with civilizations whose rulers placed emphasis on the importance of libraries: It was through the establishment of libraries that Greek culture radiated learning to broader circles.

www.arttoday.com

Scholars consult scrolls in one of the halls of the ancient library of Alexandria, in this Nineteenth-century illustration.

In Islam, the great caliphs of the Abbasid dynasty (A.D. 750-1258) dedicated enormous sums of money and time to collecting books. The idea was, that in order for a society to advance, it must have at its disposal the best products of the human mind, from anywhere in the world, any religious tradition, and from any period of history. Thus, the legendary Baghdad caliph Harun al Rashid and his follower al Mamun, sent emissaries throughout the world, to find manuscripts of philosophical, scientific, and other works. So, too, the immensely rich culture of Andalusia in Muslim Spain, was largely a product of the indefatigable efforts of leaders like Abd al Rahman III (A.D. 912-961) and Al Hakim II (A.D. 961-976), to collect the fruits of learning in central locations, for scholars and ordinary citizens to benefit from. Similarly, the advances of Renaissance Italy would be unthinkable without the collection of manuscripts by such humanists as Francesco Petrarca and the protagonists of the Council of Florence.

This practice goes back to the ancient world, to Greece, and the library at Alexandria was its most illustrious example. But it was not the only one, nor the first. Book collecting was widespread among intellectuals and political figures in ancient Greece. Even the Athenian tyrant Pisistratus (605-527 B.C.) was a lover of music and culture, and was reputed to be the first to commission a group to assemble and edit the works of the great epic poet Homer. He is also reported to have been the founder of the first public library in Athens. It was known that the great dramatist Euripides (480-406 B.C.) had a large collection of books, although details about them are lacking. Plato (427-348 B.C.) collected manuscripts during his many travels to Magna Graecia, and his student Clearchus (d. 353 B.C.) was reported to have founded a library. In Pergamum, where a school of the Stoics was founded, the library, founded by Eumenes II, was known as the Pergameniana, and boasted 200,000 rolls of papyrus or parchment. (From the second century B.C., Pergamum was the center of the production of parchment, which was the writing material made from the skins of animals, used to produce books.) Antioch was another site of a great library in the ancient world, which, under Antiochus IV, became an intellectual center.

But the greatest library of all was that at Alexandria.

The Vision of Alexander the Great

It was Alexander, rightly named the Great, who, after having conquered Egypt, undertook to found a city bearing his name—as he would do throughout Asia—which was to be a commercial crossroads between East and West, as well as a cultural and scientific center of the world. Alexander made the momentous decision on January 20, in the year 331 B.C., when he saw the site at Rakotis, in the Nile delta, where the island of Pharos jutted out into the Mediterranean. He ordered his architect Dinocrates to chart out a plan for the city. In 323 B.C., after Alexander's untimely death, the satrapy of Egypt fell into the hands of Ptolemy, and it was under the Ptolemies—Ptolemy I Soter (323-283 B.C.) and his son Ptolemy II (285-246 B.C.)—that Alexandria city was developed.

The city, which was to become the largest in the Greek world, was divided into three districts, or quarters, populated, respectively, by Egyptians, Greeks, and Jews. Graced with ample wide avenues and magnificent marble and stone buildings, the city was considered indestructible. There were four great buildings which stood out above the rest. The first was the Soma, which was built to house the body of Alexander, embalmed and encased in gold. Next was the Serapeum, with the Temple of Serapis for worship. Then, there was the museum, located in the Greek quarter known as the Brucheion. This was actually a center of study, with lecture rooms, galleries, and housing for hundreds of students, who could reside there and study. The students undertook to copy manuscripts, to edit them, to study them, and to conduct research of their own. The institution which provided them the material, was the famed library, the Alexandriana. The library was organized in ten large halls, each of which corresponded to a branch of learning. In each hall, there were thousands of manuscripts, carefully catalogued and classified.

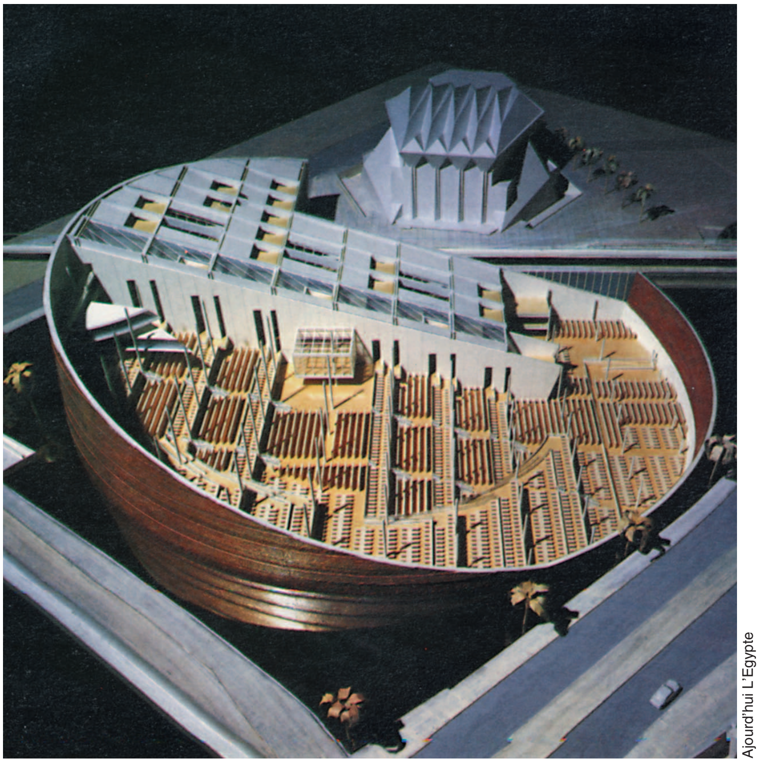
Among the many accounts in the ancient world of the building of the fabulous library and museum, there are numerous divergences as to who actually constructed it, whether Ptolemy Soter, under the recommendation of Demetrius of Phaleron, in 295 B.C., or Ptolemy II, "Philadelphus," his son and successor. According to the version provided by Epiphanius (A.D. 320-403):

"Now, the successor of the first Ptolemy [Soter] and the second of the kings of Alexandria was, as we said, Ptolemy, surnamed Philadelphus. He was a lover of all that is beautiful and of literature, and built a library in that same city of Alexandria in the Bruchium so-called . . . which he placed under the charge of one Demetrius of Phalarene. Him he bade collect the books in existence in every quarter of the world, and he wrote letters importuning every king and governor on earth to send ungrudgingly the books [that were within his realm or government]; I mean the works of poets and prose writers, orators and sophists, physicians, professors of medicine, historians, and so on.

"One day, when the business was proceeding apace and the books were being assembled from all quarters, the king asked his librarian how many volumes had [already] been collected in the library. He made answer to the king and said: 'There are already 54,800, more or less. But I hear that there is still a great mass of writings in the world, among the Ethiopians and Indians, the Persians and Elamites and Babylonians, the Assyrians and Chaldaeans, among the Romans also and the Phoenicians, the Syrians, and them of Hellas. . . . There are, moreover, with them of Jerusalem and Judaea certain divine books of the prophets, which tell of God and the creation of the world and contain all other teaching that is for the general good. Wherefore, O king, if it is thy Majesty's pleasure to send for these, also do thou write to the doctors in Jerusalem, and they will send them to thee.' "[1]

This, Ptolemy did. According to an account given in an annotation in the Fifteenth-century parchment text of a work by the Roman playwright Plautus, known as the *Plautine scolium* from Caecius, the following occurred:

"Alexander of Aetolia, Lycophron of Chalcis, and Zenodotus of Ephesus, at the request of King Ptolemy Philadelphus by surname, who wonderfully favored the talents and the fame of learned men, gathered together the poetical books of Greek authorship and arranged them in order: Alexander the tragedies, Lycophron the comedies, and Zenodotus the poems of Homer and of other illustrious poets. For that king, well acquainted with the philosophers and other famous authors, having had the volumes sought out at the expense of the royal munificence all over the world as far as possible by Demetrius of Phaleron (and other counsellors), made two libraries, one outside the palace, the other within it. In the outer library, there were 42,800 volumes; in the inner, palace library, 400,000 mixed volumes and 90,000 single volumes and digests, according to Callimachus, a man of the court and royal librarian, who also wrote the titles for the several volumes. Eratosthenes, not very much later the custodian of the same library, also makes this same statement. These learned volumes, which [Demetrius] was able to obtain, were of all people and languages; and the

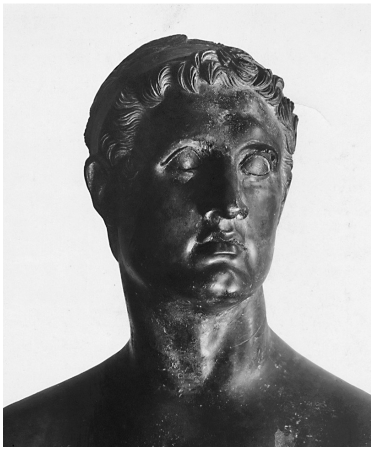


Cut-away architectural model shows interior plan of the new library.

king caused them to be translated into his own language, with the utmost diligence, by excellent interpreters."[2]

Ptolemy Philadelphus, who succeeded his father in 284 B.C., ruled over a vast empire, in a period of flourishing trade. He inaugurated vast infrastructure projects, promoted the construction of new cities, and encouraged immigration. During his rule, the empire counted about seven million inhabitants, living in 33,000 cities and villages. Ptolemy's teachers, who imbued him with a love of classical learning, had been the poet Philetas, the grammarian Zenodotos of Ephesus, later the first head of the library, and the philosopher Straton, who taught him Greek and the sciences. Ptolemy Philadelphus followed the example of Alexander in his encouragement of natural sciences. It is related, that he sent emissaries abroad, in search of unusual animals, which he wanted brought back to Alexandria for study. His envoys travelled to India and throughout the Arab world, and brought back not only animals, but in-depth reports on the lands and customs they observed.

Corbis



The Granger Collection, NY

UPI/Corbis-Bettmann

Dynasty founder Ptolemy I Soter, a general of Alexander's army (top). His son, Ptolemy II Philadelphus (left). Cleopatra, last of Egypt's ruling Ptolemies (right).

This great library became the center of learning of the world for over nine hundred years, and, in particular, a repository of the great accomplishments of Classical Greece. It attracted the greatest minds of Hellenistic culture like a magnet, minds like Straton, the comic poet Philemon (c. 361-262 B.C.), the geometer Euclid (fl. c. 300 B.C.), the physician Herophilus, Theodoros, the philosopher Hegesias of Cyrene, the poet Callimachus (c. 305-240 B.C.), his pupil Eratosthenes (275-194 B.C.), and many more. Among the librarians said to have been appointed to supervise the great institution, were Zenodotus, the tragic poet Alexander of Aetolia, Callimachus, and Eratosthenes. Others included Apollonius of Alexandria, the lexicographer Aristophanes of Byzantium (257-180 B.C.), and Aristarchus of Samothrace (c. 217-145 B.C.). And, because of the library, Alexandria became a center radiating the heritage of Classical (i.e., Platonist) philosophy and science throughout the Greek-speaking Mediterranean, in the years preceding and following the birth of Christ—as reflected in both the works of the Jewish philosopher Philo of Alexandria, and the New Testament *Gospel of John* and *Epistles of Paul*.

From the time of the reign of Ptolemy II, the king himself was an integral part of the intellectual process centered in the library. It is reported that Philadelphus, eager to expand his learning, went to listen to the lectures given by the scholars, and, like his father and Alexander, organized literary competitions.[3] Under his son and successor, Ptolemy Euergetes (246-221 B.C.), this tradition was carried forward, as the ruler attracted more men of learning to the city, and actively participated in the research activity they carried out. It was in the reign of Ptolemy Euergetes, that the great Eratosthenes was invited to Alexandria, from Athens. He arrived in 228 or 226 B.C., and took on the responsibility of librarian. Eratosthenes, who was renowned as a grammarian, poet, philosopher, historian, and mathematician—indeed, revered as a "second Plato,"—conducted research, experiments, wrote, and taught, until his death in 196 B.C.[4]

The Ptolemies' dogged determination to make Alexandria the center of learning, led them to send emissaries worldwide in search of manuscripts. Ptolemy Philadelphus purchased the volumes in the library of Aristotle, as well as various versions of the Homeric epics. In fact, he bought so many works, that he had to enlarge the library, to accommodate them, and in 250 B.C., new rooms were made available in the Serapis temple. It is related, that in their zealous search for knowledge, they would borrow famous manuscripts—for example, Ptolemy Physikon managed to get originals of the plays of Aeschylus, Sophocles, and Euripides—and have them copied, only to send back to the owner not the original, but the copy! The first 200,000 rolls were collected by Demetrius of Phaleron, according to the First-century B.C. Jewish historian Josephus. And the number increased, as the *Plautine scolium* documents, to 532,800. Later, the number was reported to be 700,000. Among these were large numbers of translations, including the translations into Greek of the Hebrew holy texts, the Old Testament. It is also related, that Euergetes II, in his zeal to maintain the primacy of the Alexandria library, forbade the export of papyrus, hoping thereby to limit the trade in writings. It was as a result of this embargo, that his competitors in Pergamum invented parchment.[5]

The books, or rolls of texts, were carefully catalogued in the immense library. Callimachus, as librarian, undertook the task of organizing biographical and bibliographical tables of the works of poetry and prose. It is reported that Callimachus produced a work on the Museum, now lost; a "Table and Register of Dramatic Poets, chronologically from the earliest times"; and, "Tables of all those who were eminent in any kind of literature, and of their writings," the first comprehensive history of literature, in 120 volumes.[6] The mere existence of such works by Callimachus attests to the character of the Alexandria library, as a highly organized center, where virtually everything known to exist in literature, history, philosophy, and sciences, was available, along with supplementary critical and bibliographical aids.

How the Library Was Destroyed

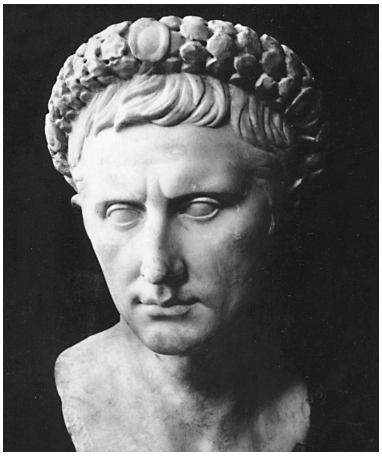
That such an institution could come into being, flourish, and grow, was due to the efforts of political and intellectual leaders who fully understood the crucial significance of the spread of knowledge, as the precondition for social and economic progress and stability. By the same token, it was thanks to the personal depravity and political wretchedness of later political leaders, in the Roman Empire and later, that the great library and museum were destroyed.

There are many historical versions of what happened to the library, at times contradictory. But what can be ascertained, for certain, is that the first serious blows to it came from the worst of the Roman emperors.

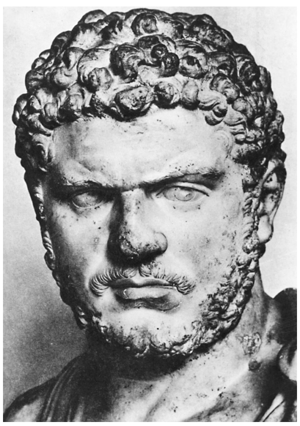
The scene had been set, from the reign of Ptolemy Philopater to Ptolemy Euergetes II (221-116 B.C.), for disaster, as the Ptolemies, though ostensibly still committed to patronizing science and the arts, themselves fell into decadence. As a result of misrule, tyranny and corruption, social unrest spread, and open factionalization between Alexandria and Rome emerged following the death of Ptolemy Euergetes II in 116 B.C.. This climaxed in 48 B.C., when Julius Caesar arrived in Alexandria, to battle Pompey and Cleopatra. In the ensuing war between Caesar and the Alexandrian fleet, fires ravaged the city. According to the account of Dion Kassios: "Now, there were battles by day and by night, and many buildings went up in smoke: the naval and other arsenals, the grain storehouse, and the *library,* the richest and grandest of that day, so it is reported, was burned to the ground."

To which the historian Geord Klippel adds: "On this occasion, 400,000 book scrolls, along with the gracious halls where they were housed, fell victim to the flames within a few short hours, and world literature suffered an irreplaceable loss, which is all the more painful for us, because with this destruction in Alexandria of so many invaluable works of antiquity, the most important sources for our history were lost forever."[8]

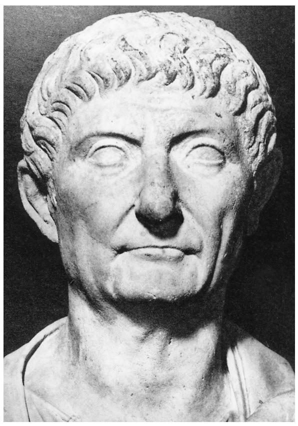
Cleopatra, who was reportedly well educated in Greek, Latin, Egyptian, Ethiopian, and other Eastern languages, knew the value of the library which had been destroyed, and, after the assassination of Caesar, prevailed upon Mark Antony to transfer 200,000 volumes which were housed in the library at Pergamum, to Alexandria.



The Granger Collection, NY



Corbis-Bettmann



Corbis-Bettmann

Emperors of Rome ruled Egypt and Alexandria after the Ptolemies. Augustus, first Roman Emperor (top). Caracalla (left). Diocletian (right).

Peace was reestablished after the civil wars under the reign of Octavian (Emperor Augustus), and the library was rehabilitated. The fame attached to the name of Alexandria remained such, that virtually all the Roman emperors tried, in one way or another, to present themselves as protectors of learning. Even the notorious tyrant Tiberius (ruled A.D. 14-37) tried to profile himself as a lover of the sciences, and wrote poems in various languages. The emperor Claudius (ruled A.D. 41-54) supported the library, and even enlarged it. A scholar of Greek, Claudius also arranged for lectures to be held in the museum on Etruscan and Carthaginian history.[9] Even the psychotic Nero put himself forth as a friend of the arts, not only defending them, but aspiring to be a poet himself. The same can be said of Vespasian and Titus, Trajan and Hadrian.

The turn for the worse occurred under Caracalla (ruled A.D. 211-217). This bloody tyrant, who traversed his provinces, plundering and killing as he went, was made the subject of ridicule by the Alexandrians, in a series of poems and stories.[10] To teach them a lesson, Caracalla proceeded into the city, and gave the order to his troops to enter houses and slaughter everyone indiscriminately. One account has it, that he entered Alexandria under the pretext of wanting to pay homage to Alexander. He made great show of respect for the city's founder, by visiting the Soma, and then went to the Temple of Serapis, allegedly to worship. Caracalla ordered all the youth of the city to line up in phalanx formation, according to age and size, because, he said, he wished to admire them. Instead, he gave the order to his troops, to slaughter the unarmed youth, and plunder the city. Blood ran through the streets in rivers. The library survived, but barely. It was reported, later, to be standing, but with no occupants.

Further devastation occurred at the hand of Zenobia in A.D. 270, and in 295, Diocletian laid siege to the city, slaughtering the people and burning the buildings. Diocletian gave the order to seek out what books remained and destroy them by fire.

Under Theodosius the Great (A.D. 375-395), the wave of destruction which swept over Alexandria moved under the pretext of eliminating paganism. With the Edict of Theodosius, it was decreed that all the temples and pagan idols had to be destroyed. This included not only the Temple of Serapis, but, apparently, also the library and its works, which were eliminated in A.D. 389. Three hundred thousand volumes were stolen or destroyed, and the members of the museum were forced either to embrace Christianity or to flee.[11] Thus, three hundred years later, when the Arabs arrived under 'Amr ibn al-'As, and the authority of 'Umr ibn al-Khittab, conquering Egypt and Alexandria in about A.D. 642-46, there were very few rolls left in library's once glorious collection.

Rebuilding the Library Today

It is most fitting that it is an Arab government that has decided to reconstruct this wonderful institution, especially given the widespread acceptance of the slanderous myth—wholly contrary to the documented historical record—that the Alexandria library was destroyed by the Arabs during the period of Islamic expansion. As the historical record shows, the library was a most resilient institution, which held up over centuries, in the center of a fight to the death between those forces—present in various cultural traditions—which promoted the spreading of knowledge as the means to uplift and develop human society, and those forces dedicated to the idea of the tyranny of the few, who might impound such knowledge as a secret weapon, to maintain control over the ignorant masses.

The idea to rebuild the library goes back to 1974, and is attributed to Egyptian historian Mustafa al-Abbadi. The ambitious project was designed not only to commemorate the historic library, but to replicate it for the modern world. On June 26, 1988, Egyptian president Hosni Mubarak laid the foundations for the building, accompanied by the director-general of UNESCO, which issued a call to individuals, organizations, and countries to support the project. An International Committee for Supporting the Funding Campaign, was established at the request of Egypt. In 1990, $230 million was pledged, mainly by Iraq, Saudi Arabia, and the United Arab Emirates. The Egyptian government has underwritten the budget.

The first phase, building the substructure, at a cost of $60 million, was completed in December 1996, by the Egyptian state company, together with Italian partners. The second phase started immediately thereafter, for the construction of the main building, which is to be ten storeys high. This part, which will cost $120 million, is being constructed by Arab contractors and a British company. The library should have 69,000 square meters (750,000 square feet) of floor space, and should be able to house eight million volumes, in addition to hundreds of thousands of manuscripts, tapes, compact discs, and videos. In the words of Yousri El Hakim, who is the engineer heading up the construction monitoring unit, work is proceeding at a rapid pace, so as to complete it this year. "We have 400 workers from all over the world," he said, "working 24 hours a day in two shifts. . . . We should be finished by the end of 1998." El Hakim added that although UNESCO had been instrumental in the initiating phase of the project, "now it is 100 percent Egyptian, under the ministry of higher education."

The project leaders are trying to replicate the efforts of the Ptolemies, in gathering important works from all over the world. As the project manager Dr. Mohsen Zahran reports, the new Bibliotheca Alexandrina received a government budget for purchases, and 350,000 books have been acquired thus far. In addition, governments and institutions from around the world have generously contributed magnificent items for the center. Among them, is a complete microfilm record of the priceless Arabic manuscripts in the Escorial Library in Spain, donated by the Spanish Royal Family in June 1997. France has donated several important books, including a copy of the Bible printed by Gutenberg. According to a protocol signed between Egypt and France, a grant of 4.4 million French francs is to be allocated for an advanced, multi-lingual data system, which will effectively constitute an index linked to the world's scientific networks. Already, 130,000 traditional and electronic data channels have been obtained, and personnel for the library are undergoing training locally and overseas. Australia has offered a $10,000 grant-in-kind, which includes books published in Australia. The public library of the city of Starazaogra in Bulgaria will donate a rare copy of the Holy Quran to the library. The copy, which was received by Egypt's ambassador to Bulgaria, dates back to the year 1278 of the Hijra.

Thus, if the project reaches completion at the end of this year, the world will be considerably richer. The revived library of Alexandria should become, like its namesake, a center of learning and research, with emphasis on the civilizations of ancient Egypt, Greece, and the Eastern mediterranean. Scholars from throughout the world should flock there, as their ancient counterparts did, to study, deliberate, research, teach, and generate new discoveries.

—Muriel Mirak Weissbach

Additional illustrations appear on the inside back cover of this issue.

NOTES

1. Edward Alexander Parsons, *The Alexandrian Library: Glory of the Hellenic World, Its Rise, Antiquities, and Destructions,* (Amsterdam-London-New York: Elsevier Press, 1952), pp. 101-102. **2.** *Ibid.,* pp. 108-109. **3.** Dr. Geord Heinrich Klippel, *Über das Alexandrinische Museum, drei Bücher* (Göttingen: 1838), p. 124. **4.** *Ibid.,* pp. 140-141. **5.** *Ibid.,* p. 161. **6.** Parsons, *op. cit,* pp. 208-209. **7.** Quoted in Klippel, *op. cit,* p. 186. **8.** *Ibid.,* p. 187. **9.** *Ibid.,* p. 211. **10.** *Ibid.,* pp. 226-227. **11.** *Ibid.,* pp. 251-252.

British Crimes Against America

From 1938, through the entire Second World War, a consortium of British intelligence agencies, acting on behalf of the British Monarchy and Prime Minister Winston Churchill, committed a wide range of criminal acts inside the United States. Agents of the British intelligence services, including American citizens who were recruited to serve the British Empire as spies and agents provocateur inside the United States, interfered with American elections, planted disinformation in the American media, created phony front groups, and engaged in violence, up to, and including, murder. Their efforts were abetted by the F.B.I. and by high-ranking officials of the Department of Justice. Their dirty tricks were lionized by the Anglophile press, while their targets, including U.S. elected officials, were treated to a steady diet of media slanders.

In the case of British intelligence's targetting of one particularly powerful isolationist Congressman, Hamilton Fish, British intelligence agents waged a five-year "dirty tricks"campaign, which ultimately resulted in Fish losing his seat in Congress. Funds for the effort were provided by wealthy New York City Anglophiles and by front groups for MI-6.

In this painstakingly researched, yet highly readable account of British covert operations in the United States during the pre-war and World War II period, Tom Mahl has unraveled an important page of the history of British-American relations. Originally submitted as a doctoral dissertation in history at Kent State University, his book is based on newly released British and American wartime intelligence archives.

Mahl was confronted with a particularly difficult task in revisiting the activities of Sir William Stephenson, "the man called Intrepid," the legendary head of the British Special Operations Executive (S.O.E.) activities in the United States. Stephenson's principal mission, from the moment he set up shop in Rockefeller Center in the spring of 1940, was to draw the United States into World War II on the side of Great Britain.

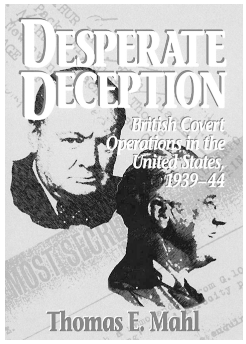
But, as the author notes in the opening paragraph of Chapter 2, "One thing is evident. Members of the American elite, including President Franklin D. Roosevelt, were not tricked into the war; they were not victims. They were as eager as the British to fight Hitler."

Despite their surface convergence of interest to defeat Hitler and the Nazi menace, Mahl fails to explain to his readers that Franklin Roosevelt and Winston Churchill were driven by very different motives. As the war progressed, and the Allied leaders held a series of summit meetings, the chasm between FDR and Churchill widened, principally over the issue of how to shape the postwar peace.

Churchill vs. Roosevelt

Roosevelt had a postwar vision of a world free of the tyranny of Hitler, but also free of the tyranny of the European colonial empires. For Churchill, the survival of Britain was synonymous with the postwar revival of the British Empire. And, many of the American Anglophiles who joined with Stephenson in running the war on the home front against the isolationists and other opponents of American support for Britain, shared Churchill's worldview—not Roosevelt's.

Once the United States entered the war, a majority of these Anglophiles, who had been involved in such S.O.E. front groups as Fight for Freedom, the Non-Sectarian Anti-Nazi League, the Friends of Democracy, and the Committee to Defend America by Aiding the Allies, were among the first to sign up with the Office of Strategic Services and the Office of War Information. People like Whitney Shepardson and Allen Dulles, both top O.S.S. figures, would conspire against Roosevelt, and even against O.S.S. chief William



Desperate Deception—British Covert Operations in the United States, 1939-44
by Thomas E. Mahl
Washington, Brasseys, 1998
256 pages, hardbound, $26.95

Donovan, throughout the war, thus manifesting their "British First" outlook.

This complex dimension of the so-called Anglo-American wartime alliance is not addressed by Mahl, and as a result, there is a danger that some readers might see the book as an apologia for the isolationist cause. However, this reviewer has discussed the issue directly with the author, and is fully satisfied that this was an error of omission on Mahl's part.

A.D.L. and S.O.E.

A central figure in the Mahl account of the S.O.E.'s fifth column inside wartime America was Sandy Griffith. Griffith worked for British intelligence. S.O.E. archives unearthed by Tom Mahl identified him as "Lt. Commander Griffith," I.D. no. G.112. He had an affiliation with S.I.S. as well. Griffith's second wife confirmed to Mahl, that Sandy Griffith joined British intelligence "in the late 1930's."

From 1939, Griffith was the President of Market Analysts, Inc., a polling and public relations firm that provided fabricated polling data to all of Stephenson's British Security Control American front groups.

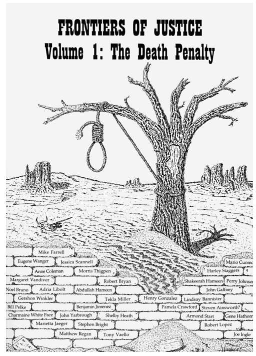
Griffith also happened to be a leading figure in the Anti-Defamation League of B'nai B'rith, finding the time to run a string of A.D.L.-sponsored private investigative firms that maintained illegal files on millions of American citizens, some of which had been obtained from the U.S. Civil Service Commission. Griffith's operation was later absorbed into the Fact Finding Division of the A.D.L.

One of Griffith's front groups, established to counter the influence of Father Charles Coughlin, was the Committee for American-Irish Defense. It was headquartered in the New York City offices of Market Analysts, Inc., but its base of operation was the Boston office of the A.D.L. In fact, some historians of the S.O.E. operations in America made the mistake of assuming that the Committee for American-Irish Defense was one of the few S.O.E. failures, because almost the entirety of the group's members were prominent figures in the American Jewish community, all affiliated with the A.D.L.

Reading Mahl's account of Britain's World War II-era intelligence penetration of the U.S., prompted this reviewer to reflect on the present prosecutorial reign of terror on the part of the U.S. Department of Justice, the F.B.I., I.R.S., etc. The methods fine-tuned during the war years by British intelligence assets and outright agents—while nominally in the interest of a just cause—have left a legacy that is today one of the great wellsprings of national disaster. Anyone seriously committed to understanding the roots of today's judicial tyranny, would do well to read this book.

—*Jeffrey Steinberg*

It's Time To End the Death Penalty



Frontiers of Justice, Vol. 1: The Death Penalty
edited by Claudia Whitman and Julie Zimmerman
Brunswick, Biddle Publishing, 1997
l268 pages, paperback, $15.95

When five of my friends went to prison for their political views more than four years ago, I swore that we in the LaRouche political movement would do everything we could to end the death penalty—against which they had all fought—before they were released. Today, they are still in prison, and the death penalty is still very much in force.

It is now time—indeed, it was time long ago—for America to end this barbaric relic of the past, and to join the rest of what purports to be the civilized world, in renouncing the use of murder to avenge ourselves on murderers. It is now time for America to blot out this last vestige of "frontier justice." Perhaps then, we might have the morality to address the much tougher problem in our criminal justice system: the corruption in the Department of Justice itself, which is most clearly seen in the LaRouche case.

Frontiers of Justice makes available, in personal and highly readable accounts, every argument that has been made for the abolition of the death penalty. In addition to the stories told by those whose lives have been deeply touched by the death penalty, *Frontiers of Justice* also marshals accounts by some of the nation's leading experts in this field, to document the racist and fundamentally unfair nature of the application of capital punishment in America today.

Included are contributions from former New York Governor Mario Cuomo, U.S. Rep. Henry B. Gonzalez (D-Tex.), former U.S. Rep. Harley O. Staggers (D-W.V.), several legal experts in the death penalty, two former state Commissioners of Corrections, and Jewish, Muslim, and Christian religious leaders. Woven together with these more scholarly and documented papers opposing the death penalty, are very intimate accounts of the suffering which capital punishment causes among the *three* groups of victims—as Sister Helen Prejean, author of *Dead Man Walking,* has put it: the death-row inmate, his relatives, and the relatives of his victim.

Fundamentally Unfair

On the most elementary level of basic justice, the death penalty is blatantly unfair. Of the approximately 24,000 murders committed each year in America, one percent are selected to be prosecuted for the death penalty. The U.S. government's General Accounting Office has found the correlation of race to be a factor present at all stages of the criminal justice process, in the prosecution of capital crimes. This includes the prosecutor's decision to charge the defendant with a capital offense, or to go to trial rather than plea-bargain. In the end, although half of all murder victims are Black, 85 percent of those executed or awaiting execution, since the death penalty was reinstated in 1976, were charged with killing whites. A Black who murders a white is more likely to get the death penalty, than anyone, white or Black, who murders a Black.

In addition, since 1976, at least 40 percent of the death penalty convictions have been reversed. It is fairly estimated that at least five percent of the inmates on death row are innocent of the crime for which they were charged. A recent *Stanford Law Review* study revealed, that during this century in the United States, at least 417 people were wrongly convicted of capital offenses, and of these, 23 were executed. Since the 1970's, at least 46 people have been released after many years on Death Row, because they were discovered to be innocent.

Finally, the overwhelming majority

of the more than 3,000 men and women on Death Row in America, are poor. Thus, the ironic definition of capital punishment: "Those who lack the capital, get the punishment."

'An Eye For An Eye'?

Because the argument most often used to justify capital punishment, particularly in the "Bible Belt," where it is most in force, is the "eye for an eye" idea of retributive justice found in the Old Testament, the contribution of Rabbi Gershon Winkler is among the most valuable in this collection. Rabbi Winkler begins by quoting from the Talmud: "A court that has executed someone as infrequently as once in seven years, is a murderous court; others say, even once in seventy years."

After detailing the great lengths to which Jewish courts in the Hellenistic period went to *avoid* executions, Rabbi Winkler writes that, while Jewish law does not rule out capital punishment, it "certainly made it close to impossible to sentence someone to death, did everything possible to delay execution, and leaned toward every possibility of acquittal rather than seeking conviction. In our own time, these rules would appear politically incorrect, albeit reasonably compassionate; two thousand years ago, however, they were extraordinarily compassionate, and reflect an attempt at wrestling a balance between respect for the sanctity of life, and respect for the needs of society."

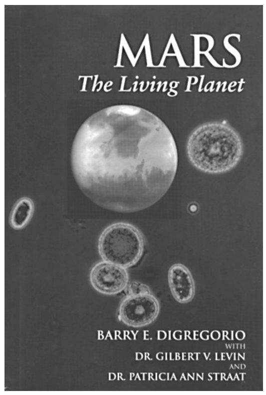
Today, we are going in the opposite direction. Where Jewish law in the time of Christ had moved *away* from executions, an America that calls itself Christian (after the Christ who preached mercy, forgiveness, and love) is turning increasingly *toward* capital punishment.

Mahatma Gandhi and Martin Luther King, Jr., warned that "the eye-for-an-eye philosophy leaves everyone blind." That is certainly not what is meant by "blind justice"! Let us hope that *Frontiers of Justice,* and other similar attempts to bring the real horrors of the death penalty into public debate, will lead this nation to a *real* blind justice—one that is both fair and based on law.

America will then be returning to its true, anti-oligarchical roots, as American patriot and Declaration of Independence signer Dr. Benjamin Rush helped to plant them, when he launched the movement to abolish the death penalty in our country in 1787. As quoted in *Frontiers of Justice,* Rush and his fellow Leibnizians based their movement on the belief that, as opposed to the harsh and bloody laws that marked the British monarchy over which the Revolution had just triumphed, mild and benevolent ones should characterize republics. If we are to salvage this first republic established on Earth, the death penalty must go.

—Marianna Wertz

The Puzzle of Life on Mars



Mars: The Living Planet
by Barry E. DiGregorio
Berkeley, Frog, Ltd., 1997
365 pages, hardbound, $25.00

On July 20, 1976, seven years to the day after the first astronauts landed on the Moon, the Viking I spacecraft landed on Mars. Its sister ship, Viking II, landed six weeks later.

Aboard both spacecraft were instruments given the task of answering one of the most profound questions posed to science: Has life developed on any planet in the solar system besides Earth?

Mars was the best candidate for a "yes," because, like Earth, it appears to have had a warm and wet past. Also, like Earth, the inclination of its axis of rotation produces seasons, and it is neither too far from nor too close to the sun to preclude the possibility of incipient life forms. It was also known that Mars, unlike our nearby moon, has an atmosphere.

Of the three scientific instruments aboard the Viking landers, one was developed by Dr. Gilbert Levin. His "Labeled Release Experiment" placed a drop of radioactive nutrient on a sample of Martian soil, and measured the gas released. The experimental result—radioactive gas emerging from the soil sample—suggested the presence of life. For the twenty years since, Dr. Levin has insisted that these results show that there is life on Mars. But, for most of these two decades, the overwhelming majority of the scientific community has insisted that Viking found *no* life on Mars, in large part because *today's* Martian conditions could not support life.

No one has come up with a plausible explanation for the results Dr. Levin's experiment sent back to Earth, however. And, what's more, few in the scientific community have shown interest in developing the *new* experiments for current Mars missions, suggested by Dr. Levin to continue the search for the truth.

Mars: The Living Planet is Dr. Levin's story.

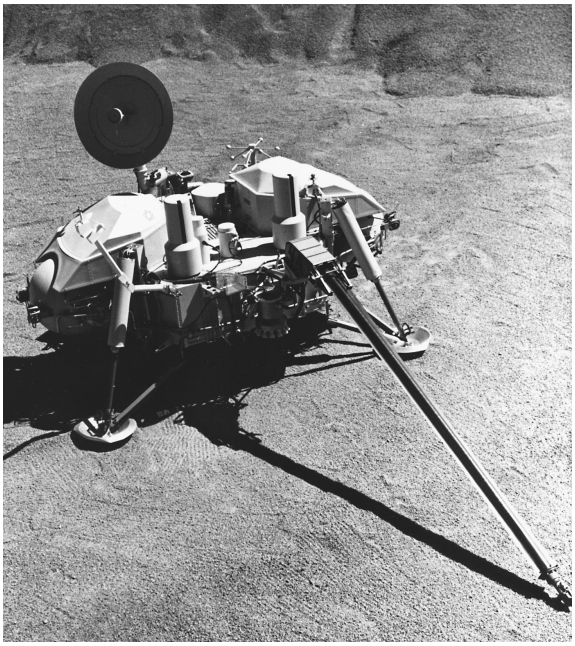
Life's Changing Envelope

One thing scientists have recently learned is, not to be too hasty making absolute statements about where life can and cannot exist. Author DiGregorio has done an excellent and exhaustive job of summarizing the research of the past few years, which indicates that life can exist under many conditions that were previously thought to be prohibitive, including conditions found on Mars.

For example, none of the experiments on the Viking landers indicated the presence of organic materials on or near the surface of Mars. But, could there be life which required neither organic material, nor the ability to undergo photosynthesis?

DiGregorio reports that in 1995, Dr. Todd Stevens and Dr. James McKinley, of the Pacific Northwest Laboratory in Washington State, discovered anaerobic bacteria living on nothing but volcanic basalt rock and oxygen-free water, at a depth of 1,500 meters in the groundwater of Columbia River basalt aquifers.

These rock-eating bacteria were subsequently named "Subsurface Lithoautotrophic Microbial Systems," indicating an organism which manufactures organic nutrients from inorganic substances (such as basalt rock). According to DiGregorio, Dr. Stevens stated that the Viking life science experiments would not have been able to detect such life forms, should they have existed on Mars.



Working model of the Viking Mars lander that carried the life-detection experiment designed by Dr. Levin.

It is now broadly believed that there may be liquid water beneath the surface of Mars. While it is too cold and the atmosphere is too tenuous for liquid water to exist on its surface, there is no doubt that Mars was once, and may still be, a geologically active planet, with volcanoes and other features that could warm the frozen soil under the surface, to allow water to exist in its liquid state.

Another problem which many have pointed out is, that there is little radiation-shielding on Mars, owing to its thin atmosphere and lack of an ozone layer, and the ultraviolet radiation that strikes the planet would be lethal to life. In response, DiGregorio reviews the variety of methods organisms on Earth have developed to protect themselves from UV radiation.

For example, there are organisms which encapsulate themselves in water for protection. Others use a process of biomineralization, in which the incorporation of a small particle of iron, produced by the organism itself, protects it from ultraviolet light. It has also been observed that snow algae store dust and metals within their cell structure to use as nutrients, as well as for protection from solar UV.

In addition to the cosmic rays and UV radiation that bombard the surface of Mars from space, there is also, most likely, a constant decay of radioactive materials present to the Martian soil, which, it has been argued, could be lethal to life. Author DiGregorio counters, by reporting the 1989 discovery of a radiation-resistant microorganism living *inside the core* of the Three Mile Island nuclear reactor in Pennsylvania. These cells apparently survive the extreme radiation environment by producing enzymes which repair their DNA as they metabolize.

Thus, given the evidence, any true scientist would certainly conclude that it is too early to close the book on the possibility that life on Mars does exist .

Designing New Experiments

Dr. Levin has not been discouraged by the opposition encountered from nearly the entire exobiology profession. He has continued to propose new experiments to collect data relevant to the question of life on Mars.

He has focussed on one unique characteristic of living systems, the fact that they are chiral (left- or right-handed). In 1996, the U.S. contributed the "Mars Oxidant Experiment" (MOX) to the Mars '96 lander developed by the Russian Space Agency. Designed to identify and measure oxidants in the Martian soil, MOX included a fiber, proposed by Dr. Levin, coated with two versions of an amino acid with opposite handedness. Dr. Levin suggested that a Martian soil reaction to the left-handed isomer of the amino acid, would be an indication of the presence of life.

Although the Russian Mars '96 spacecraft did not make it to Mars (or even out of Earth orbit), Dr. Levin has continued to propose experiments for the Mars landing missions planned by NASA for the next decade.

These have included modifying the "Thermal and Evolved Gas Analyzer" already slated to be flown on the NASA Mars Surveyor '98 lander, to include a life-detection experiment. That proposal was not accepted, the initial reason being, that searching for life was not included in the mission.

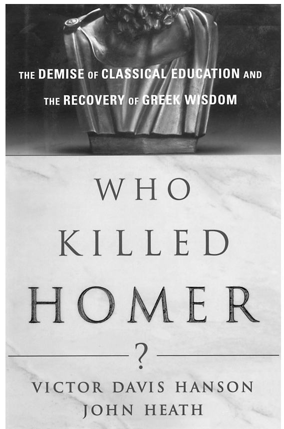
After the August 1996 announcement by scientists that evidence of past life on Mars had been detected in Mars meteorite ALH84001, Dr. Levin proposed his experiment again. This time, he was told that the process of sterilizing the spacecraft to prevent Earth contamination, was too expensive.

Nevertheless, the excitement over the Mars meteorite has renewed scientists' interest in including life-science experiments on upcoming unmanned Mars missions.

This is an excellent book. It is a fitting tribute to a man who has stubbornly insisted that scientists should search for the truth, and should mobilize to find answers to puzzles they cannot answer. If that kind of drive is applied to the puzzle of life on Mars, mankind may be able to begin to put some of the pieces together—even before we are on the way to Mars—to discover the answer ourselves.

—Marsha Freeman

Where Wisdom Begins—
The Urgent Necessity for the Classics



Who Killed Homer?
The Demise of Classical Education and the Recovery of Greek Wisdom
by Victor Davis Hanson and John Heath
New York, The Free Press, 1998
290 pages, hardcover, $25.00

Authors Victor Hanson and John Heath are dedicated teachers of the Classics, who have written a horrifying, but true indictment of the immorality of virtually all of today's professional, academic so-called "classicists." Indeed, it turns out, that there are some very prominent men among this pack of vile frauds, who must actually be classed as grossly *criminal,* rather than merely completely immoral. (Oxford's Sir Kenneth Dover, for instance, who admitted in print that he *murdered* his academic rival, yet who bears a knighthood granted by Queen Elizabeth, for his research on the Ancient Greeks, and does not lack for hordes of sycophantic students!) Their very moving "Catiline Oration," is further combined with a sketch of just what it is that we must learn from Ancient Greece. And to this, they have added an outline of the sorts of academic reforms that they believe would be required, to bring these Greek truths to today's students, and thus, through them, to American society generally.

I have learned some significant things from this book, of particular interest to students of Classical studies. Moreover, I share with its authors, knowledge of certain unpopular but very important truths, which we three are not ashamed to teach publicly, even though they earn us academic ridicule. And finally, there are many things in their book, which I must view as errors, even serious ones. (Especially, but not only, in the chapter entitled, "Thinking Like a Greek.") But, as a would-be teacher myself, I recognize unerringly—as do all teachers—the agapic love characteristic of every man and woman who is a teacher in the true sense of the word. Given this insight into the minds of the authors, I know that theirs are errors honestly come by, in the course of a decades-long search for truth and justice—a quest in which they have not shrunk from personal sacrifice.

Thus, for me, the most inspiring passage in *Who Killed Homer?,* is one that begins, "We both have been guilty—insidiously and flagrantly so—of many of the professional crimes we rebuke here. . . ." Whatever nonsense the philistines may imagine to the contrary, this cry of "*Mea culpa!*" is the outermost gate around the temple of wisdom: No man or woman ever did, or ever will become wise, who does not pass through this gate first.

In fact, if our whole civilization is now doomed to destruction over the short term—as it may very well be—this is very simply, the direct consequence of one little fact: that the self-indulgent, over-sexed, overgrown fat children of the '60's generation, who now occupy the seats of power, have yet to find, and indeed may never find in themselves the strength of will, to force themselves to say these two little words: "*Mea culpa!*"

'A Larger American Renaissance'

Unlike the authors', my own reasons for studying Ancient Greek, and teaching it to others, involve Lyndon H. LaRouche, Jr., whose projects I have participated in for now more than thirty years. Hanson and Heath touch most closely on the subject of Lyndon LaRouche's lifelong effort, when they say, ". . . all attempts to reinstate Greek wisdom by reforming higher education, are ultimately doomed to failure in the absence of a larger American renaissance." Lyndon LaRouche's life's work, has been to work to bring on that new Renaissance, in America and worldwide. (And, of course, the literal meaning of the term, "renaissance," is "the rebirth of ancient [i.e., Greek] learning.")

LaRouche's effort, finds support in several of the true maxims the authors cite under the heading, "Thinking Like a Greek." As someone who does not have to answer to a campus "political correctness" committee, I am free to repeat them in my own words, as follows:

(1) Western Culture—specifically, as the Fifteenth-century Italian Renaissance rediscovered and advanced upon Classical Greek learning—is the best culture mankind has yet achieved. This is not a "racial" or "blood" question. Quite the contrary: Those who have any understanding of this culture, are duty-bound to try to make it available to every nation and people. And indeed, all people invariably want it for themselves, once they understand it.

(2) Further, the superiority of this Western Culture has immediate material consequences. To the degree that Western Culture has advanced around the globe (even despite the frequent crimes of the Western colonial powers), the world is today able to sustain a population in excess of five billion—and indeed, several-fold more, if modern technologies were fully applied, especially in Asia, Africa, and Ibero-America.

But yet, the authors prove, in effect, that we have now abandoned Western Culture, in favor of multiculturalism, moral relativism, monetarism, and the rock-sex-drug counterculture, among other foul idolatries. What, then, is the consequence, if we do not change our ways immediately? Nothing, but the rapid collapse of the world's population to the several hundred millions which was its level at the time of the Italian Renaissance—through famine, old and new diseases, and war!

Unhappy Endings

Another of the Greek truths to be found in *Who Killed Homer* (again, in my own words), is that there is not always a "happy ending." The boy does not always get the girl. This is not only true for the accidents of individual personal life; it is more importantly true for whole civilizations (contrary to such fatalists as G.W.F. Hegel and Karl Marx, who would have history march on inexorably forward and upward). The Earth bulges with the remains of countless extinct civilizations, cultures which "lost the moral fitness to survive," in LaRouche's words. Their study is the never-ending business of archeology. Similarly, much of the business of so-called "anthropology," is the study of failed cultures which, rather than simply disappearing to the last man, instead collapsed down to a mere handful of pathetic, illiterate and naked savages. We are all now rapidly on our way, worldwide, to that latter end.

Therefore, the new Renaissance for which we fight, is not simply a desirable, good thing. It is rather, the only alternative to another Dark Age—this time not simply European, but worldwide—which, if it happens, will eclipse civilization for many decades, and bring about the collapse of world population levels to several hundred million, or fewer. It will mean death for the great majority, and unimaginable suffering and degradation for the relatively few survivors.

The trigger for this collapse, if it is permitted to occur, will be the vaporization of the world financial system, presaged by the present so-called "Asia crisis." But the real cause is neither economic in the usual sense, nor financial, nor anything even remotely like that. It is the worldwide collapse of culture and morality, especially visible during the past thirty years, documented so passionately by these authors in the microcosm of university so-called "classical studies."

The microcosm reflects the macrocosm. The putrefaction, reminiscent of some stories of E. A. Poe, which Hanson and Heath depict in the corners of our universities, reflects, alas, the condition of civilization overall. Once this is understood, dedicated teachers to the few, such as these authors, are of necessity called to be the "shepherds" to the "sheep" of the wider world, including the sheep who are heads of state and high officials. To save them from the destruction to which they have otherwise doomed themselves, by their own folly.

Universal Classical Education

From this standpoint—which is the true context of the "larger American renaissance," from which any discussion of academic reforms must proceed—one of the most serious errors in *Who Killed Homer,* is the contention that only *some* students should be destined for a university (i.e., Classical) education, while the rest should learn a skill or trade instead. (Admittedly, the authors regard this as a temporary expedient; but, it is a serious mistake nonetheless.)

To discuss it, first, on the less-important, narrowly economic level: Modern economy involves ever-more-rapid supercession of revolutionary, new products and processes, by still more revolutionary and newer ones. Unless we are going back to the day of the horse and buggy, as some would have us do, the "skill" each labor-force entrant *most* requires, is that of rapidly mastering new principles: Just what a good Classical education best provides.

But, there is a worse error still in the suggestion, that "[w]ith a skill and a job [i.e., absent a Classical education], each individual immediately becomes a functional member of the community, with all of the obligations and duties this entails." This was indeed true, in a sense, throughout the greatest part of human history, when the functions, "obligations and duties" of the ninety-five percent of the human race who were essentially human cattle, were nothing but obsequious obedience to every whim of their "betters." But Solon of Athens, Nicolaus of Cusa, and Benjamin Franklin and the rest of our American Founding Fathers, gave us the different and better idea of the *republic.* In a republic like ours, the citizen's duty of responsibly electing our leaders, requires that he or she have the knowledge to judge among the principled bases of alternative, proposed policies—even while not knowing all their details. Meaningful citizenship in a republic, thus requires a Classical education, one which results in the student's reproducing, within and for his own mind, an ordered sequence of Platonic *ideas.*

In today's circumstance of last-ditch defense of Western Culture, this question is not that of a timeless, abstract study of comparative forms of education. We require a revolution, and that very quickly. Of the American, not the Bolshevik variety: in which enough leading citizens' depth of knowledge of, and passion for civic values, will move them to stake "their lives, their fortunes, and their sacred Honor," in a battle for the survival of the priceless accomplishments of Western Civilization.

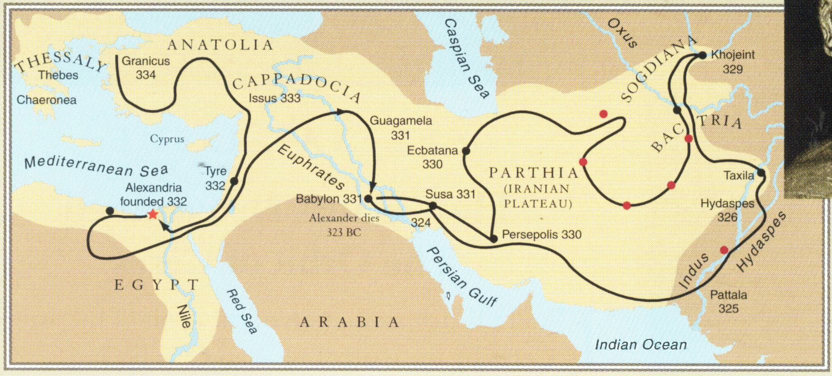
Just as it was over two hundred years ago, and again during the American Civil War, that is once again the question of Classical education today.

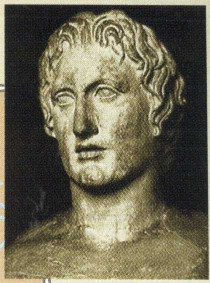
—*Tony Papert*

See facing page for price list of 'Ceres' suggested readings.

• *Alexander's city-building: a few of the forty ancient cities named Alexandria*

Route of Alexander's Conquests, 334-323 B.C.





The Granger Collection, NY

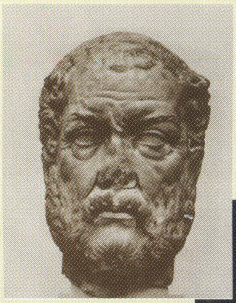
The Library of Alexandria Will Be Reborn

The Egyptian government has announced that the international project to rebuild the old library of Alexandria will be completed in 1998. Construction was begun in June 1988, when Egyptian President Mubarak laid the building foundations, accompanied by the director-general of UNESCO.

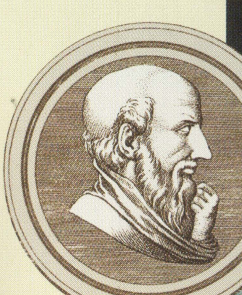
Having conquered Egypt, Alexander the Great undertook to found a city bearing his name, which was to be a commercial crossroads between East and West, as well as a cultural and scientific center for the world. After Alexander's death in 323 B.C., the city was developed by the ruling Ptolemies.

The great library became the center of learning for over nine hundred years, and, in particular, a repository of the great accomplishments of Classical Greece, attracting the greatest minds of Hellenistic culture. And, because of the library, Alexandria radiated the heritage of Platonist philosophy and science throughout the Greek-speaking Mediterranean, in the years surrounding the birth of Christ.

Governments and institutions from around the world have contributed magnificent items for the center: a complete microfilm record of the priceless Arabic manuscripts in the Escorial Library in Spain; a copy of the Bible printed by Gutenberg, donated by France; a rare copy of the Holy Quran, which dates from the year 1278 of the Hijra, from the city of Starazaogra, Bulgaria. The revived library should become a center of learning and research, with emphasis on the civilizations of ancient Egypt, Greece, and the Eastern Mediterranean.

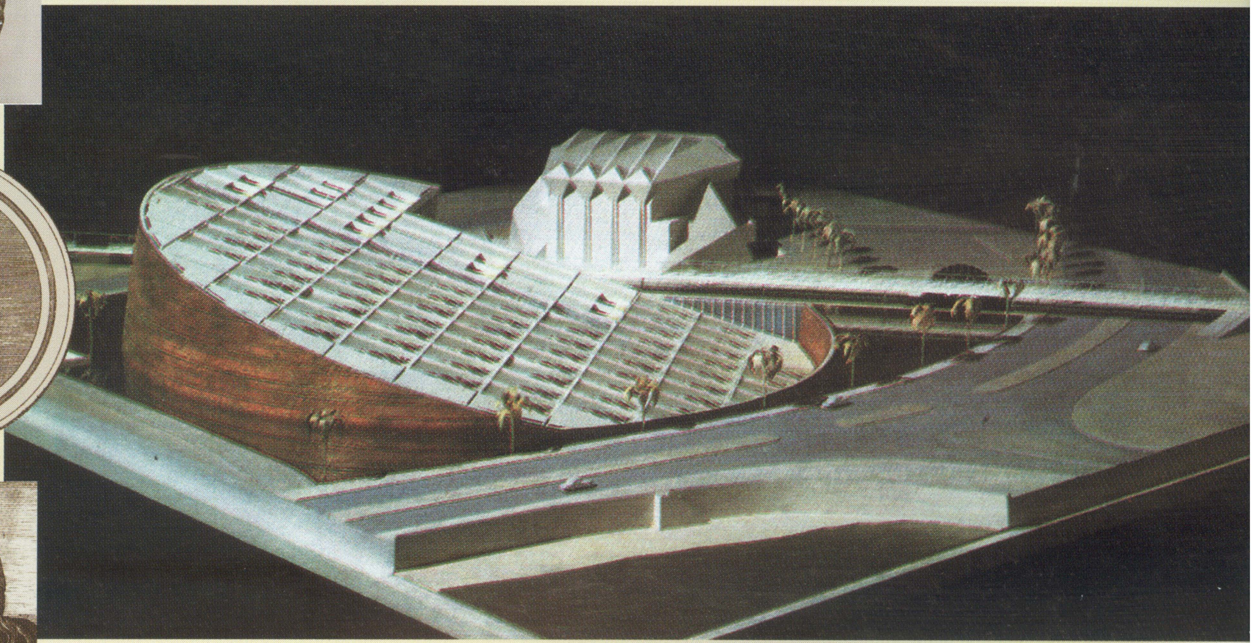


The Granger Collection, NY



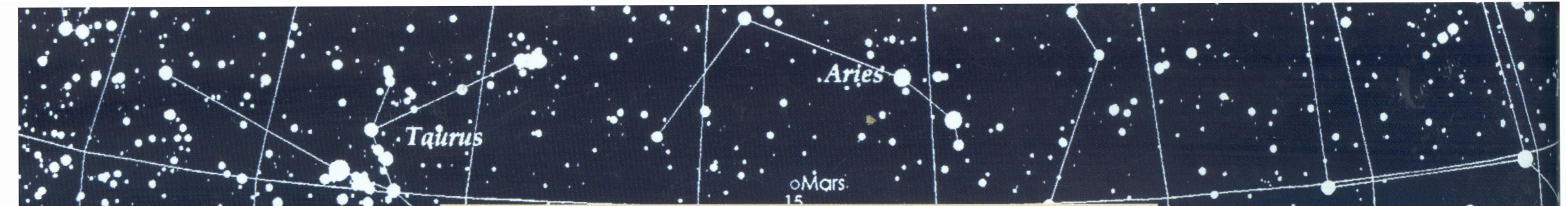
The Granger Collection, NY

Corbis



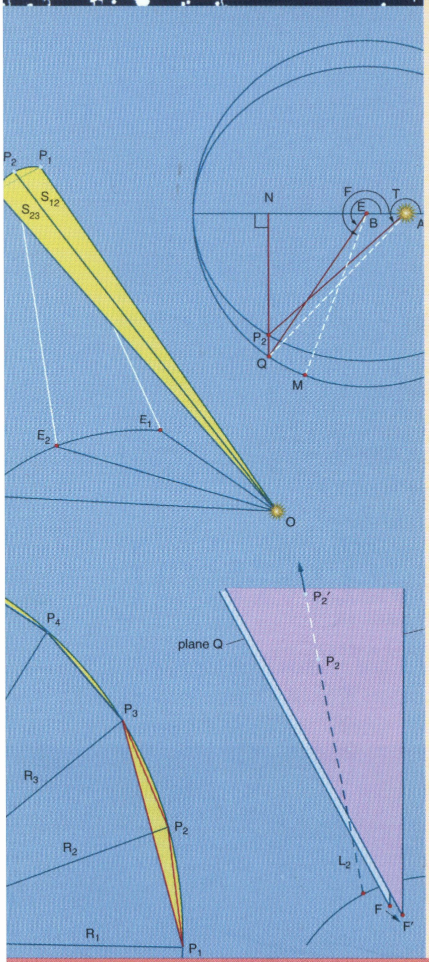
Ajourd'hui L'Egypte

Architectural model of the new Alexandria library, to be completed during 1998.
Left: *Leading intellects associated with the ancient library (top to bottom): the poet and librarian Callimachus, comic playwright Philemon, geometer Euclid.*



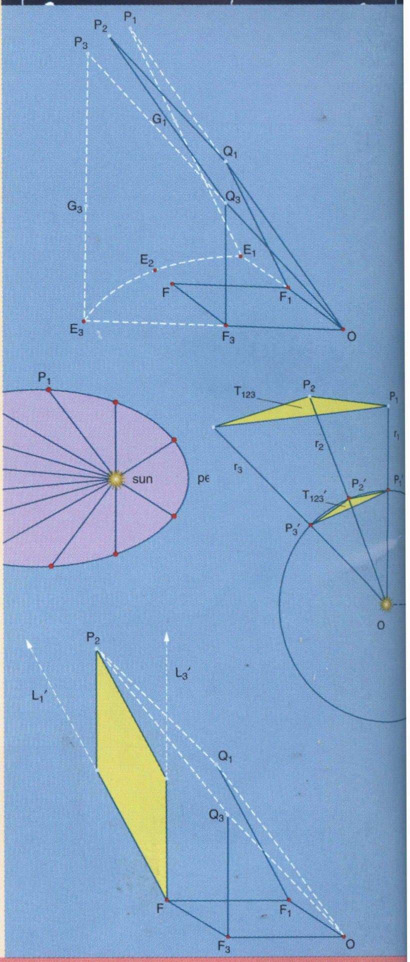
SPECIAL ISSUE

How Gauss Determined The Orbit of Ceres



The 1801 determination of the orbit of the asteroid Ceres by the mathematician Carl F. Gauss, marked a triumph for the Platonic method in the sciences, over the sterile neo-Aristoteleanism of Newton, Descartes, and Leonhard Euler. The general problem—in Gauss's words, 'to determine the orbit of a heavenly body, *without any hypothetical assumption,* from observations not embracing a great period of time,' required a solution that both exposed the fraudulent-axiomatic assumption of 'linearity in the small' championed by the enemies of G.W. Leibniz, and opened the way for the revolution in geometry and physics wrought by Gauss's student Bernhard Riemann, which sparked the scientific advances of the 20th century.

Mastery of such concepts is not academic. As the world plunges into a civilizational crisis comparable only to that of the 14th-century New Dark Age, the only proven remedy is to foster those powers of cognitive reason, which distinguish man as uniquely created in the image of God (*imago Dei*). To learn how to think, students must begin by replicating, in their own minds, the great discoveries of the past. Thus, shall we gain the cognitive powers needed to generate and assimilate the new ideas required for civilization to advance into the Renaissance of the 21st century.



Russia: A Coup from Above

In a strategic commentary, Lyndon H. LaRouche, Jr., writes: 'Although Lenin and Trotsky erred greatly, they are not to be regarded as anything less than highly qualified professional revolutionaries, professional *makers of history.* They were not half as misguided, or ignorant, as those foolish statesmen, who approach the present global situation with the delusion that the immediate months ahead are not a *revolutionary* interval of history. We see this crisis as the opportunity to defeat that religious quality of monetarist fervor which is presently the greatest threat to civilization.'